

A NEW TRANSLATION

BHAGAVAD GITA

The
BELOVED
LORD'S
Secret Love
Song

GRAHAM M. SCHWEIG

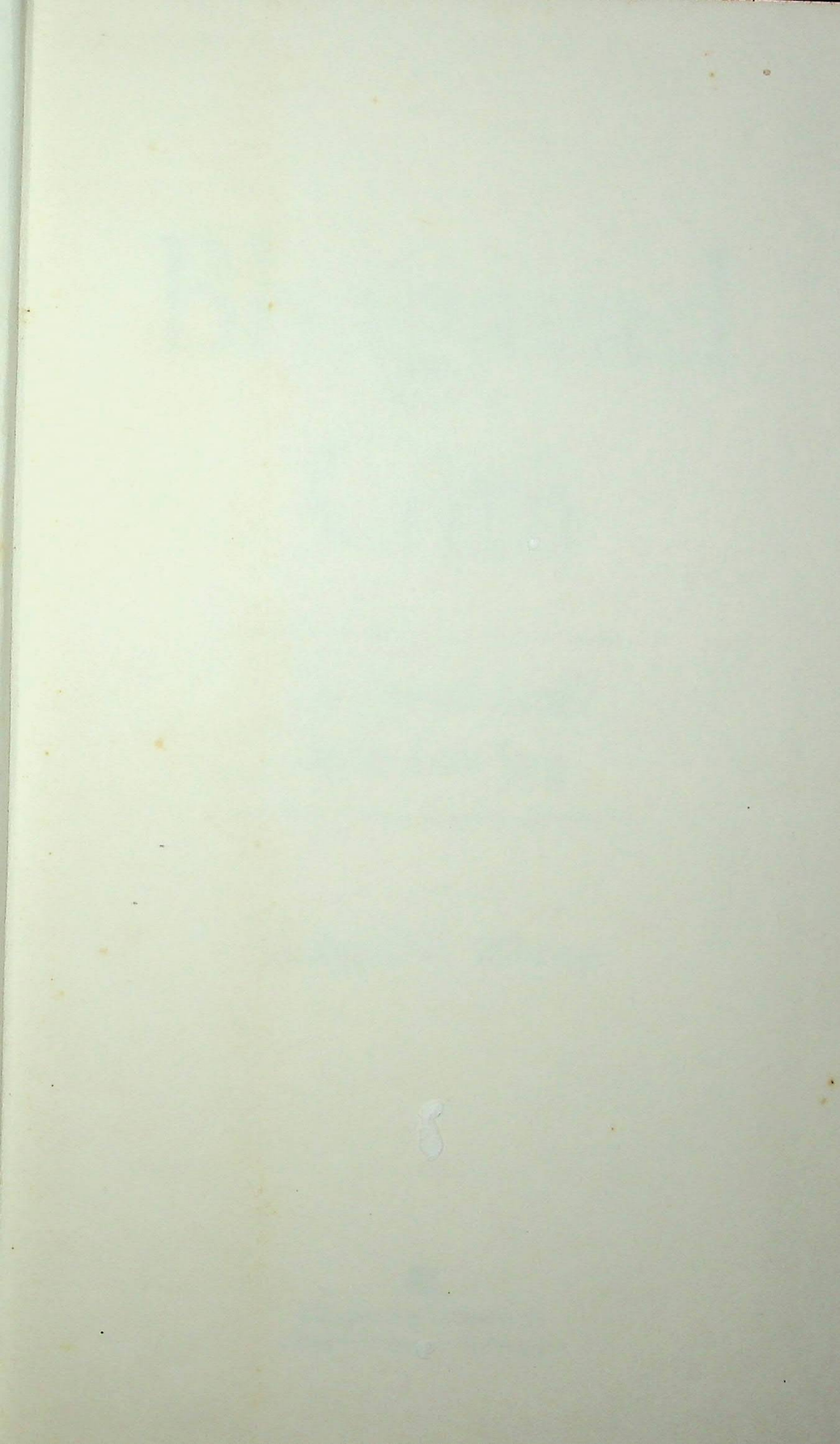


USA \$24.95

CAN \$32.50

THE *BHAGAVAD GITA* IS OFTEN REGARDED as the Bible of India. With a gripping story and deeply compelling message, it is unquestionably one of the most popular sacred texts of Asia and, along with the Bible and the Qur'an, one of the most important holy scriptures in the world.

Part of an ancient Hindu epic poem, the dialogue of the Bhagavad Gita takes place on a battlefield, where a war for the possession of a North Indian kingdom is about to ensue between two noble families related by blood. The epic's hero, young Prince Arjuna, is torn between his duty as a warrior and his revulsion at the thought of his brothers and cousins killing each other over control of the realm. Frozen by this ethical dilemma, he debates the big questions of life and death with the supreme Hindu deity Krishna, cleverly disguised as his charioteer. By the end of the story, Eastern beliefs about mortality and reincarnation, the vision and practice of yoga, the Indian social order and its responsibilities, family loyalty, spiritual knowledge, and the loftiest pursuits of the human heart are explored in depth. Explaining the very purpose of life and existence, this classic has stood the test of twenty-three centuries. It is presented here in a thoroughly accurate, illuminating, and beautiful translation that is sure to become the standard for our day.



Bhagavad Gītā

*The Beloved Lord's
Secret Love Song*


Graham M. Schweig



HarperSanFrancisco
A Division of HarperCollinsPublishers

BHAGAVAD GĪTĀ: *The Beloved Lord's Secret Love Song*. Copyright 2007 by Graham M. Schweig. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. No part of this book may be used or reproduced in any manner whatsoever without written permission except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. For information address HarperCollins Publishers, 10 East 53rd Street, New York, NY 10022.

HarperCollins books may be purchased for educational, business, or sales promotional use. For information please write: Special Markets Department, HarperCollins Publishers, 10 East 53rd Street, New York, NY 10022.

HarperCollins Web site: <http://www.harpercollins.com>
HarperCollins®, , and HarperSanFrancisco™ are
trademarks of HarperCollins Publishers.

FIRST EDITION

Designed by Joseph Rutt

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Bhagavadgita. English & Sanskrit.

Bhagavad Gītā : the beloved Lord's secret love song / Graham M. Schweig.
p. cm.

In English and Sanskrit (romanized); includes translation from Sanskrit.
Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN: 978-0-06-075425-9

ISBN-10: 0-06-075425-7

I. Schweig, Graham M. II. Title.

BLI138.62.E5 2006

294.5'92404521—dc22

2006041312

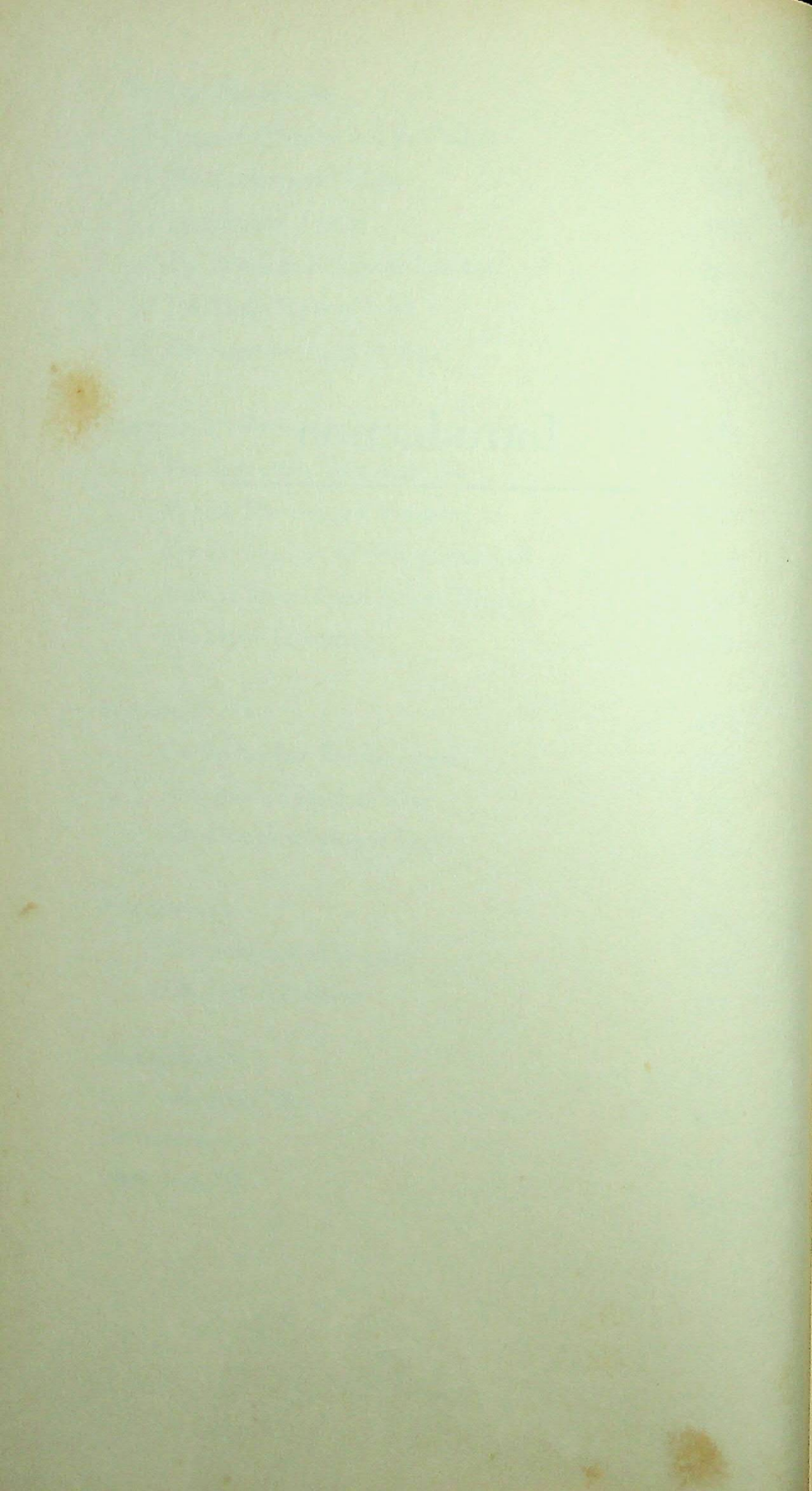
07 08 09 10 11 RRD (H) 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Contents

INTRODUCTION	I
The Meaning of Bhagavad Gītā	3
The Bhagavad Gītā in Context	4
Outer and Inner Conflict	6
Literary Dimensions	11
 BHAGAVAD GĪTĀ	 15
Dramatis Personae	17
The Setting	17
Epithets	18
TRANSLATION	19
1 Arjuna's Conflict and Despair	21
2 The Way of Discernment	35
3 The Way of Action	57
4 The Way of Knowledge	69
5 The Way of Renunciation	81
6 The Way of Meditation	91
7 The Way of Realized Knowledge	107
8 The Transcendent Brahman	117
9 The King of Secrets	127
10 The Sublime Presence of Divinity	137
11 Vision of the Universal Form	151

12 The Way of Love	169
13 Primordial Nature and the Person	175
14 The Qualities of Nature	185
15 The Ultimate Person	193
16 The Divine and Ungodly Natures	201
17 The Three Types of Faith	209
18 The Supreme Secret of Yoga	219
TEXTUAL ILLUMINATIONS	243
The Yoga of the Bhagavad Gitā	245
Sanjaya: Minister and Visionary	253
Arjuna: Warrior and Softhearted Soul	256
Krishna: Intimate and Infinite Divinity	259
The Secret Love Song	272
SANSKRIT TEXT	279
On the English Transliteration	281
Recitation of Sanskrit Verse	282
The Complete Sanskrit Text	283
APPENDICES	323
Pronunciation of Sanskrit	325
On This Translation	327
<i>Select Bibliography</i>	335
<i>Index to Verses and Text</i>	337
<i>Acknowledgments</i>	361
<i>About the Author</i>	363

Introduction



The Meaning of the Bhagavad Gītā

The Bhagavad Gītā comes to us from sacred India. Its verses of ancient wisdom on the mysteries of human existence speak to us today as if they had just been spoken. The Bhagavad Gītā is one of the most loved works among the collections of scriptural texts found within the Hindu traditions. It also stands out among the holy books of the major world religions, for its flowing Sanskrit verses present a uniquely vivid portrait of the intimacy between humanity and divinity. Indeed, this divine intimacy is revealed in the form of a dialogue that takes the soul on an inward journey culminating in the ultimate state of yoga, in which souls unite with the heart of God.

The Bhagavad Gītā, often called simply “the Gītā,”¹ is essentially a book on yoga.² This profound teaching is the book on yoga par excellence because it presents yoga in the most comprehensive sense of the term and in all its depth. As discussed in “Textual Illuminations,” yoga covers a broad range of practices and visions, significantly more than what we encounter in the West, or for that matter more than what a reading of famous treatises on yoga, such as the Yoga Sūtra of Patanjali, may yield. In the Gītā, the concept of the sacred connection of humanity with divinity is gradually introduced and developed, then fully disclosed as the “supreme secret of yoga.”³

Bhagavad Gītā may be translated as “the song of the Beloved Lord,” which conveys a divine yearning. The word *Bhagavad*⁴ means “the Beloved Lord,” referring to Krishna, whose voice is prominent

1 Throughout this discussion, the title Bhagavad Gītā is shortened to “the Gītā.” In footnotes and verse references the title is abbreviated as BG. When specific verses are referenced, the chapter number appears first, followed by the verse number.

2 The word *yoga* is found 78 times in the BG, appearing in every chapter except three (chapters 1, 15, and 17). The word *yoga* and related words, such as *yogi* (found 28 times) and *yukta* (found 49 times), appear 155 times. This means that in over 20 percent of the Gītā’s verses the word *yoga* or its related forms appear.

3 This phrase is found in the words *guhyamparam yogam* in BG 18.75. The “supreme secret” is discussed at length in the “Textual Illuminations.”

4 The *g* in *Bhagavad* is pronounced as in *go*; the *a* is pronounced as in *about*. See “Pronunciation of Sanskrit.” The word *Bhagavad*, translated as “the Beloved Lord,” is a modified form of *bbagavat*, according to the Sanskrit rules of euphonic combination, *sandhi*. The word often appears in other works as *bhagavān*, the word’s inflected form in the nominative case.

throughout the work. In the Bhagavad Gītā, Krishna, perhaps the most loved of all manifestations of divinity in India, is identified as the ultimate and supreme Lord, from whom all other divine manifestations emanate. *Gītā*⁵ means "song," in this case one coming from Krishna or God. Clearly the text is a philosophical poem and not a song in the literal sense. At a deeper level, however, it is a song issuing forth from the heart of God. It is the secret call of the divinity for all souls to love him, to take the journey to him, to be blissfully united with him.

The Bhagavad Gītā in Context

Although India is the birthplace of a variety of religious traditions, including Buddhism, Jainism, and Sikhism, it is Hinduism that is the dominant religion in India today. Hinduism is composed of several primary and numerous less familiar traditions, all theologically distinctive, yet each acknowledging the revelational authority of a common ancient scriptural source. Possibly the oldest sacred text in the world, dating as far back as 2500 to 1500 BCE, the collection of Sanskrit hymns known as the Vedas are foundational for the myriad traditions that come under the umbrella of Hinduism. These traditions make up the largest constituency of religious practitioners in South Asia. Among these, the traditions that focus upon the supreme divinity of Krishna or his cosmic manifestation of Vishnu are known as Vaishnava, and they constitute the dominant form of religion. The Bhagavad Gītā comes to us from this Vaishnava tradition, which is present throughout India and, in the second half of the twentieth century, around the globe.⁶

This beloved book of India is often called the "bible of Hinduism" in the West. As the Bible is for Christians and the Qur'an

⁵ Pronounced "geet-ah."

⁶ A. C. Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda (1896–1977), as an elderly monk, along with his disciples, established the orthodox practice of the Chaitanya school of Vaishnavism (as the modern Krishna movement) in many major cities around the world, beginning with the United States in 1965. His translation and traditional commentary on the Gītā, *Bhagavad-gītā As It Is* (New York: Macmillan Publishing Co., 1972; Los Angeles: Bhaktivedanta Book Trust, 1983, 1989), is by far the most widely read and distributed in the world.

for Muslims, so it could be said that the Bhagavad Gītā is for Hindus, for it is the single most influential philosophical sacred text coming from South Asia. Though it is, since the seventh century, the most widely read and commented on holy text in all of India, it comes from a tradition that reveres many sacred texts, unlike Western religious traditions, which focus on one sacred book of revelation. Moreover, though the Bhagavad Gītā is usually read alone, it is a small section of a substantially larger text, perhaps the largest epic poem in the world, the Mahābhārata. The philosophical verses of the Gītā stand gracefully as an autonomous text with a beginning, middle, and end, despite their original placement within the continuum of this greater epic poem. The Mahābhārata, containing approximately 100,000 verses, is thought by Western scholars to have appeared in its final form sometime between 500 BCE and 200 CE, though traditional dating of events in the text places them in the third millennium BCE. The eighteen chapters of the Gītā appear as chapters 23 through 40 in the Book of Bhīshma, the sixth of the Mahābhārata's eighteen books.

Historically, we first come to know of the divinity of Krishna in the Bhagavad Gītā text. Although his identity as "the divine lover" is not revealed in the Gītā, Krishna is traditionally appreciated as the divinity who sends out a love call to all souls. His call is intended for those who relate to him in loving intimacy, not for those who regard him with reverential awe, worshipping primarily his attributes of cosmic power and majesty. As the supreme divinity, Krishna plays multiple roles, adopts a variety of personae, and displays numerous grand and cosmic manifestations, yet he is also delightfully playful and personal. The various roles that Krishna assumes in his more intimate acts, particularly as a youthful cowherd, are considered the most exquisite, revealing endearing and beautiful visions of the supreme.

Most enchanting and charming, Krishna is loved and worshipped by Hindus in a variety of forms: as a sweet but mischievous child, as the closest friend, or even as the ultimate lover. In these intimate relationships with the divinity, Krishna, famous for his divine love call, sends forth his call by producing captivating music on his flute. He is best known for alluring the lovely cowherd maidens of the paradisaal village of Vraja out of

their homes, one serene autumn evening. Upon hearing his irresistibly sweet flute music, the maidens abruptly abandon their families and household duties to join him in the moonlit forest. On this sanctified night, the maidens and Krishna enact the famous Rāsa Līlā, which I have broadly translated as the “dance of divine love.”⁷

In the Bhagavad Gītā, Krishna’s call to love, the expression of his divine longing, is a more hidden feature of the text, though it carries the Gītā’s most powerful message: the heart of God passionately desires to connect with the hearts of humans. Here, Krishna’s love call is directed to Arjuna, his dearest friend, who already knows Krishna’s love but finds himself in a devastating worldly crisis that distracts him from the heart of God. In the dialogue that ensues between Krishna and Arjuna, Krishna gently and compassionately brings Arjuna’s heart back to his divine heart, even in the midst of the most trying of circumstances—war. As might be expected, the outer conflict that distracts Arjuna from his relationship with Krishna is accompanied by intense inner conflict. This personal crisis, however, serves to reunite Arjuna with the divinity, enabling him to return to the overwhelming challenges of the outer world with renewed strength and resolve.

Outer and Inner Conflict

When turning to the first verse, the reader steps into a greater story that is already taking place. The opening words are spoken by a king, which we discover from his epithetical name, Dhritarāshtra, meaning “powerful ruler.” From the background story that surrounds the Gītā event we learn that this king, significantly, was born blind. The sons of the king are prepared to lead his army into battle against the sons of his deceased younger brother,

⁷ This celebrated passage is found in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, tenth book, chapters 29–33. See my *Dance of Divine Love: India’s Classic Sacred Love Story: The Rāsa Līlā of Krishna* (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2005) for a translation and comprehensive treatment of this sacred text, with an introduction.

Pāndu, who inherited the throne from their renowned ancestor, the great King Bharata, due to the older son's blindness. Unfortunately, when the noble and righteous Pāndu passed away, his five sons (the Pāndavas) were too young to assume the throne. Their envious uncle, in his blindness, thus took over the kingdom and ruled for many years, with devastating results. The Pāndavas, led by Pāndu's grown son, the general and archer Arjuna—the mightiest warrior of his time—fervently desire to take charge of the kingdom to restore peace. Their uncle and his sons, however, led by the eldest son, Duryodhana, have refused to surrender the throne. Consequently, a battle is inevitable.

This great classic of some seven hundred Sanskrit verses opens with the tension of imminent battle, as each army, lined up like pieces on a chessboard, looks over the other, setting the stage for the dialogue of the Bhagavad Gītā. The first half of the first chapter can be understood as the narration of Arjuna's outer conflict (BG I.1–I.27) and the second half as the expression of his inner conflict (BG I.28–I.47). The full impact of the looming confrontation weighs on Arjuna as he prepares to lead his men against an enemy army composed of many of his teachers, friends, and even relatives. Anticipating that he will have to fight and slay those whom he loves and reveres, Arjuna is overcome by grief and hurled into debilitating despair:

My limbs are sinking down
and my mouth has
become very dry.
Also, my body trembles
and the hairs of
my limbs stand on end.

My bow, Gāndīva,
falls from my hand
and even my skin is burning.
I also am unable
to stand steadily and
my mind seems to be reeling.

(BG I.29–I.30)

While experiencing such agonizing symptoms of dread, Arjuna is unable to respond in accordance with his nature as a warrior to the outer conflict he faces.

The Gītā begins, then, by introducing a seemingly irresolvable ethical challenge: should the virtuous Arjuna protect the innocent by fighting an enemy army composed of loved ones and gurus? The ethical codes of ancient India command him to carry out his duty as the leading warrior of his time, to protect the innocent from ruthless forces; yet these same codes forbid a warrior to kill family, friends, and especially a teacher or beloved guru. Indeed, the Gītā informs us that there always will be ethical conflict in the outer world. Consequently, the text does not attempt to resolve the dilemma that befalls Arjuna, at least not directly. Instead it points to something deeper.

This work of Indian spirituality not only raises the question of the appropriate action for Arjuna to adopt, it also defines the existential challenge facing every human being. As struggling souls we ultimately attempt to transform our precarious painful world into a meaningful one. In the first half of the opening verse, spoken by the blind king Dhritarāshtra, the Gītā presents such an existential tension:

On the field of dharma,
 on the field of Kuru,
 assembled together
 desiring to fight,
 Were my armies
 and indeed those
 of the sons of Pāndu—
 how did they act, O Sanjaya?

(BG I.1)

The first two lines, *dharma-kshetre*, "on the field of dharma" and *kuru-kshetre*, "on the field of Kuru," set the stage for this tension. The field of Kuru, the holy place known as Kurukshetra, is presented here as a place of "dharma." Named after the pious King Kuru, the common ancestor of Dhritarāshtra and Pāndu, Kurukshetra is, ironically, the site where the civil war between the sons

of these two brothers, along with their respective armies, is about to take place. The reader learns that in the world of human interaction, we have an opportunity to live a life of dharma—a godly life promoting true happiness in relation to our worldly responsibilities and ultimate spiritual goals—or an ungodly life, in which forces destructive to dharma constantly prevail. The armies of the Pāndavas, the sons of Pāndu, represent the life of dharma; Dhritarāshtra's armies, the Kauravas, are destroyers of dharma.

Like Arjuna, we humans often are caught between Pāndava– and Kaurava–like forces, vacillating between thoughts and activities that elevate the spirit, helping us to rise above the destructive forces surrounding us, and those that degrade the spirit and further embroil us in the perils of worldly existence. The Gītā speaks deeply to each of us, for at some point, doesn't every soul, like Arjuna, face a unique battlefield in the outer world as well as within? Throughout, Krishna proffers not only *that* we must act, but also *how* we must act to fight our individual battles. The axial core of the Gītā is this perpetual existential tension that we encounter—but not without purpose, the Gītā propounds.

The foundational theme for the entire Gītā is dramatically established in the opening verse through the king's inquiry, "How did they act, O Sanjaya?" This question reveals the major theme of action, around which the teaching of the Bhagavad Gītā revolves: what action is, why and how we must act, our relation to action and nonaction, when action is right or wrong, and how we should understand action in all circumstances. The blessings that surround us in this world, symbolized by the holy place of Kurukshetra as a place of dharma; the struggles that we face in the world, represented by the desire to fight; and the dilemma of how to act in light of the tension between the two, expressed by the king's question, combine to make this opening verse of the Gītā the "seed" verse of the whole text.⁸

The Gītā's ultimate teaching—its response to the question of how souls should act in this world—is that souls should at all

⁸ The practice of implanting the essential idea or "seed," around which the whole text revolves, in an opening passage or verse, often occurs in great Sanskrit works.

times and in every circumstance *act out of love*. By hearing Krishna's call to love, Arjuna discovers a more elevated state of consciousness, then an inner state of transcendence, and finally, a state of eternal freedom in which his heart can fully love God and, consequently, all beings. From this newfound fortitude and love, Arjuna is prepared to act with full-heartedness.⁹

The opening question concerning action is posed by the troubled King Dhritarāshtra. He approaches his minister Sanjaya, who functions as a sage. This forms the outer dialogue of the text. As we have seen, the king is an illegitimate ruler, misguided and selfish. Thus he is emblematic of our human condition, for we all can be, in a sense, blinded by myopic vision, by self-centeredness. We are blind kings ruling over our false kingdoms, misguided and selfish in our individual existences. Our false kingdoms are the very fleeting worlds to which we impute eternal significance, as if our impermanent lives were going to last forever. The king's troubled state leads him to inquire from his minister, who is granted exceptional vision. The Gītā also encourages us in our "blindness" to seek out someone of broad spiritual insight for divine guidance:

Learn this
 by humble submission,
 by thorough inquiry,
 and by serving.
 They will impart
 this knowledge to you,
 for they are knowers
 and seers of the truth.

(BG 4.34)

Sanjaya, who has a vision of the truth, through his outer dialogue with the king, becomes the narrator of the private inner dialogue between Krishna and Arjuna. This conversation is then meant to be contemplated deeply within the heart and lived by in our challenging worlds.

⁹ Full-heartedness refers to the state of *bhakti* in which the heart is brimming over with love for the divinity and therefore, for all beings in whose hearts the divinity resides.

Literary Dimensions

The journey of the soul to the divinity and the ways in which the divinity embraces the soul are described in the Bhagavad Gītā in narrative, conversational, philosophical, and didactic verse. The Gītā presents a variety of paths leading the soul to the divine, along with various manifestations of divinity. The majority of its verses focus on three concepts: (1) a philosophical vision of the human self and the nature of the precarious "outer world"; (2) the various paths and practices that lead the self to the "inner world" of transcendence and personal presence of the divine; and (3) the "innermost world" of the heart, where divinity is encountered directly in a dialogue between the soul and God, as represented by the heartfelt exchange between Arjuna and Krishna.

In effect, then, the Gītā takes us, along with Arjuna, on an internal journey to the innermost region of the heart. The hardships of the outer world often distract the soul from the inner world, hurling the soul into despondency. The Gītā demonstrates how souls can reconnect with the divine in their hearts, thereby attaining a state of full-heartedness. From this position of inner strength and fulfillment, the soul is able to return to the battlefield of the outer world with courage, fully prepared to act. The inner dialogue between Arjuna and Krishna is private; no one on the battlefield is close enough to hear or directly observe it. This intimate conversation is a deeply loving exchange that discloses the secret love song of the divinity, relieving Arjuna of his insurmountable grief and awarding him a full heart.

The voices of Krishna and Arjuna are heard throughout the Gītā, along with an occasional supporting narrative by Sanjaya. Of these, it is Krishna's voice that is heard the most.¹⁰ Although his voice appears only once in the first chapter, it dominates the other seventeen. Arjuna's voice is prominent in the first and eleventh chapters, and is heard in only twenty-eight verses in twelve other chapters.¹¹ Sanjaya's voice is heard most frequently in the first chapter and is found in three others. The text concludes with five

10 Krishna speaks in 575 verses, roughly 82 percent of the text.

11 Arjuna speaks in 83 verses, roughly 12 percent of the text.

effusive verses spoken by Sanjaya to Dhritarāshtra, thus resuming the outer dialogue, which expresses the bliss the soul derives from recalling the words spoken between Krishna and Arjuna.

For one encountering the work for the first time, it is important to note that Krishna and Arjuna are given numerous epithets in the text. Arjuna is given at least twenty other names and Krishna at least thirty-three. One encounters such names as: Govinda (one who tends the cows), Supreme Person, and Slayer of Madhu for Krishna; and Pārtha (son of Prithā), Mighty-Armed, and Bhārata (descendant of King Bharata) for Arjuna. The devotee of Krishna experiences endless delight in affectionately calling the beloved Lord by any number of these names. Indeed, another section of the Mahābhārata text, known as *Vishnu Sahasra Nāma*, "The Thousand Names of Vishnu," bespeaks this practice.¹² Therefore, it should not surprise the reader to find such variety of nomenclature in the Gītā. (The complete list of epithets for Arjuna and Krishna appears in the "Dramatis Personae.")

The Bhagavad Gītā is reminiscent of other sacred texts, in particular the Vedas and the Upanishads, which contribute to the work's synthetic character. As stated above, Vaishnava traditions, along with other Hindu traditions, revere these scriptural works for their foundational revelations. Beginning with the Vedas, a significant part is dedicated to devotional Sanskrit hymns. To compare, in the following passage Arjuna marvels at the magnificence and divinity of Krishna:¹³

You are the indestructible,
the supreme object of knowledge.
You are the supreme
resting place of all.
You are the everpresent
protector of lasting dharma.
You are the eternal Person—
so it is understood by me.

(BG II.18)

¹² Found in Anuśāsan Parvan of the Mahābhārata and in the Padma Purāna.

¹³ See BG 10.12–18; 11.15–31.

Here one is reminded of the Vedic worshipper whose voice extols the greatness of the divine in its myriad forms.

The Gītā is also reminiscent of the dialogues between student and teacher found in the Upanishads, the other source mirrored in the text. The following verses of the Gītā remind one of the Upanishads:

Arjuna said:

What is the description
 of one established
 in profound knowledge,
 who is established
 in perfect meditation,
 O Keshava?
 How would
 one established
 in thought speak?
 How would one sit?
 How would one move about?

The Beloved Lord said:

When a person gives up
 all selfish desires
 arising from the mind,
 O Pārtha,
 Satisfied within the self
 by the self alone,
 then that person
 is said to be established
 in profound knowledge.
 (BG 2.54–2.55)

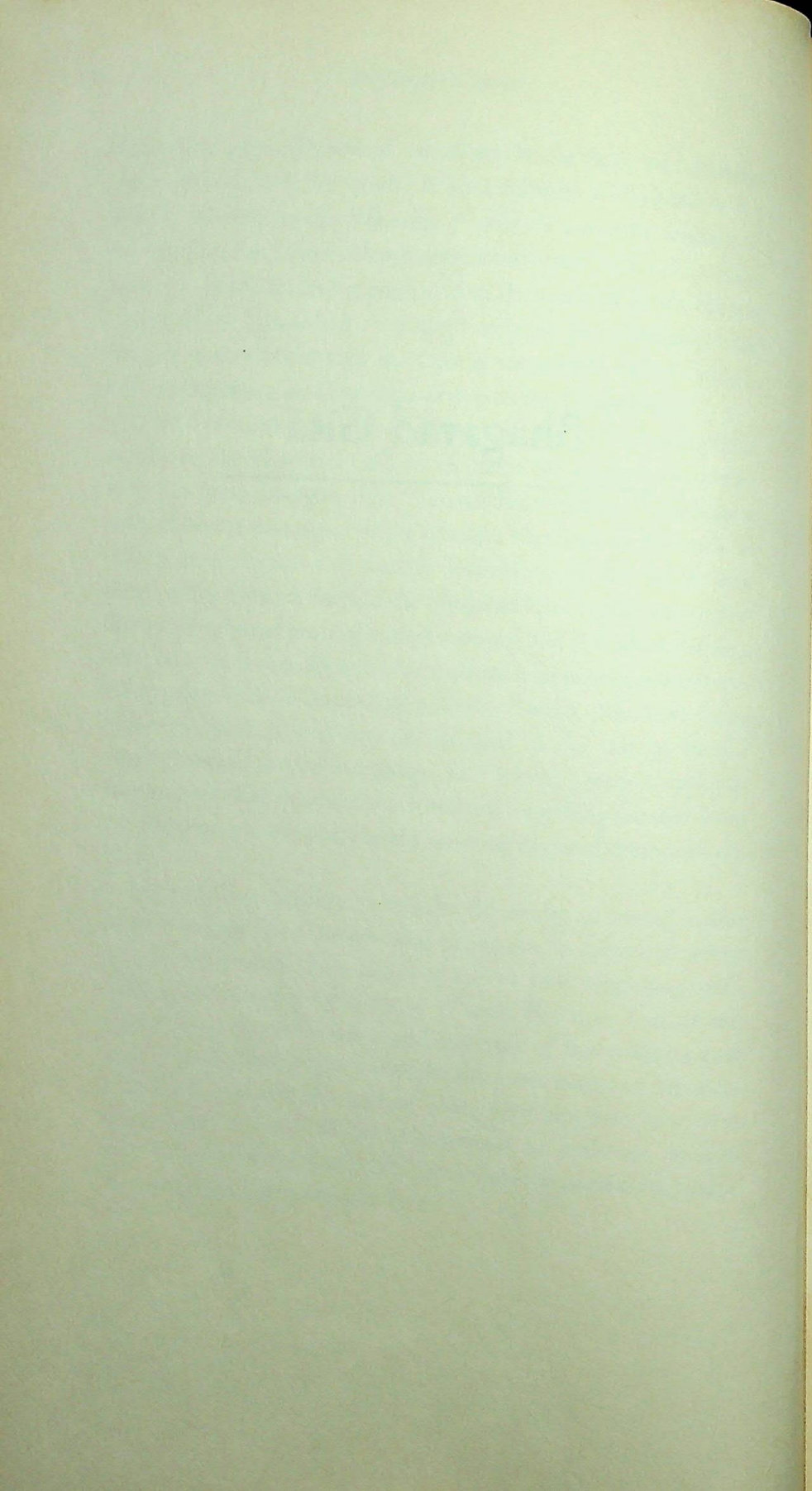
The dominant literary structure of the Bhagavad Gītā text is a dialogue, comprised of both inner and outer dialogues. The voice of the master is by far the most prominent within the inner dialogue and reflects an important dimension of Krishna's relationship with Arjuna, that of the compassionate teacher with the submissive

student. Arjuna asks several questions in the text, and Krishna responds with didactic words. Arjuna submits to Krishna as his humble student in the following words: "I am your student—instruct me, for I have offered myself unto you" (BG 2.7). This paradigm of the student inquiring from the spiritual guide, characteristic of the Upanishads, is present early on and throughout the Gītā. It is no wonder that the Gītā is sometimes called *Gitopaniṣad*, expressing its close relationship to the Upanishads.

I have presented briefly some key literary and philosophical aspects of the Bhagavad Gītā to facilitate the reader's encounter with this great dialogue. The "Textual Illuminations" provides a more elaborate discussion of the complex theology of the work, as well as an exploration of various dimensions of the "secret love song" of the divinity. Because the Bhagavad Gītā engages many traditions of spiritual practice and philosophy and is framed within a complex epic, it is challenging for any reader to penetrate its essential message. Indeed, traditional schools of India often have taken minor practices or philosophies engaged in the text to be the whole intent of the text's message. And Western readers typically have grasped only that part which reflects something familiar from the Abrahamic traditions, thereby ignoring essential themes of the Gītā.

My purpose, therefore, is to offer the reader an overall vision derived directly from the text that allows one to appreciate every aspect of the work. This vision is one of love, beginning with God's heart yearning for the love of souls. For now, I invite the reader to encounter the ideas and messages of this complex text with an open heart. As you consider the predicament of the soft-hearted Arjuna, take the journey along with him into your own heart, where you will begin to experience an authentic ancient voice of spiritual wisdom that for millennia has moved the hearts of countless millions the world over.

Bhagavad Gītā



Dramatis Personae

(in order of appearance)

Dhritarāshtra

Speaker of the first verse; the king to whom the whole text is narrated, for whose throne the war is being fought

Sanjaya

Narrator; the king's minister, who has been given special power to hear and see events on the battlefield and the great dialogue between Arjuna and Krishna

Duryodhana

A leading general of the Kauravas; cousin of Arjuna; eldest son of Dhritarāshtra; the prime instigator of the fratricidal conflict

Arjuna

A leading general of the Pāndavas; cousin of Duryodhana; son of Pāndu (the younger brother of Dhritarāshtra), who speaks with Krishna throughout the text (see Epithets below)

The Beloved Lord

Krishna, Arjuna's chariot driver, who imparts teachings and engages in personal dialogue with Arjuna for the greater part of the text (see Epithets below)

The Setting

Geographic location: the holy site of Kurukshetra ("the field of Kuru"), a rural area located in central northern India about one hundred miles north of Delhi.

The scene on the Kurukshetra battlefield: The massive opposing armies, composed of the righteous army of the sons of Pāndu, the Pāndavas, led by Arjuna, and the unrighteous army of the sons of Dhritarāshtra, the Kurus, led by Duryodhana, the eldest son. On his chariot, Krishna drives Arjuna into the middle of the battlefield, between the armies, to survey the warriors and battle scene.

Epithets

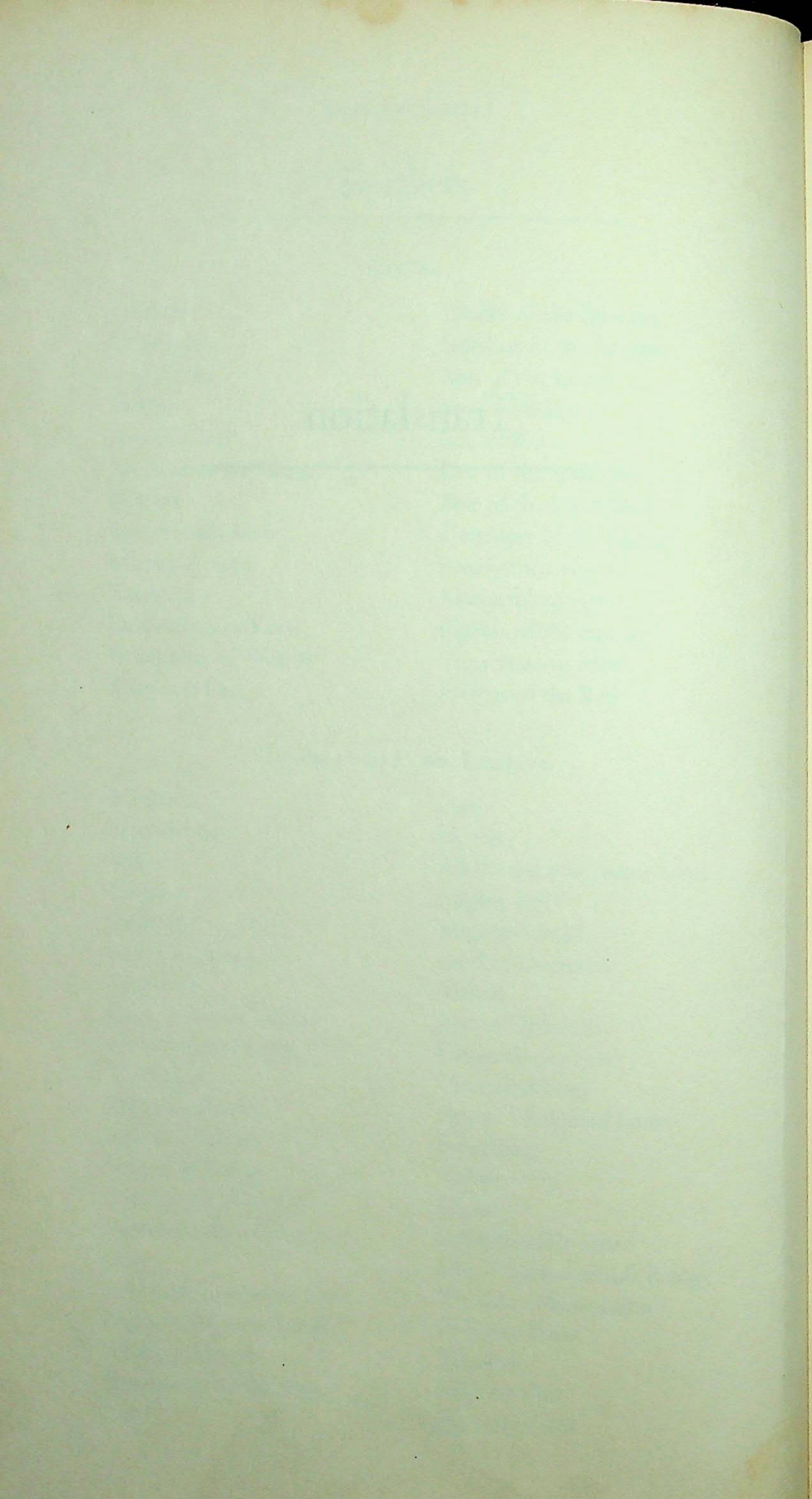
ARJUNA

Pāndava	Leader of the Bharatas
Dhananjaya	Subduer of the Enemy
Gudākesha	Best of the Kurus
Pārtha	Son of Pāndu
Son of Kuntī	Son of Kuru
Scorcher of the Enemy	Best of the Bharatas
Bhārata	Best of the Embodied
Best Among Men	Destroyer of the Enemy
Mighty-Armed	Hero of the Kurus
Kaunteya	Masterful Archer
Descendant of Kuru	Fighter of the Enemy
Conqueror of Wealth	Tiger Among Men
Blameless One	Holder of the Bow

THE BELOVED LORD, KRISHNA

Mādhava	Hari
Hrishīkesha	Divinity
Achyuta	All-Pervasive Supreme Lord
Keshava	Mighty Self
Govinda	Mighty-Armed
Madhusūdhana	Lord of Divinities
Janārdana	Vishnu
Descendant of Vrishni	Best of Divinities
Slayer of the Enemy	Extraordinary Self
Vārshneya	Unlimited Lord
Ultimate Person	One of Unlimited Form
Supreme Person	Everything
Source of Beings	Yādava
Divinity of Divinities	Friend
Master of the Universe	Unfathomable One
Yogi	One of Incomparable Being
One with Lotus-like Eyes	Thousand-Armed One
Highest Supreme Lord	Universal Form
Ultimate Person	Vāsudeva
Supreme Lord of Yoga	Majestic One
Lord	Slayer of Keshi

Translation



Arjuna's Conflict and Despair

Dhritarāshtra said:

On the field of dharma,
on the field of Kuru,
assembled together
desiring to fight,
Were my armies
and indeed those
of the sons of Pāndu—
how did they act, O Sanjaya?¹

I

1 Dhritarāshtra: The hard-hearted king of the Kurus, blind from birth, while sitting in his palace, desires to know what is occurring on the battlefield, where a civil war between his sons and nephews, the heroic sons of his brother Pāndu, is about to begin.

On the field of dharma: Translates *dharmakṣetre*. This phrase tells the reader that the field of Kuru, or Kurukshetra, is a holy place, a place of dharma (see meaning of *dharmā* below).

On the field of Kuru: Translates *kurukṣetre*, the name of the holy place Kurukshetra, about 100 miles north of Delhi, India's modern capital city.

Dharma: A state of righteousness, a personal calling to goodness, cosmic harmony, sound ethical law, or justice. The very first word in the opening Sanskrit verse.

Kuru: Name of a common ancestral king for the leaders of both armies, the

sons of Dhritarāshtra and the sons of his brother, Pāndu.

The sons of Pāndu: Also known as the Pāndavas, the five sons of King Pāndu, whose names are presented in verses 15 and 16 below; also, the name of the army led by Arjuna.

Pāndu: The younger brother of Dhritarāshtra, who was king before his untimely death.

How did they act: The word *act* translates an active form of the verbal root *kr*, which means "to act." The noun form, *karma*, meaning "action," is a major theme of the BG. All words that derive from this verbal root are here translated with some form of the word *act*.

Sanjaya: The king's minister, endowed by Vyāsa with the power to see what is transpiring on the battlefield at every moment, recounts these events to the king.

Sanjaya said:

Now seeing the armies
of the Pāṇdavas arrayed
in battle formation,
King Duryodhana,
approaching his teacher,
spoke these words:²

2

[Duryodhana said:]

Behold these mighty warriors
of the sons of Pāṇdu,
O Revered Teacher,
Arrayed in
battle formation
by the son of Drupada,
your own skillful student.³

3

Here are their heroes,
powerful archers equal
to Bhīma and Arjuna in battle:
Yuyudhāna and Virāta,
and King Drupada,
the great chariot warrior;⁴

4

2 Pāṇdavas: The sons of the Pāṇdus and the army led by Arjuna. Beginning with this verse, Duryodhana reviews the powerful warriors on the opposing side.

King Duryodhana: The oldest son of King Dhritarāshtra and the leading general of the Kuru warriors who oppose the righteous Pāṇdavas. The name Duryodhana means "dirty fighter." This is the first of nine consecutive verses spoken by Duryodhana (BG 1.3-11).

His teacher: Refers to Dronacharya, the great teacher of warfare for both Arjuna and Duryodhana.

3 In verses 3 through 6, Duryodhana, the leader of the unrighteous Kurus, observes

the powerful warriors in the opposing army, led by Arjuna, his cousin. In verses 7 through 11, he then speaks about the superior power of his own men.

The son of Drupada: Dhristadyumna, the leading commander of the Pāṇdavas.

4 Bhīma: One of five Pāṇdava brothers known to be a great warrior.

Arjuna: One of five Pāṇdava brothers who lead the Pāṇdava army; the loving friend of Krishna to whom the teachings of the BG are spoken.

Yuyudhāna and the other men named in this verse, as well as in the following two verses, are all well-known and powerful warriors in the Pāṇdava army.

Dhrishtaketu, Chetikāna,
 and the heroic king of Kāshi;
 Purojit and Kuntibhoja,
 and Shaibya, leader among men; 5

And the courageous
 Yudhāmanyu, also
 the valorous Uttamaujas;
 The son of Subhadṛā
 and the sons of Draupadi—
 all certainly great chariot warriors.⁵ 6

However, our own men,
 the most distinguished—
 learn about them,
 O Best of the Twice-Born.
 To inform you,
 I will tell you the names
 of those who are
 the leaders of my forces.⁶ 7

They are yourself and Bhīshma,
 also Karna and Kripa,
 victorious in battle;
 Also Ashwatthāma
 and Vikarna, and indeed,
 the son of Somadatta;⁷ 8

5 Son of Subhadṛā: Refers to Abhimanyu; Subhadṛā is Krishna's sister.

Sons of Draupadi: Draupadi is the wife of each of the five Pāṇḍavas, each with whom she has a son.

6 O Best of the Twice-born: Translates *dvijottama*, addressing Duryodhana's teacher, Drona, as the best of the Brahmins.

7 Bhīshma: The most venerated of the Kaurava warriors, who is the grand uncle of the Pāṇḍavas.

Karna: A half-brother and chief rival of Arjuna and a highly skilled bowman.

Kripa and the other warriors mentioned here are all prominent in the opposing Kaurava army.

And many other heroes
 who are willing to relinquish
 their lives for my sake—
 Wielding various weapons,
 all are highly skilled in battle. 9

Unlimited are our forces
 protected by Bhīshma,
 Whereas limited are their forces
 protected by Bhīma.⁸ 10

Thus in all maneuvers
 from your respective positions,
 You must certainly guard Bhīshma—
 indeed, every one of you.⁹ 11

[Sanjaya continued:]

Giving him [Duryodhana] a thrill,
 the revered elder
 of the Kurus [Bhīshma]
 Cried out the roar
 of a lion and blew
 his conch with great vigor. 12

Then conches and kettledrums,
 cymbals, drums, and trumpets
 Were all sounded at once—
 the vibration became tumultuous. 13

⁸ Unlimited: Translates the word *apar-yāptam*, also meaning paradoxically, "inadequate." Similarly, "limited," in the second half of the verse, translates *par-yāptam*, the positive form of this word, which also means "adequate." This double meaning expresses how Duryo-

dhana's overconfidence compensates for his insecurity regarding the outcome of the battle.

⁹ Duryodhana, after directing his words to his teacher, now turns to his men to instruct them.

Thereupon, standing
 in a magnificent chariot
 yoked with white horses,
 Mādhava [Krishna]
 and the Pāndava [Arjuna]
 sounded their divine conch shells.¹⁰ 14

Hrishīkesha [Krishna]
 blew the conch Panchajanya;
 Dhananjaya [Arjuna]
 blew the conch Devadatta;
 And Bhīma,
 the voracious eater
 who is terrifying in action,
 blew the great conch Paundra.¹¹ 15

King Yudhishtira,
 the son of Kuntī,
 blew his conch Anantavijaya;
 While Nakula and Sahadeva
 blew their conches,
 Sughosha and Manipushpaka.¹² 16

10 Mādhava: Name of Krishna meaning "a descendant of Madhu" (of the Yadu dynasty). This name indicates Krishna's distant family relationship with Arjuna, whose ancestry goes back to Puru. Yadu and Puru were sons of the great king Yayāti. This name is also associated with Krishna as the husband of the Great Goddess, Lakshmi Devi, the embodiment of all auspiciousness, success, prosperity, and happiness. This is the first verse in which Krishna is introduced.

11 Hrishīkesha: Name of Krishna meaning "the lord of the senses."

Dhananjaya: Name of Arjuna throughout the BG, meaning "conqueror of wealth."

Bhīma: One of the five Pāndavas and brother of Arjuna. The other three brothers are named in the next verse.

12 Yudhishtira: The eldest of the Pāndava brothers.

Nakula and Sahadeva: Two Pāndava brothers.

Also, the king of Kāshi,
 an expert archer,
 and Shikhandī,
 a great chariot warrior;
 Dhrishtadyumna and Virāta,
 along with Sātyaki,
 the unconquerable;

17

Drupada and the sons
 of Draupadī,
 grouped together,
 O Lord of the Earth;
 And the mighty-armed
 son of Subhadrā—
 all of them blew
 their conches one by one.¹³

18

That sound shattered the hearts
 of the sons of Dhritarāshtra,
 And indeed, the tumult caused
 the heavens and earth to resound.¹⁴

19

¹³ The son of Subhadrā: Abhimanyu, the son of Arjuna's second wife.

O Lord of the Earth: An epithet for Dhritarāshtra, the king to whom Sanjaya narrates this text.

¹⁴ The sons of Dhritarāshtra: Sanjaya identifies Dhritarāshtra's sons using a slightly altered Sanskrit form of the king's

name while narrating the events occurring far from the king. Thus Sanjaya is not ignoring the fact that the king sits before him by speaking of him in the third person. Rather, in Sanskrit, offspring are identified by a slightly altered form of the father's name, here as Dhārtarāshtra.

Thus observing
 the sons of Dhritarāshtra
 lined up in battle formation,
 The Pāndava [Arjuna],
 his chariot displaying
 the banner of the monkey,
 lifted his bow as weapons
 began to clash.¹⁵ 20

Then, O Lord of the Earth,
 to Hrishīkesha,
 he spoke these words:
 Between the two armies
 place my chariot,
 O Achyuta [Krishna],¹⁶ 21

So that I may look upon those
 who are standing here
 desiring battle—
 With whom
 must I battle while
 engaging in this war? 22

I look upon those
 about to engage in battle,
 who are assembled here
 Desiring to please
 the evil-minded son
 of Dhritarāshtra in battle.¹⁷ 23

¹⁵ The Pāndava: A son of King Pāndu, referring to Arjuna.

The banner of the monkey: The particular monkey referred to here is Hanu-mān, the great monkey servant of Rāma, a manifestation of Vishnu.

¹⁶ O Lord of the Earth: This epithet refers to Dhritarāshtra.

¹⁷ The evil-minded son of Dhritarāshtra: Duryodhana, who leads the Kuru army.

[Sanjaya continued:]

Hrishīkesha, thus addressed
by Gudākesha [Arjuna],
O Bhārata [Dhritarāshtra],
Placed his magnificent chariot
between the two armies.¹⁸

24

Facing Bhīshma, Drona,
and all the kings
of the earth,
He [Krishna] said,
"O Pārtha [Arjuna],
behold these Kurus
assembled here!"

25

Pārtha saw,
standing there—
fathers, then grandfathers,
Teachers, maternal uncles,
brothers, sons, grandsons,
as well as companions;

26

Fathers-in-law,
and even dear friends,
present in both battalions.
The Son of Kuntī [Arjuna],
observing all of them,
his kinsmen arrayed for battle;

27

18 O Bhārata: Son of Bharata, here referring to Dhritarāshtra.

Gudākesha: "The full-haired one."

Filled with deep compassion
 and falling into despair,
 spoke the following:
 Seeing my own relations,
 O Krishna, standing
 nearby ready to fight,¹⁹ 28

My limbs are sinking down
 and my mouth has
 become very dry.
 Also, my body trembles
 and the hairs of
 my limbs stand on end. 29

My bow, Gāndīva,
 falls from my hand
 and even my skin is burning.
 I also am unable
 to stand steadily and
 my mind seems to be reeling. 30

And I perceive signs of chaos,
 terrible reversals,
 O Keshava [Krishna],
 And I foresee
 no benefit in slaying
 my own relations in battle.²⁰ 31

¹⁹ With deep compassion: Translates *kṛpayā parayā*.
 Falling into despair: Translates *viśīdan*.

²⁰ Keshava: Name of Krishna meaning "the one with beautiful hair."

I do not desire victory,
 O Krishna,
 nor a kingdom,
 nor happiness.
 What use is a kingdom to us,
 O Govinda [Krishna]?
 What is the use of pleasures
 or purpose in living?²¹

32

Those persons for
 whose sake we desire
 such kingdom, pleasures,
 and happiness—
 They stand here arrayed
 in battle readiness,
 relinquishing
 their lives and wealth:

33

Our teachers,
 fathers, and sons;
 also grandfathers,
 Maternal uncles,
 fathers-in-law,
 grandsons,
 brothers-in-law,
 and other kinsmen.

34

21 Govinda: Name of Krishna meaning "the one who herds the cows." Con-

sidered to be an especially endearing and intimate name for Krishna.

I do not wish to slay them,
 even those who are
 about to slay,
 O Madhusūdana [Krishna],
 Even for the rule
 of the three worlds—
 how much less, then,
 for the rule of the earth?²² 35

What joy would there be for us,
 O Janārdana [Krishna],
 in slaying the sons
 of Dhritarāshtra?
 Certainly misfortune
 would fall upon us
 having slain them
 whose bows are drawn.²³ 36

Therefore, we are not entitled
 to slay the sons of
 Dhritarāshtra,
 our kinsmen.
 Indeed, in slaying
 our own relations,
 how could we realize
 happiness, O Mādhava?²⁴ 37

22 Madhusūdana: "Slayer of the demon Madhu," a well-known name for Krishna. Arjuna's use of this name suggests, "You slay demons, but even you don't slay persons whom you love and revere!"

23 Janārdana: Name of Krishna meaning "one who inspires human beings."

Misfortune: Translates *pāpa*, often rendered as "sin," which carries too much of the narrower Christian sense. I have chosen to translate as "misfortune" or "trouble," indicating both the unfortunate

things that can befall a person as well as something unfortunate that a person has caused. The word *pāpa* means anything disturbing that creates conflict internally and externally, an impediment in one's spiritual evolution causing effects that impede one's progress. The word *sin* has a much narrower application that carries a particular Christian sense not present in the Sanskrit word *pāpa*.

24 Happiness: Translates *sukhinaḥ*.

Even if, with their thoughts
 overcome by greed,
 they do not perceive
 The harm caused by acts
 that destroy the family,
 nor the crime in
 harming a friend;²⁵

38

Still, how can we not know
 to turn away from
 this wrongdoing,
 With our understanding of
 the harm caused by acts
 that destroy the family,
 O Janārdana?²⁶

39

In destroying the family,
 the eternal dharma
 of the family is lost.
 When dharma is lost,
 whatever opposes dharma
 also overcomes the entire family.²⁷

40

Because of the prevalence
 of that which opposes dharma,
 the women of the family
 become degraded.
 When the women are degraded,
 O Descendant of Vrishni [Krishna],
 disorder between classes of society arises.²⁸

41

25 Greed: Translates *lobha*.

Destroy the family: Translates *kula-kṣaya*.

Crime in harming a friend: Translates *mitra-droha*.

26 Wrongdoing: Translates *pāpa*.

Harm: Translates *doṣa*.

27 Dharma of the family: Translates *kula-dharma*.

Whatever opposes dharma: Translates *adbharma*, meaning lawlessness, chaos, or evil.

28 Disorder between classes of society: Translates *varṇa-saṁkaraḥ*. Sometimes taken as "confusion of caste."

This disorder certainly leads
to a place of torment
for destroyers of the family
and the family itself.

Indeed, the spirits of
their ancestors fall,
deprived of their ritual
offerings of rice and water. 42

By these wrongdoings of
the destroyers of the family,
which produce disorder
between the classes of society,

The dharmas of
lineages are ruined,
along with the eternal
dharma of the family.²⁹ 43

When the family dharma
of human beings
has been ruined,
O Janārdana,

Dwelling in a place of torment
certainly becomes their fate—
so we have heard
from sacred sources. 44

Ah yes!
what great misfortune
we are resolved to enact,
For which, out of greed
for the happiness of royalty,
we are prepared to slay
our own people. 45

29 The dharmas of lineages: Translates *jāti-dharmāḥ*, meaning the "dharmas of the castes." The BG focuses, however, mostly on *varṇa*, or the four major classes of society.

If without my acting
in opposition
and without any
weapons for myself,
The sons of Dhritarāshtra,
with weapons in their hands,
should slay me in battle—
that would be
a greater peace for me!

46

Thus speaking
in the midst of conflict,
Arjuna sat upon
the seat of the chariot.
Casting aside
his bow and arrow,
his mind was
tormented by sorrow.

47

The Way of Discernment

Sanjaya said:

To him who was thus
overwhelmed by compassion,
whose troubled eyes were
full of tears,
Who was deeply depressed,
Madhusūdana
spoke these words.

I

The Beloved Lord said:

From where
does your weakness
come at this time of crisis?
It is not befitting
the noble-minded,
nor does it lead
to celestial realms—
it causes disgrace, O Arjuna.¹

2

¹ The Beloved Lord: Translates *bha-gavān* or *bbagavat*, the same word as in the title — an epithet that refers to Krishna, which introduces Krishna's

words throughout the text. This is the first verse in which the words of Krishna are introduced.

Do not yield to
 this weakness, O Pārtha;
 it is inappropriate for you.
 Relinquishing this poor
 faint-heartedness,
 stand up,
 O Scorcher of the Enemy!

3

Arjuna said:

How shall I,
 in battle against
 Bhīshma and Drona,
 O Madhusūdana,
 Fight back with arrows
 against those who
 are worthy of respect,
 O Slayer of the Enemy?

4

Indeed, rather than slaying
 greatly revered gurus,
 It would be better
 to subsist in this world
 by begging for alms.
 For slaying such gurus,
 though they desire
 selfish gain in this world,
 Surely would taint
 with their blood
 any pleasures I might enjoy.²

5

² Desire: Translates the word *kāma*. This word, simply, means "desire," but most often carries the negative sense of "selfish" or "worldly" desire throughout the BG.

And we know not
 which of the two is better:
 Whether we should conquer them
 or they should conquer us.
 For having slain them
 we should not wish to live—
 They who are standing here before us,
 the sons of Dhritarāshtra.³

6

My very being
 is afflicted by a piteous
 weakness of spirit.
 My thoughts on dharma
 are completely bewildered.
 I ask you, tell me what
 is definitely better for me!
 I am your student—
 instruct me, for I have
 offered myself unto you.

7

Indeed, I cannot foresee
 what would dispel
 This grief that is
 drying up my senses,
 Even if achieving an unrivaled
 flourishing kingdom on earth,
 Or the sovereignty
 of celestial beings.⁴

8

³ Up until this verse, Arjuna has been speaking in the first person singular; here Arjuna speaks in the first person plural, "we," referring to himself and the leading

generals of his army.

⁴ Celestial beings: Translates the plural form of *sura*.

Sanjaya said:

Thus having spoken
to Hrishīkesha,
Gudākesha,
the subduer of the enemy,
Said to Govinda,
"I shall not fight!"
Having spoken thus,
he fell silent.

9

Hrishīkesha,
as if about to laugh,
O Bhārata [Dhritarāshtra],
In the midst of the two armies,
spoke these words to him
who was feeling despondent.

10

The Beloved Lord said:

You have grieved for that
which is not worthy of grief,
and yet you speak words
of profound knowledge.
The learned grieve
neither for those
who have passed on,
nor for those
who have not departed.⁵

11

5 Krishna's teachings commence with this verse.

Profound knowledge: Translates *prajñā*, often rendered as "wisdom."

Never, truly,
have I ever not existed—
nor you, nor these kings
who protect the people,
And never
shall any of us
ever cease to be,
now or forevermore. 12

Just as the embodied
while in this body
passes through childhood,
youth, and old age,
So also the embodied
attains another body—
the wise person
is not bewildered by this. 13

Certainly, contact
of the senses with matter,
O Kaunteya [Arjuna],
which results in cold, heat,
happiness, and suffering,
Comes and goes,
and is impermanent—
you must strive
to tolerate this,
O Bhārata [Arjuna]. 14

Indeed, the person whom
these do not trouble,
O Best Among Men,
The wise one for whom
suffering and happiness
are the same—
that one is prepared
for immortality. 15

Of the impermanent
 one finds no being;
 one finds no nonbeing
 of the permanent.

Indeed, the certainty
 of both of these
 has been perceived
 by seers of the truth.

16

Now, know that
 to be indestructible
 by which all this
 is pervaded.

No one is able
 to bring about
 the destruction
 of the everpresent.

17

These bodies,
 said to have an end,
 belong to the embodied,
 which is eternal,
 Indestructible,
 and immeasurable—
 therefore fight,
 O Bhārata!

18

One who considers
 it [the self] a slayer,
 and one who thinks
 it is slain,
 Both of these
 fail to understand—
 it does not slay,
 nor is it slain.

19

It does not take birth,
 nor does it ever die.
 Such a being has never
 come into being,
 nor shall it ever
 come to be.
 It is unborn, eternal,
 everlasting,
 and primeval.
 It is not slain
 when the body is slain.⁶ 20

One who knows this [self]
 to be indestructible,
 eternal, unborn,
 and everpresent—
 How and whom does
 that person slay, O Pārtha?
 And whom does
 that one cause to slay? 21

As a person abandoning
 worn-out garments
 acquires other new ones,
 So the embodied,
 abandoning worn-out bodies,
 enters other new ones. 22

6 This verse continues the chapter's theme on the self's eternal presence of being. The self has not come into existence at any time in the past nor does it have any end in the future (BG 2.12). If the self were not to exist at any time, then it would have no true being; and of the self's being there can be no nonexistence (BG 2.16). In the first quarter of this verse, the self does not take birth nor does it die. In the second quarter, it is a being (*bhūya*) that is eternally present,

which has never come into being (*bhūtvā*) and shall never come into being (*bhavitā*). Although the noun "being," referring to the self (*bhūya*), can be taken as a verb or an adverb, the most compelling translation as a noun is dictated by its philosophical context found in the two previous aforementioned verses. Most other translations render this verse philosophically inconsistent with these preceding verses.

Weapons do not pierce it,
 fire does not burn it,
 And water does not moisten it;
 nor does wind wither it.

23

It cannot be pierced;
 it cannot be burned,
 moistened, or
 even withered;
 Eternal,
 present everywhere,
 stationary, immovable—
 it is everlasting.⁷

24

This [self] is unmanifest,
 it is inconceivable,
 it is spoken of
 as unchangeable.
 Therefore,
 knowing this to be so,
 you should not grieve.

25

Further, if you think
 of this [self] as
 always being born
 or always dying—
 Even then,
 O Mighty-Armed,
 you should not
 grieve for this.

26

⁷ Present everywhere: Translates *sarvagataḥ*. This phrase can mean that the self is present everywhere in the body, or that selves permeate the whole universe. It can also refer to the Self, namely the divinity, who is present everywhere in the universe. Thus the BG's idea of self can indicate either the individual or the

supreme self. The Sanskrit word *ātman* is translated as "self" to indicate the self of the living being, or "Self" to indicate the supreme divinity present within the very self of every living being (as first seen in BG 4.6). Many verses can be taken as speaking about both simultaneously.

Indeed, for one who is born
death is certain,
and for one who has died
birth is certain.

Therefore, since this
process is inevitable,
you ought not to grieve. 27

Unmanifest are the beginnings
of beings; manifest are
their interims, O Bhārata;
Then again, unmanifest
are their endings—
what is lamentable about this? 28

Rarely, someone
perceives this [self];
Rarely, another
also speaks of it.
And rarely, indeed,
another hears about it;
Even having heard about it,
no one truly knows it. 29

The embodied,
eternally indestructible,
dwells within the body
of everyone, O Bhārata.
Therefore you
should not grieve
for any living being. 30

Moreover, considering
your own dharma,
you should not waver.
Truly, for a warrior,
nothing better exists
than a battle fought
according to dharma.

31

And if by good fortune
what is gained
is an opened door
to the celestial world,
Happy are the warriors,
O Pārtha,
who obtain such a fight.

32

Now, if you should not
undertake this battle,
which is in accordance
with dharma,
Then, abandoning
your own dharma
and reputation,
you shall meet
with misfortune.

33

Also, people certainly will speak
of your undying infamy.
And for one who has been honored,
such infamy is worse than death.

34

The great chariot warriors
will believe you have retreated
from battle out of fear.
And among those who once
held you in high esteem,
you shall come to be taken lightly. 35

And many unspeakable words
your enemies
will speak of you,
Deriding your ability—
now what could be
greater misery than this? 36

Either having been slain
you shall reach the celestial world,
or conquering
you shall enjoy the earth.
Therefore, rise up,
O Kaunteya,
acting with firm
resolve for battle. 37

Acting the same in
happiness and suffering,
gain and loss,
victory and defeat,
Then prepare for battle—
thus you shall not
suffer misfortune. 38

This discernment
 has been explained to you
 in [the philosophy of] Sāṅkhya;
 now hear about this
 in [the practice of] yoga.
 Be absorbed in yoga
 with discernment, O Pārtha,
 by which you shall throw off
 the bondage of action.⁸

39

Here there is no loss of effort,
 nor is any diminution found.
 Even a little of this dharma
 delivers one from great danger.

40

Discernment that is resolute in nature
 is singular in this world,
 O Descendant of Kuru [Arjuna],
 For many-branched and endless
 is the discernment
 of those who are irresolute.

41

⁸ Discernment: Translates *buddhi*, an important word that appears fifty-three times in the text. The word can have the meanings of "intelligence," "wisdom," "insight," or "understanding." *Discernment* is used here because it gives the active sense engaged in the BG.

Sāṅkhya: This term refers to the theistic system of Sāṅkhya, which shares much of its philosophy with the non-theistic Sāṅkhya school, focusing on the ultimate elements and objects of this world. It is one of six primary philosophical systems, including Yoga, Mīmāṃsā, Vedānta, Nyāya, and Vaiśeṣika.

Yoga: Refers to the process that connects the individual self to the supreme

Self. It is a complex term that can either refer to any one of the various means for achieving union with the divine or any one of the various perfectional states achievable in union with the divine. This is the first appearance of this word in the BG. It appears seventy-eight times in its noun form.

Absorbed in yoga: Translates *yukta*, the verbal form of the well-known word *yoga*, which has the essential meaning of "connection" or "union," referring to the connection of the self to the Supreme. This word appears thirty-six times in the BG. I have translated as "absorbed in yoga."

Those who lack understanding
 speak this flowery language,
 Delighted by the words
 of the Vedas, O Pārtha,
 declaring, "There is nothing else."⁹ 42

For the self full of desire,
 whose intent is on
 the celestial world,
 [this flowery language]
 bestows another birth
 as the fruit of action.
 Preoccupied with
 various ritualistic acts,
 [this self] is directed
 toward the goal of worldly
 pleasure and power. 43

For those attached to
 worldly pleasure and power,
 whose thoughts are stolen
 away by this [flowery language],
 Discernment that
 is resolute in nature
 is not discovered
 in perfect meditation.¹⁰ 44

9 The Vedas: The original sacred writings of India, consisting of numerous Sanskrit hymns that were originally transmitted orally by priestly families, and then later preserved in written form.

10 Perfect meditation: Translates *sa-mādhi*, the attainment of total absorption

in which the meditator becomes self-forgetful and is only aware of the object of meditation. This perfect meditative state in yoga is the eighth "limb" in the Ashtānga Yoga system as described by Patanjali.

The domain of the Vedas
 is the three essential 'qualities';
 be free of these three
 'qualities', O Arjuna,
 Beyond duality,
 always established
 in pure existence, beyond
 acquisitions and security,
 in possession of one's self.¹¹

45

As much value
 as there is in a well
 when all about it
 waters flow abundantly,
 Such is the value
 of all the Vedas
 for a Brahmin who
 has realized knowledge.¹²

46

It is in action alone
 that you have a claim,
 never at any time to
 the fruits of such action.
 Never let the fruits of action
 be your motive;
 never let your attachment
 be to inaction.

47

¹¹ Three 'qualities': Translates *traigunya*. The word *guṇa*, or 'quality', can also mean "strand" or "string" or "rope," expressing how these primary qualities arising from primordial nature bind one like a rope. It is a technical term used in Sāṅkhya philosophy that is a recurring theme in the BG.

¹² Brahmin: The priestly or learned class of society, one of four *varṇas* that make the social order whole and complete. Note that this word is not to be confused with Brahman, meaning the ultimate reality or supreme spirit.

Established in yoga,
perform actions,
having relinquished attachment,
O Conqueror of Wealth [Arjuna],
While remaining the same
in success and in no success—
such sameness is said to be yoga. 48

Still, action is by far inferior
to the yoga of discernment,
O Conqueror of Wealth.
Seek shelter in discernment—
miserly are those
who are motivated
by the fruits [of action]. 49

One absorbed in
the yoga of discernment
casts off in this world
both good and bad acts.
Therefore,
be absorbed in yoga,
for yoga is skillfulness
in action. 50

Indeed, those wise ones
who are absorbed
in the yoga of discernment,
relinquishing the fruits
born of action,
Who are freed
from the bondage
of repeated births,
go to a place beyond suffering. 51

When your discernment
crosses beyond the jungle
of bewilderment,
Then you shall become
completely indifferent
to that which is to be heard
and that which has been heard.¹³

52

When this [discernment]
is no longer perplexed
by the heard scriptures,
when it shall remain
without change,
When discernment
is unchanging within
perfect meditation—
then you shall attain yoga.

53

Arjuna said:

What is the description
of one established
in profound knowledge,
who is established
in perfect meditation,
O Keshava?

How would
one established
in thought speak?
How would one sit?
How would one move about?

54

¹³ That which has been heard: Refers to *śrūti*, the Vedas. Another term for the Vedas found in the BG is *śabda-brahma*, "the sound of Brahman." The Vedas offer worldly results, but superficial reading of

this text is discouraged in the BG; Krishna encourages a more esoteric reading that reveals himself: "And by all the Vedas only I am to be known" (BG 15.15).

The Beloved Lord said:

When a person gives up
all selfish desires
arising from the mind,
O Pārtha,

Satisfied within the self
by the self alone,
then that person
is said to be established
in profound knowledge.

55

One whose mind is
undisturbed in suffering,
who is free from desire
in all kinds of happiness,
Whose passion, fear,
and anger have departed—
such a person,
established in thought,
is said to be a sage.

56

One who, everywhere,
is without sentimentality
upon encountering this or that,
things pleasant or unpleasant,
Who neither rejoices nor despises—
the profound knowledge
of such a person
is firmly established.

57

And when one withdraws
completely,
as a tortoise
all of its limbs,
The senses from
their sense objects—
the profound knowledge
of such a person
is firmly established.

58

Sense objects fade away
 for the embodied who
 does not partake of them,
 Except for the taste—
 for one who has
 seen the Supreme,
 even this taste fades.

59

Indeed, even for one
 who is striving,
 O Kaunteya,
 for the person
 of discrimination,
 The impetuous senses
 forcibly carry away
 the mind.

60

Restraining all these [senses],
 one should be seated
 while absorbed in yoga,
 wholly intent on me.
 For one whose senses
 are under control—
 for that one,
 profound knowledge
 is firmly established.¹⁴

61

For a person dwelling
 on the objects of the senses,
 attachment to them develops;
 From attachment,
 selfish desire develops;
 from desire, anger develops.

62

¹⁴ This is the first verse in which Krishna introduces the practice of medi-

tation on him, with the words *mat-parah*, "wholly intent on me."

From anger comes
 bewilderment;
 from bewilderment,
 disturbed memory;
From disturbed memory,
 loss of discernment;
 from loss of discernment
 one becomes lost. 63

Without being absorbed
 in attraction and repulsion
 as the senses are moving
 toward their objects—
With self-restraint,
 the self that
 can be governed
 attains calmness. 64

In calmness,
 the cessation of all
 one's suffering occurs.
Indeed, for one whose
 thought has been calmed,
 discernment is quickly established. 65

There is no discernment for one
 who is not absorbed in yoga;
 and for one not absorbed in yoga,
 there is no meditative state;
And for one who has
 no meditative state,
 there is no peace—
 for one who is not peaceful,
 from where is happiness to come? 66

Indeed, when the mind
 is being pulled
 by the roaming senses,
 Then just one of them
 can carry away one's
 profound knowledge,
 as wind does a ship at sea.

67

Therefore,
 O Mighty-Armed,
 whosoever has
 completely withdrawn
 The senses from
 the objects of the senses—
 the profound knowledge of
 such a person is firmly established.

68

During that which is night
 for all beings,
 the deeply meditative
 person is awake.
 During that time in which
 beings are awake,
 that is night for
 the insightful sage.¹⁵

69

¹⁵ The deeply meditative person: Translates the word *saṁyamī*, meaning a person absorbed in the yoga processes of *saṁyama*. The term *saṁyama* refers to the final three "limbs of yoga" in the

Patanjali Yoga Sūtra: *dhāraṇa* ("concentration"), *dhyāna* ("meditation"), and *samādhi* ("total absorption in perfect meditation"). See Yoga Sūtra 3.4.

Continually being filled,
the ocean remains unmoved
and stands still, though
waters enter into it.

That person into whom
all desires enter
in this same way
attains peace—
not one who is desirous
to fulfill such desires.

70

Abandoning all selfish desires,
a person moves through life
free from worldly longings,
Without the sense of 'mine',
without the notion
of 'I am acting'—
that one attains peace.¹⁶

71

16 Without the sense of 'mine': Translates *nirmama*, meaning literally, "without mine." This term conveys a state of being that is without the false sense of possessiveness. Because of the temporary nature of things in this world, no one actually possesses anything permanently, yet one holds on to such a conception.

Without the notion of 'I am acting': Translates *nirabamkāra*, meaning literally, "without I am acting." The phrase "I am acting" connotes egocenteredness; an essential message of the BG is the need for the self to develop a vision of theocenteredness, one centered upon the divinity, implied by the phrase "without the notion of 'I am acting'." The term "I am acting" (*abamkāra*) conveys the idea that a person falsely thinks oneself to be acting independently of the various physical,

cosmic, and spiritual aspects of "action," explained in later verses. It conveys the false confidence of mistaken identity, wherein one feels oneself to be in complete control, falsely identified with the body and the impermanent roles one assumes in this world. In a realized state, a person "without the notion of 'I am acting'" (*nirabamkāra*) no longer identifies with anything temporary, including one's body, gender, family, country, race, etc., nor does one claim ownership or possession of anything (*nirmama*).

The added single quotation marks for "mine" and for "I am acting" are meant to distinguish this type of translated word or phrase from those containing double quotation marks, assigned because they are indicated in the text itself.

This is the state of
 the feminine energy
 of Brahman, O Pārtha,
 having attained which
 one is not bewildered.
 Being established in this,
 even if only at
 the end of one's life,
 one reaches
 the Nirvāna of Brahman.¹⁷

72

17 The feminine energy of Brahman: Translates the word *brāhmī*. Quite literally, it is the *śakti*, or "female energy," of Brahman. This word is most often taken as a neutered adjective in this verse, meaning simply a Brahman-like state. However, this latter approach ignores the strong feminine presence in the verse, expressed by three feminine gendered words: a pronoun (*eṣā*), and two nouns (*brāhmī* and *sthitī*), all found in the first quarter line. Note that the key word of this chapter, namely *buddhi*, "discernment," is also feminine gendered. Thus this chapter concludes that the state of Brahman's feminine energy supports the nature of the self's discernment.

Nirvāna: Literally, "blown out," meaning "the extinguishing of any worldly existence or experience whatsoever," a spiritual state found within the Brahman that entails a complete calming of the senses, often described as a state of serenity and peacefulness.

Brahman: Supreme spiritual existence, the eternal ultimate reality or the whole of reality. This word is to be distinguished from the words Brahmin and Brahmā. A Brahmin is a person of the priestly or educator class belonging to traditional Indian society, and its first instance is in BG 2.46. Brahmā is the cosmic deity of creation (see BG 8.16), whose counterpart is Shiva, the deity of cosmic transformation or dissolution.

The Way of Action

Arjuna said:

If you consider discernment
to be better than action,
O Janārdana,
Then why do you engage me
in dreadful action,
O Keshava?

I

With very confusing words,
you seem to bewilder
my intellect.
Therefore, speak definitely
of that one thing by which
I may attain the greater good.

2

The Beloved Lord said:

In this world
the established path is twofold,
as stated previously by me,
O Blameless One:
The yoga of knowledge
for the followers of Sāṅkhya,
and the yoga of action
for the yogis.¹

3

¹ Yogis: Plural of *yogi*, meaning a practitioner of yoga. The word appears twenty-

eight times in the BG, and is also in the English lexicon.

Not by avoiding actions
 does a person gain
 freedom from action,
 And not by renunciation
 alone does a person
 attain perfection.

4

Certainly no one,
 not even for a moment,
 ever lives without
 performing action.
 Indeed, against one's will,
 everyone is forced
 to perform action
 by the 'qualities' born
 of primordial nature.²

5

Having controlled
 the senses of action,
 one who continues
 with the mind to dwell
 On the objects of the senses—
 that one,
 whose self is bewildered,
 is called one with false behavior.

6

² The 'qualities': Translates the plural form of *guṇa*, which is translated by this word throughout this translation. The plural of *guṇa* refers to the three primary qualities of nature, *sattva*, *rajas*, and *tamas*, which are first presented in BG 7.12. In general, these fundamental distinctions describe degrees of self-centeredness and conditions of the heart: self-giving, selfish, self-destructive; or capacities of the soul to illumine the worldly condition: transparency, translucency, opacity; or levels of consciousness: conscious, subconscious, unconscious. The Gītā's teachings on the essential qualities encourage the soul to attain its original state beyond these qualities, a state of

pure *sattva*, to establish a relationship with transcendence and the divine in a state of selflessness, pure transparency, or super-consciousness, respectively.

Primordial nature: Translates the word *prakṛti*, referring to the original source of the physical world or the world of matter, from which the essential qualities arise. The word can mean more generally the original nature of something, and is also applied in some verses below to the divinity himself. The word in Sanskrit is of feminine gender, and the BG presents *prakṛti* as part of the divine feminine energy that complements the ultimate *puruṣa*, or the supreme masculine divinity, Krishna.

But one who,
 with the mind
 controlling the senses,
 O Arjuna, engages in
 The yoga of action
 with the senses of action,
 remaining unattached—
 that person is superior.

7

Perform your prescribed actions,
 for action is certainly better
 than inaction.
 And even the subsistence
 of one's body cannot be
 accomplished without action.

8

Other than action
 that has sacrifice
 as its purpose,
 action is bondage
 in this world.

Perform action
 for this purpose,
 O Kaunteya,
 free from attachment.

9

Having previously sent forth
 created beings
 along with sacrifice,
 the Lord of Created Beings said:

May you flourish
 by this [sacrifice]!
 Let this be the sacred cow
 that fulfills your desires.³

10

³ The sacred cow that fulfills your desires: Translates *iṣṭa-kāmadbuk*. See the word *kāmadbuk*, "sacred cow," in verse 10.28.

With this [sacrifice] give
 pleasure to the divinities;
 may those divinities
 please you.

By pleasing one another,
 you shall attain
 the greatest good.⁴

11

Indeed, the divinities,
 satisfied by sacrifice,
 will give you desired pleasures.
 Without giving back to them,
 one who enjoys these gifts
 is only a thief.

12

Virtuous persons
 who eat the remnants
 of sacrifice are
 freed from all faults,
 Whereas wretched persons
 only ingest suffering
 when they cook
 for their selfish motives.

13

⁴ Divinities: Translates the plural of *deva*. Divinities are not beings with eternal functions, as is the supreme Divinity. Rather, they are superior beings, functioning under the supreme Divinity,

Krishna. They are beings who preside over the natural elements, divine only in the sense that they function on behalf of the divine.

From foodstuffs

beings come into being;

from rain

foodstuffs manifest;

From sacrifice

rain comes into being;

sacrifice arises

from action.

14

Understand that action arises

from Brahman, the Vedas;

this Brahman arises originally

from the Imperishable.

Therefore eternal Brahman,

which pervades everything,

is established in sacrifice.⁵

15

Thus the [sacrificial] cycle

has been set into motion;

one who does not

keep it turning in this world,

Whose life is impure,

who delights in the senses—

such a person lives in vain,

O Pārtha.

16

However, the human being

who delights

only in the self,

who is self-satisfied

And finds full contentment

in the self alone—

for that person

there is nothing to be enacted.

17

⁵ The Imperishable: Translates *akṣara*, which can also mean the sacred syllable

“OM,” the most prominent utterance in mantras.

Surely, such a person
has no [selfish] motives,
either in acting
or in not acting
in this world.

And nor has such a person,
in relation to all beings,
any need whatsoever
for [selfish] motives.

18

Therefore, without attachment,
perform action
that is to be enacted.

Indeed, by performing action
without attachment,
a person attains the Supreme.

19

For by action alone,
King Janaka and others
attained full perfection.

Even if only considering
the welfare of the world,
you are obliged to act.⁶

20

Whatever the greatest one does,
that very thing
other persons will do.

Whatever standard
the greatest one enacts,
that the world follows.

21

6 King Janaka: Known to have attained perfection by his actions as a king. He is

the father of Sitā, the queen consort of the divine manifestation of Vishnu as Rāma.

For me, O Pārtha,
there is nothing
whatsoever to be enacted
in the three worlds,
Nor is there anything
not attained that is
to be attained—
even so, I engage in action. 22

Indeed, if ever I should not
engage in action untiringly,
Human beings everywhere
would follow my path, O Pārtha. 23

These worlds would perish
if I should not perform action,
And I would be the cause of chaos—
I would destroy these procreated beings. 24

As the ignorant act,
attached to action,
O Bhārata,
So the wise should act
without attachment,
desiring to act for
the welfare of the world. 25

One should not cause
 confusion in the discernment
 of those attached to action,
 who are without knowledge.

One should leave them
 to pursue all actions—
 one who is thus wise,
 performing all actions
 while fully absorbed in yoga.

26

Actions are being carried out
 in every instance
 by the 'qualities'
 of primordial nature.

The self, bewildered by
 the notion of 'I am acting',
 thinks, "the creator of action am I."⁷

27

However, O Mighty-Armed,
 one who knows the truth
 about the distribution
 of the 'qualities'
 and their actions,

Being mindful that
 "the 'qualities'
 are operating on
 those very 'qualities'"—
 that one is not attached.⁸

28

7 The creator of action: Translates *kartā*, which can mean "the doer," "the agent of action," or literally, "the one who acts." The word can also refer to cosmogenesis: "the creator of the universe." The sense here is that the soul depends upon much beyond itself, such as the workings of the essential qualities of nature, in order to act in the world, and ego-centeredness prevents the soul from knowing this, giving it a false sense of power.

8 Distribution of . . . actions: Refers to the types of social obligations in the *varṇas*.

Distribution of the essential qualities: As they are found in numerous permutations and combinations, and the ways they affect souls in determining their *varṇas*.

See BG 4.13, which also contains the phrase *guṇa-karma-vibhāgaśaḥ*.

Those deluded
 by the 'qualities'
 of primordial nature
 are attached to the actions
 of those 'qualities'.
 One whose knowledge
 is complete should not
 disturb those who are dull,
 whose knowledge is incomplete.

29

Renouncing all actions in me,
 with one's thought on
 the 'principle of self',
 Without longings,
 without a sense of 'mine'—
 fight, with grief cast off.⁹

30

Those persons who
 constantly follow
 my teaching,
 Who are full of faith
 and envy no one,
 also are freed from
 [the effects of] action.

31

However, those who are
 envious of my teaching,
 who do not follow it,
 Bewildered by all knowledge—
 know them to be lost
 and thoughtless.

32

9 Following BG 2.61, this is the next instance that introduces the ultimate message of the BG, with the words "renouncing all actions in me." These two verses anticipate the beginning of chapter 4, in which Krishna boldly declares his secret

of divine love and his identity as the Divinity.

The 'principle of self': Translates *adhyātmā*, which is introduced more thoroughly beginning in BG 7.29.

One acts according
 to one's own nature,
 even a person of knowledge,
 For beings
 follow their nature—
 what shall repression accomplish? 33

For any one of the senses,
 upon the object of that sense,
 both attraction and
 aversion are placed.
 One should not come
 under the control
 of either of these, for
 indeed they block one's path. 34

Better is one's own dharma
 even if imperfect
 than another's dharma
 followed perfectly.
 Better is death in following
 one's own dharma,
 for another's dharma
 brings danger.¹⁰ 35

Arjuna said:
 By what, then,
 is a person compelled
 to do wrong
 Even against one's will,
 O Vārshneya [Krishna],
 as if driven by force? 36

¹⁰ Better is one's own dharma . . . : The first half of this verse is repeated as the first half of BG 18.47.

Dharma: The word is used here more generally, carrying over the sense of "path" from the last word of the previous verse.

The Beloved Lord said:

It is selfish desire,
it is anger, arising from
the 'quality' of *rajas*.

All-consuming and
greatly calamitous,
know it to be
the enemy in this world. 37

As fire is covered by smoke
and a mirror by dust,
As an embryo is covered by a womb,
so this world is covered by this. 38

The knowledge of the knower
is obscured by
this constant enemy
In the form of selfish desire,
O Kaunteya,
a fire that indeed
is impossible to satisfy. 39

The senses, the mind,
and the faculty of
discernment
are said to be
the resting place
of this [enemy];
Through these
it bewilders
the embodied,
obscuring knowledge. 40

Therefore, first having
controlled the senses,
O Leader of the Bharatas,
You must strike down this vice
that destroys knowledge
and realized knowledge.

41

The senses are beyond
[matter], they say;
beyond the senses
is the mind;
Still beyond the mind is
the faculty of discernment—
yet that which is beyond all else,
above the faculty of discernment,
is indeed this [self].

42

Thus having discerned what
is higher than the faculty
of discernment,
sustaining the self
by the self,
Destroy the enemy,
O Mighty-Armed,
in the form
of selfish desire,
so difficult to overcome.

43

The Way of Knowledge

The Beloved Lord said:

Unto Vivisvān

I have spoken this yoga,
which is everlasting.

Vivisvān spoke it to Manu,
and Manu imparted it
to Ikshvāku.¹

I

Thus received through
a line of succession,
the royal seers
understood it.

By the powerful effect
of time, this yoga was lost
[to this lineage] in the world,
O Subduer of the Enemy.

2

¹ Vivisvān: The presiding deity of the sun.

Manu: The name means "man," referring to the first progenitor of humankind; the son of Vivisvān.

Ikshvāku: The name of an ancient king of eastern India; son of Manu.

This same ancient yoga
 is now spoken
 by me to you:
 "Having offered your love,
 you have also
 become my friend"—
 truly, this is the ultimate secret.²

3

Arjuna said:

Your birth
 came later,
 Vivisvān's birth earlier.
 How then should I
 understand this—
 that you, in the beginning,
 "have spoken"?³

4

The Beloved Lord said:

Through many births
 have I passed,
 as have you, O Arjuna.
 I know all of them—
 you know them not,
 O Subduer of the Enemy.

5

² Having offered your love: Translates *bbakta*: "devoted," "lovingly devoted," or simply "one who is devoted [to the Lord]," or "a devotee." The word can also mean "one who is loved [by the Lord]." Thus it is a verb that can also act as a noun. This is the first of fifteen instances. The first appearance of the noun form *bbakti* is found in BG 7.17 and it appears fourteen times in the text.

Friend: Translates the word *sakbā*. Krishna states that Arjuna has offered his heart to him, and that he also loves Arjuna as a friend.

³ "Have spoken": Arjuna is quoting Krishna's precise words from verse 1 of this chapter: "Unto Vivisvān I *have spoken*..."

As the one without birth,
 the everpresent Self,
 as the supreme
 Lord of beings
 Presiding over
 my own nature,
 I become fully
 manifest by Māyā,
 the very power of my Self.⁴ 6

Indeed, whenever there is
 a decline of dharma,
 O Bhārata,
 And an emerging
 of what opposes dharma—
 at that time I send forth my Self. 7

For protection of the virtuous
 and for destruction of evil acts,
 For the purpose of establishing dharma,
 I become fully manifest age after age.⁵ 8

One who thus truly knows
 the birth and acts
 of my divine being,
 Upon relinquishing the body,
 does not come to another birth—
 such a person comes to me, O Arjuna. 9

4 Māyā, the very power of my Self: Translates *ātmā-māyā*. Māyā is the supreme feminine power of Krishna by which he reveals himself to souls, as expressed in this verse, or conceals himself from souls who are not yet ready to know him (see BG 7.14–15). Māyā is Krishna's divine illusive power, which either bewilders souls to facilitate their forgetfulness of divinity or facilitates the revelation of the intimate form of divin-

ity. In BG 18.61, Māyā is the force that facilitates the movement of all beings while in their bodies.

My own nature: Translates *prakṛtiṁ svām*. Here, *prakṛti* refers to the nature of divinity, which is feminine, and in this instance, could include primordial nature as well.

5 Age: Translates the word *yuga*. A *yuga* is a vast period of time, stretching over part of the cosmic cycle.

Freed from passion,
 fear, and anger;
 immersed in me,
 taking full refuge in me,
 Many, purified by
 the austerity of knowledge,
 have come to my
 loving state of being.

10

In the way they offer
 themselves to me,
 in just that way
 I offer my love
 to them reciprocally.

Human beings
 follow my path
 universally,
 O Pārtha.

11

Desiring success
 from their actions,
 persons here on earth
 offer sacrifice to deities.
 For in the world of humans,
 quickly comes success
 that is born of
 [sacrificial] action.⁶

12

⁶ Deities: Translates the plural form of *devatā*, meaning "deity," while *deva* is translated throughout as "divinity." Krishna is *the* divinity in the singular, and when the plural of the word is used, it

refers to those Vedic deities or divinities, superior entities, who preside over the natural phenomena of this world. This word appears in the plural in two other places, BG 7.20 and BG 9.23.

The four social orders
are sent forth by me,
with divisions based on
'qualities' and actions.

Of this know me
as the creator, yet
also as the non-creator,
who is everpresent.

13

Actions do not taint me,
nor do I aspire
to the fruit of actions.

One who understands me
in this way is never
bound by actions.

14

Having known this,
the ancient seekers
of liberation also
performed action.

Indeed, perform action
as the ancient ones
enacted previously,
in ancient times.

15

"What is action?
What is inaction?"—
even the wise are
perplexed by this subject.

I shall describe
action to you,
knowing which
you shall be freed
from misfortune.

16

Indeed, the nature of action
 is to be discerned;
 the nature of unfit action
 is to be discerned;
 And the nature of inaction
 is to be discerned—
 the ways of action
 are profound.

17

One who can perceive
 inaction within action,
 and action within inaction—
 That one among human beings
 possesses discernment,
 is absorbed in yoga,
 and performs all action.

18

One whose every
 endeavor is without
 the intention of
 selfish desire,
 Whose actions
 have been consumed
 by the fire of knowledge—
 those of discernment
 call that person learned.

19

Relinquishing attachment
to the fruits of action,
always satisfied and
without dependence
Even while
engaged in action—
indeed, one does not
enact anything whatsoever.

20

Without desire, with self
and thought restrained,
having relinquished
all possessiveness;
Acting only for maintaining
the activities of the body,
one incurs no fault.

21

Satisfied with gain
that comes spontaneously,
crossing beyond duality,
free from envy,
The same in success and
in the absence of success—
even though acting,
such a person is not bound.

22

Freed from attachment,
liberated, with thought
established in knowledge,
Acting for the sake of sacrifice—
for such a person,
action is completely dissolved.

23

Brahman is the ritual instrument;
 Brahman is the offering,
 which is poured by Brahman
 into the fire of Brahman.

Brahman alone
 is to be attained by one
 who is in perfect meditation
 on the actions of Brahman.⁷

24

Indeed, some yogis
 worship the divinities
 through sacrifice.
 Into the fire of Brahman,
 through sacrifice itself,
 others make sacrificial offerings.

25

Others offer the senses,
 those of hearing and the rest,
 into the fires of perfect discipline.
 While others offer
 the objects of the senses,
 sound and so forth,
 into the fires of the senses.⁸

26

Still others offer the actions
 of all the senses and
 actions of the life-breath
 Into the fire of yoga,
 the perfect discipline of self
 kindled by knowledge.

27

⁷ Five components of the Vedic sacrifice are presented here: the ritual instrument or ladle, the butter offering, the pouring, the fire, and perfect meditation. These components represent essential elements of religious principles and are found in the next nine verses, through BG 4.33. To understand these principles, Krishna states that one should consult a seer of the truth (BG 4.34).

Perfect meditation: Translates *samādhi*. The state of one who is "completely absorbed" in the object of meditation; sometimes translated simply as "trance." The eighth and last limb of Patanjali's "eight limbs" of yoga in the Yoga Sūtra (2.29).

⁸ Perfect discipline: Translates the word *śamīyama*. This word first appears in BG 2.69, translated as "the deeply meditative person."

Those whose sacrifice
is of material possessions,
those whose sacrifice
is of austerity,
also those whose sacrifice
is of yoga,

And those whose sacrifice
is of knowledge in
the study of scripture—
such persons are
striving ascetics who
observe strict vows.

28

Still others offer
the incoming breath
into the outgoing breath,
likewise, the outgoing breath
into the incoming breath.

Having restrained
the movements of incoming
and outgoing breaths,
they are wholly focused upon
control of the life-breath.

29

And others,
who have restricted
their intake of food,
offer the life-breath
into the life-breath.

Indeed, all of these
are knowers of sacrifice,
cleansed of their impurities
through sacrifice.

30

Brahman is the ritual instrument;
 Brahman is the offering,
 which is poured by Brahman
 into the fire of Brahman.

Brahman alone
 is to be attained by one
 who is in perfect meditation
 on the actions of Brahman.⁷ 24

Indeed, some yogis
 worship the divinities
 through sacrifice.
 Into the fire of Brahman,
 through sacrifice itself,
 others make sacrificial offerings. 25

Others offer the senses,
 those of hearing and the rest,
 into the fires of perfect discipline.
 While others offer
 the objects of the senses,
 sound and so forth,
 into the fires of the senses.⁸ 26

Still others offer the actions
 of all the senses and
 actions of the life-breath
 Into the fire of yoga,
 the perfect discipline of self
 kindled by knowledge. 27

7 Five components of the Vedic sacrifice are presented here: the ritual instrument or ladle, the butter offering, the pouring, the fire, and perfect meditation. These components represent essential elements of religious principles and are found in the next nine verses, through BG 4.33. To understand these principles, Krishna states that one should consult a seer of the truth (BG 4.34).

Perfect meditation: Translates *samādhi*. The state of one who is "completely absorbed" in the object of meditation; sometimes translated simply as "trance." The eighth and last limb of Patanjali's "eight limbs" of yoga in the Yoga Sūtra (2.29).

8 Perfect discipline: Translates the word *śamīyama*. This word first appears in BG 2.69, translated as "the deeply meditative person."

Those whose sacrifice
is of material possessions,
those whose sacrifice
is of austerity,
also those whose sacrifice
is of yoga,

And those whose sacrifice
is of knowledge in
the study of scripture—
such persons are
striving ascetics who
observe strict vows.

28

Still others offer
the incoming breath
into the outgoing breath,
likewise, the outgoing breath
into the incoming breath.

Having restrained
the movements of incoming
and outgoing breaths,
they are wholly focused upon
control of the life-breath.

29

And others,
who have restricted
their intake of food,
offer the life-breath
into the life-breath.

Indeed, all of these
are knowers of sacrifice,
cleansed of their impurities
through sacrifice.

30

Those who enjoy
 the immortal nature
 of the remnants of sacrifice
 go to the eternal Brahman.
 Even this world is not meant
 for one without sacrifice—
 how then the next,
 O Best of the Kurus? 31

Thus, sacrifices of many types
 have been prepared for
 the mouth of Brahman.
 Know them all
 to be born of action—
 understanding this,
 you shall be liberated.⁹ 32

Better than the sacrifice
 of material objects
 is the sacrifice of knowledge,
 O Chastiser of the Enemy.
 All [sacrificial] actions,
 without exception,
 O Son of Prithā,
 culminate in knowledge. 33

Learn this
 by humble submission,
 by thorough inquiry,
 and by serving.
 They will impart
 this knowledge to you,
 for they are knowers
 and seers of the truth.¹⁰ 34

⁹ The mouth of Brahman: Refers to the central arena of the Vedic fire sacrifice.

¹⁰ Knowledge: Refers to the knowledge of the Vedas and derivative scriptures.

Knowing which,
you shall thus never
again fall into illusion,
O Pāṇḍava.
By this you shall see,
without exception,
all beings within the Self,
then within me. 35

Even if, among troubled persons,
you are one who performs
the most troubling acts—
By the boat of knowledge,
you shall indeed
cross over all affliction. 36

As firewood is
transformed into ashes
by a blazing fire, O Arjuna,
So all actions are
transformed into ashes
by the fire of knowledge. 37

There is no means of purification
found in this world
that is equal to knowledge.
In time, one perfected
in yoga personally finds
that [knowledge] within the self. 38

One who is full of faith
obtains knowledge,
being devoted to that
with the senses
perfectly controlled.
Obtaining this knowledge,
one achieves
supreme peace
without delay. 39

Not knowing,
 and lacking faith,
 the self who is full
 of doubt is destroyed.

Neither this world,
 nor the higher one,
 nor happiness exists
 for the doubting self.

40

For one who has fully
 renounced action in yoga,
 whose doubt is completely
 severed by knowledge,

Who is in possession
 of one's self—
 action does not bind,
 O Conqueror of Wealth.

41

Therefore, that doubt
 which is produced from
 the absence of knowledge
 and resides within the heart—

Having severed this
 with the sword of knowledge
 belonging to the self,
 rise in yoga!

Rise up, O Bhārata!

42

The Way of Renunciation

Arjuna said:

You commend renunciation
of actions, O Krishna,
and also yoga.
Tell me which one
of these two
is definitely better.

I

The Beloved Lord said:

Renunciation
and the yoga of action
both lead to ultimate happiness.
Of the two, however,
the yoga of action is superior
to the renunciation of action.

2

One is to be known
as a steadfast renouncer
who neither hates
nor desires.

Indeed, such a person,
who is without duality,
O Mighty-Armed,
is easily freed
from bondage [of action].

3

Sāṅkhya and yoga are
completely separate paths,
so the childish declare,
though not the learned.
For perfectly following
even one [of these],
one achieves the fruit of both.

4

That stance attained by
the followers of Sāṅkhya
is also reached by
the followers of yoga.
Sāṅkhya and yoga
are thus one—
one who sees this,
that one truly sees.

5

However, renunciation,
O Mighty-Armed,
is difficult to attain
without yoga.

The sage
absorbed in yoga
reaches Brahman
without delay.

6

One absorbed in yoga
 through yoga practice,
 with the self purified;
 whose self is controlled
 with senses conquered;
 Whose self becomes
 connected to
 the self in all beings—
 that one is not tainted
 even while acting.¹

7

“Never do I act alone”—
 one absorbed in yoga,
 who knows reality,
 is thus mindful.

While seeing,
 hearing, touching,
 smelling, eating, walking,
 sleeping, breathing;

8

While talking, eliminating,
 grasping, even opening
 and closing one's eyes,
 One is convinced that,
 “The senses are engaged
 by their sense objects.”

9

1 Whose self becomes connected to the self of all beings: Consistent with the teachings of the BG as a whole, the self “becomes” (*bhūta*) the self of others em-

pathetically, not ontologically. This statement expresses the BG's version of the “golden rule.”

Offering one's actions
to Brahman,
having relinquished
attachment—

For one who thus acts,
misfortune does not cling,
as water does not cling
to the leaf of a lotus.

10

With the body, with the mind,
with one's discernment,
even with the senses alone—

Yogis enact [all] action,
relinquishing attachment
for purity of the self.

11

One who is absorbed in yoga,
having relinquished
the fruit of action,
attains lasting peace.

One who is not absorbed in yoga,
who is attached to the fruit,
is bound by action arising
from selfish desire.

12

Renouncing all actions
within the mind,
the master sits happily

As the embodied
in the city of nine gates,
neither acting nor causing to act.²

13

² The city: Refers to the body.

Nine gates: The nine "gates" consist of the nine bodily passages of generation and evacuation, passages of seeing (the

eyes), passages of hearing (the ears), passages of breathing (the nostrils), and the passage of ingestion and speaking (the mouth).

Neither the means of action
 nor the actions of
 those in the world
 does the master create,
 Nor the conjunction
 of actions with their fruits;
 rather, one's state of being
 is set forth into motion.³

14

The Omnipresent
 certainly does not
 assume anyone's misdeeds
 or virtuous deeds.
 Knowledge is covered by
 the absence of knowledge,
 by which living beings
 are bewildered.

15

But for those in whom
 this absence of knowledge
 of the self is destroyed
 by knowledge—
 For them, knowledge,
 like the sun,
 causes illumination,
 as does the Supreme.

16

3 The master: Translates the subject noun *prabhu*, which refers to the self within the "city of nine gates," or to the supreme "master." In the following verse, translating the related word *vibhu* (note the verbal stem *bhū* in *prabhu* and *vibhu*, taken

here to mean "present"), the subject noun is "the Omnipresent." Here, too, it could be the soul who is "omnipresent" in the body, or it could refer to the supreme Lord, who is omnipresent in all bodies and in everything.

Those whose discernment
 is focused on that [Supreme],
 whose self is absorbed in that,
 whose foundation is that,
 wholly devoted to that—

Such persons proceed
 to that from which
 there is no return,
 their misdeeds shaken off
 by knowledge.⁴

17

In a Brahmin endowed with
 learning and gentle conduct,
 in a cow, in an elephant,
 Even in a dog and
 in one who cooks dog—
 wise ones see the same [Supreme].

18

Even here in this world,
 creation has been conquered
 by those whose minds
 are established in sameness.

Indeed, Brahman is flawless
 and [forever] the same;
 therefore they are
 established in Brahman.⁵

19

⁴ That from which there is no return: This is considered to be a positive statement. When one has reached the very highest heaven, where there is no birth and death, one does not have to return to

the lower regions of birth and death, such as this world.

⁵ Creation: Translates *sarga*. The part of creation that is overcome includes birth and death.

Such a person would neither
rejoice upon attaining
what is pleasing,
nor be shaken upon
attaining what is not pleasing.
With steady discernment,
without being bewildered,
the knower of Brahman
is established in Brahman.

20

The self who is not attached
to external contacts,
who finds happiness
within the self—
That one, whose self
is absorbed in the yoga
of Brahman through yoga,
attains imperishable happiness.

21

Certainly, pleasures born
of [sense] contact
are only sources
of suffering;
As they have a beginning
and end, O Kaunteya,
a wise person does
not delight in them.

22

One who, in this very life,
 before giving up the body,
 is able to endure
 Agitation arising from
 desire and anger—
 that one is absorbed in yoga;
 happy is that person. 23

One whose happiness is within,
 whose pleasure is within,
 and likewise, whose light
 comes only from within—
 Such a yogi, being
 united with Brahman,
 attains the Nirvāna of Brahman. 24

The Nirvāna of Brahman
 is attained by those seers
 whose misdeeds
 have been destroyed,
 Whose conflict
 has been severed,
 whose self is disciplined,
 who delight in
 the welfare of all beings. 25

Among those seekers
who are separated
from desire and anger,
whose thought is controlled,
The Nirvāna of Brahman
exists close at hand—
for such knowers of the self. 26

Keeping the action of
the outer sensations outside,
and one's vision inside,
just between the eyebrows;
Making the action of incoming
and outgoing breaths the same
as they move through the nostrils; 27

The sage with senses, mind,
and discernment controlled,
whose highest goal
is liberation,
From whom desire, fear,
and anger have departed—
one who is always so,
that one indeed is liberated. 28

As the beloved recipient
 of sacrifices and austerities,
 as the exalted supreme
 Lord of all the worlds,
 As the innermost heart
 of all beings—
 thus knowing me
 one attains peace.⁶

29

⁶ Innermost heart: Translates *subrdam*, so as to provide a more literal and theological meaning of the word, which contains two parts, *su-* (innermost) and *brd* (heart). The word is most often translated as "friend," and perhaps could receive a protracted but more dedicated translation as "most kind-hearted [friend]." It is interesting to note that the BG uses another word for friend, *bandhu*, in verses 5, 6,

and 9 in the following chapter (also, see its use in BG 1.27). My etymological translation expresses how Krishna is a friend to beings, the closest companion of all creatures: he is intimately present in the hearts of all living beings as "the innermost heart"—the supreme Self within the self. This is one of the most important manifestations of divinity described in the BG.

The Way of Meditation

The Beloved Lord said:

One who, without depending
on the fruits of action,
enacts that action which
is a prescribed act—

That person is
a renouncer and a yogi,
not one who makes no sacred fire
nor one who performs no ritual acts. I

What they call "renunciation,"
know that as yoga,
O Son of Pāṇdu;
For without having
renounced selfish motive,
no one becomes a yogi. 2

For the sage who desires
to ascend to yoga,
action is said
to be the means.
Only for that one who
has ascended to yoga
is calmness said
to be the means. 3

When one is not attached
to the objects of the senses
nor to actions,

Renouncing
all selfish motives,
then one is said
to have ascended to yoga.

4

One should raise
the self by the self;
one should not
degrade the self.

Indeed, the self alone
is the self's friend;
the self alone
is the self's enemy.¹

5

The self is the friend
of that self
by whose self
the very self is conquered.

But for one who is not
truly one's self—
in enmity, that very self
would remain like an enemy.²

6

1 Self: The self that either ascends, that becomes elevated, or the self that becomes lost in the temporary world; the self that turns toward or away from the true nature of the self. The usage here highlights the free will of the self to ascend to yoga or to "degrade" to selfishness, indicating the dual nature of the self, comprised of a higher and lower self. The higher self can also be taken as the

supreme Self or can include the supreme Self.

2 One who is not truly one's self: Translates *anātman*, one who has lost oneself; as commentators state, losing oneself to extensions of the self, such as things of the world and relatives.

Enemy: The enemy here is found in the self and not so much on the battlefield.

For one whose self is conquered,
 who is peaceful—
 that one is fully absorbed
 in the higher self
 While in cold and heat,
 happiness and suffering,
 likewise, honor and dishonor.³

7

One whose self is
 content in knowledge
 and in realized knowledge,
 who is focused on the highest
 with senses conquered—
 That one,
 “absorbed in yoga,”
 is said to be a yogi
 for whom earth, stones,
 and gold are the same.

8

While among intimates, friends,
 enemies, the disinterested,
 mediators, the hateful,
 and family members;
 Even among saintly
 and troubled persons—
 one whose discernment
 remains the same is preeminent.

9

3 Fully absorbed in the higher self: Translates *paramātmā*, meaning “wholly absorbed (*parama-*) in the self (*-ātmā*).” The word can mean “the higher self” or

“the supreme Self,” the latter referring to the divinity dwelling within the individual self.

The yogi should absorb
 the self constantly in yoga,
 remaining in secrecy,
 Alone, with thought
 and self subdued,
 without cravings and
 free from all possessiveness. 10

In a clean place,
 one should establish
 for oneself a firm seat,
 Neither too high nor too low,
 made of kusha grass, then
 covered with a deerskin and cloth.⁴ 11

There, having the mind actively
 focused upon a single point,
 with thought and
 sense activity controlled,
 Sitting on a seat,
 one should practice yoga
 for purification of the self. 12

With an aligned body,
 head, and neck—
 keeping these steady,
 without movement;
 Focusing the vision toward
 the tip of one's nose
 without looking about
 in any direction; 13

⁴ Kusha grass: A type of grass that is considered sacred, utilized in religious ceremonies.

With the self quieted,
 with fear dissipated,
 established in
 a vow of chastity;
 Controlling the mind
 with thought
 focused upon me—
 one should be seated
 while absorbed in yoga,
 holding me as the highest. 14

Thus always absorbing
 one's self in yoga,
 the yogi, whose
 mind is subdued,
 Achieves peace
 that culminates in
 the highest state of Nirvāna,
 which rests in me.⁵ 15

However, for one who
 eats too much
 there is no yoga,
 nor for one who
 does not eat at all,
 Nor for one who
 sleeps too much,
 nor for one who
 is ever awake, O Arjuna. 16

5 This instance of Nirvāna is the last time it appears, after first appearing in BG 2.72 and then in BG 5.24–26. Note that here

Nirvāna is associated with Krishna, in its highest form.

For one who is thus absorbed
in yoga while eating
and in recreation,
who is absorbed
in the ways of yoga
while performing actions,
And who is absorbed in yoga
while sleeping
and in wakefulness—
for such a person,
yoga becomes
the destroyer of suffering.

17

When, with thought
fully subdued,
one abides
in the self alone,
Without longings
for any selfish desires,
then that one is said to be
“absorbed in yoga.”

18

As a lamp standing
in a windless place
does not flicker,
the analogy is recalled
Of the yogi
with subdued thought,
who is absorbed
in practicing the yoga
of the self.

19

That place where
thought comes to rest,
held steady by
the practice of yoga;

And where,

seeing the Self
by the very self,
one becomes satisfied
within the self;

20

That boundless happiness
beyond the senses,
which is grasped
through discernment;

That place where

one knows this,
indeed, is established in it
and does not swerve from the truth;

21

And which having obtained,
one is mindful that
no other gain
is greater than this;

Situated in which

one is not shaken
even by heavy suffering—

22

Let this be understood
 as the disjunction
 from one's conjunction
 with suffering—
 this is called yoga.

One is to be absorbed
 in yoga with determination,
 such yoga being without
 discouraging thought.⁶

23

Relinquishing,
 without exception,
 all desires that arise
 from selfish intentions;
 Completely controlling
 the collective senses
 with the mind alone;

24

Little by little,
 one should become
 quieted by discernment
 that is firmly held.
 Actively establishing
 the mind in the self,
 one should not
 think of anything else.

25

⁶ Disjunction: Translates *viyoga*, which also means "communion," "perfect union,"
 can also mean "disunion." or "complete union."
 Conjunction: Translates *samyoga*, which

Wherever
the flickering
unsteady mind strays,
Pulling it back
from here and there,
one should bring it
under control
within the very self. 26

For such a yogi,
whose mind is peaceful,
ultimate happiness
is attained.
One whose
passion is calmed,
who is without impurity,
becomes united with Brahman. 27

Thus, with the self
always absorbed in yoga,
the yogi who is completely
free from impurity,
Happily enjoys,
due to contact
with Brahman,
boundless happiness. 28

One who sees the Self
present in all beings
and all beings present
within the Self—

Such a person,
whose self
is absorbed in yoga,
sees the same everywhere. 29

One who sees me everywhere
and sees all things in me,
To such a person I am never lost
nor is such a person ever lost to me. 30

One who,
abiding in oneness,
offers love to me
as the One who abides
in all beings,
In whatever way one
appears to be living—
that one is a yogi
who lives in me. 31

One who sees,
 by comparison to one's self,
 the same in all [beings],
 O Arjuna,
 Whether it be happiness
 or suffering—
 that yogi is considered
 to be the highest.⁷

32

Arjuna said:

This yoga,
 which has been described
 as a state of sameness,
 O Madhusūdana—
 I do not see the permanent
 establishment of this,
 due to unsteadiness.

33

For the mind
 is unsteady, O Krishna,
 impetuous, powerful,
 and unyielding.
 I believe that
 controlling it
 is as difficult as
 controlling the wind.

34

7 The yogi is one who exercises a high degree of sympathy, experiencing others' selfhood in comparison to one's own. If

one sees one's own higher self in happiness and suffering, then one can see that same higher self in others.

The Beloved Lord said:

Without doubt,
 O Mighty-Armed,
 the mind is unsteady
 and difficult to control.

But with practice,
 O Kaunteya,
 and with dispassion,
 it can be controlled.

35

“For one whose self
 is not striving fully,
 yoga is difficult
 to achieve”—
 this is my opinion.

But for one whose
 self is controlled,
 with striving it is
 possible to achieve
 by the proper approach.

36

Arjuna said:

One who does not strive
yet possesses faith,
whose mind has
deviated from yoga
Without achieving
full perfection in yoga—
to what destiny does
that one go, O Krishna?

37

Having fallen from both,
does that one not perish
like a dissipated cloud,
Having no foundation,
O Mighty-Armed,
bewildered on
the path of Brahman?

38

This doubt of mine,
O Krishna,
you are able
to dissipate fully.
Other than you,
truly there is no
forthcoming dissipator
of this doubt.

39

The Beloved Lord said:

O Pārtha, indeed,
neither in this world
nor in the next
is the destruction of such
a person to be found.

For no one who acts
in virtuous ways
ever goes to
an unfortunate
destiny, my dear friend.

40

Reaching the worlds of
those who have performed
virtuous acts, dwelling
there for countless years,

Then into the home
of those who are pure,
who are prosperous—
one who has fallen
from yoga is born again.

41

Or one is born into
a family of true yogis
endowed with wisdom.
That is even more difficult
to attain in the world,
a birth such as this.

42

There, one attains
 a full connection with
 that discernment from
 the previous body,
 And from there
 one strives again
 for complete perfection,
 O Son of Kuru. 43

By that same previous practice,
 one is indeed carried forward
 even without one's effort.
 Even one who only
 desires to know of yoga
 transcends the sound of Brahman.⁸ 44

However, due to striving
 with great effort,
 completely cleansed
 of all impurities,
 The yogi,
 fully perfected
 after many births,
 then goes to
 the supreme destination. 45

8 The sound of Brahman: Translates *śabda-brahman*, the Vedas, referring to the sacrificial rituals of the Vedas, for achieving everything the temporary world has to offer. This phrase implies the recitation of mantras in the Vedic sac-

rifice, an attempt to achieve one's self-interest through ritualistic actions; the Vedas as they are associated with the three essential qualities of nature, as expressed in BG 2.45.

The yogi is superior to ascetics
and considered superior
even to those who
cultivate knowledge;

And the yogi
is superior to those
who perform sacred acts—
therefore be a yogi, O Arjuna!⁹

46

Even among all yogis,
one whose inner self
has come to me,
Who is full of faith,
who offers love to me—
that one is considered by me
to be the most deeply
absorbed in yoga.

47

⁹ Ascetics: Translates *tapasvī*, "one who performs *tapas* or rigorous austerity."

Those who cultivate knowledge:

Translates the plural of *jñāni*.

Those who perform sacred acts: Translates *karmī*.

The Way of Realized Knowledge

The Beloved Lord said:

With mind deeply attached to me,
O Pārtha, practicing yoga
with dependence on me,
You shall know me
completely,
beyond all doubt—
hear about how this is so.

I

I shall explain this knowledge
to you, along with
realized knowledge,
with nothing left unsaid;
Knowing which,
nothing further
in this world
is left to be known.

2

Among thousands
of human beings,
perhaps one may
strive for perfection.

Even among those
who strive for
and achieve perfection,
perhaps one may truly know me.

3

“Earth, water, fire,
 air, space, mind,
 the faculty of
 discernment,
 And indeed the notion
 of ‘I am acting’”—
 this is my
 primordial nature,
 which is divided eightfold.¹

4

This is not the higher [nature],
 for there is another
 nature of mine—
 know it as higher.
 It consists of living beings,
 O Mighty-Armed,
 by whom this universe
 becomes animated.

5

This is the cosmic womb
 for beings, for all of them—
 try to understand this.
 I am, of the entire universe,
 the coming forth
 into being as well as
 the going forth into
 cosmic absorption.²

6

1 Faculty of discernment: Translates *buddhi*. Before this, *buddhi* has been presented as an attribute of self, so I have translated as “discernment.” As an element of nature, however, *buddhi* is translated as “faculty of discernment.”

2 Cosmic womb: Translates the plural of *yonī*, literally “womb.” Here, the word is a neuter plural form of what is almost always a feminine word, *yonī*. Its neuter gender indicates the cosmic status of this womb. This cosmic sense of the word as source is found in BG 14.3 and 14.4, in relation to the *mābatattva*.

The coming forth into being: Translates *prabhava*, often translated as “source” or “origin.” My translation here attempts to express the rich etymological sense of the word, which conveys *purāṇic* cosmology: *pra-* (“forth”) and *-bhava* (“the coming . . . into being”). See other instances of the word in BG 9.18, 10.2, 10.8, and 18.41.

The going forth into cosmic absorption: Translates *pralaya*, often given the general and somewhat misleading meaning of “dissolution.” In *purāṇic* cosmology, the universe is not dissolved; it is absorbed into a dormant cosmic state until it comes forth into being (*prabhava*) once again.

There is nothing else
superior to me,
O Conqueror of Wealth.

On me all this
[universe] is strung
like pearls on a thread.

7

I am the taste in water,
O Kaunteya;
I am the radiance
of the moon and the sun,

The sacred utterance
in all the Vedas,
the sound in space,
the prowess in men.³

8

The pure fragrance in earth
and the brilliance
in fire am I.

The life in all beings
and the austerity
in austere persons am I.

9

As the seed of all beings,
know me to be
the eternal,
O Pārtha.

Among the discerning,
I am discernment;
of the splendid,
I am splendor.

10

³ Sacred utterance: Translates *pranava*,
and refers to the sacred syllable OM.

And among the powerful,
 I am power devoid
 of desire and passion.
 In beings, I am desire
 that does not
 conflict with dharma,
 O Best of the Bharatas.

11

And those very states
 of being that are
 of the nature of
sattva, rajas, and tamas,
 Know that they
 are from me alone,
 yet I am not in them—
 they are in me.

12

By these three states of being,
 composed of
 the three 'qualities',
 this entire world,
 Bewildered,
 does not recognize me—
 I am beyond these
 as the everpresent.

13

For that which consists
 of the 'qualities'
 is my illusive power, *Māyā*,
 so difficult to cross beyond.
 Only those who
 offer themselves to me
 cross over this
 illusive power of *Māyā*.

14

Maleficent persons are
 those who are bewildered,
 those who do not
 offer themselves to me,
 the lowest of humankind,
 Those whose knowledge
 has been stolen by
 the illusive power of Māyā,
 and those who have taken shelter
 of an ungodly existence. 15

Of beneficent persons,
 four types offer
 their love to me,
 O Arjuna:
 One who is distressed,
 one desiring knowledge,
 one seeking personal gain,
 and one possessing knowledge,
 O Best of the Bharatas. 16

Among these,
 the person of knowledge,
 who is constantly absorbed
 in yoga that is solely
 an offering of love,
 is exceptional.
 For I am so dearly loved
 by the person of knowledge,
 and that person
 is dearly loved by me.⁴ 17

4 Offering of love: Translates *bbakti*, a word that appears fourteen times in the BG. This is the first instance in which this

noun appears. Its verbal form, *bbakta*, "offered love," first appears in BG 4.3.

Certainly all of these are exalted,
 but one who has knowledge
 is my very self;
 this is my opinion.

For one whose self
 is absorbed in yoga
 abides only in me,
 the incomparable goal.

18

At the end of many births,
 one who has knowledge
 offers oneself to me, realizing,
 "Vāsudeva is everything!"—
 such an exalted self
 is very rarely found.⁵

19

Persons whose knowledge
 has been carried away
 by desires for this or that
 offer themselves
 to different deities.

Following
 this or that rule,
 they are ruled
 by their own worldly nature.⁶

20

5 Vāsudeva: A name of Krishna. The name means "the son of Vasudeva." The word *vāsu* means "the Soul of the universe," and *deva* means "divinity" or "sport" or "play." Thus this name for Krishna can mean "the divine play of the Soul of the universe." It also means "completely pure existence," and is an abbreviation for a person who is beyond primordial nature (*prakṛti*) and the primary 'qualities' of nature (*guṇas*) arising from it.

"Vāsudeva is everything!": Krishna explains here that it is a very rare soul who can exclaim how the divinity is wonderfully omnipresent. See BG 11.40, where Arjuna addresses Krishna as "Everything" and expresses how Krishna is "everything" and pervades "everything."

6 Different deities: Translates *anya-devatāḥ*. The word *sarvam* ("everything") in the previous verse contrasts with the word *anya* ("different") in this verse.

Whoever, with faith,
has offered love
to whatever form that
person desires to worship—
Upon every such person,
I bestow this
immovable faith.

21

Such a person,
absorbed in
yoga with faith,
longs to worship that [form]
And obtains one's
desires from that,
though they are
bestowed by me alone.

22

But the fruit
that comes to those
of little intelligence
is temporary.
Those who sacrifice
to the divinities
go to the divinities;
those who offer
their love to me,
surely they come to me.

23

The undiscerning
 consider me to be
 an unmanifest existence
 that has become
 visibly manifest,
 Not knowing
 my highest being,
 which is everpresent
 and incomparable.⁷ 24

I am not revealed to everyone,
 being concealed by
 the divine power of yoga,
 Yoga-Māyā.
 This bewildered world
 does not recognize me
 as the unborn and everpresent.⁸ 25

I know those beings
 who have passed on,
 those who are living,
 O Arjuna,
 And those who
 have yet to come—
 but none of them know me. 26

7 Unmanifest existence: Translates *avyaktam*, which carries the sense of "indistinct and formless," that is, the impersonal manifestation of the divine.

Visibly manifest: Translates *vyaktim*, which carries the sense of "distinct form and personality"; that is, "manifest being" refers to the personal being of the divinity.

Highest being: Translates *param bhāvam*, which could be translated as

Krishna's "supreme being" or "supreme heart."

8 Yoga-Māyā: Essentially the word *Māyā* presented in earlier verses, translated here as "the divine power of yoga." This divine power (*Māyā*) uses "yoga" either to "connect" souls with the bewildering energy of this world to conceal such souls from the divinity, or to "connect" souls with the blissful energy of Krishna to reveal the divinity to such souls.

With the rising up
 of desire and hatred,
 with the bewilderment
 of duality, O Bhārata,
 All beings go to a state
 of complete bewilderment
 at the time of their birth,
 O Scorcher of the Enemy. 27

Now those whose misdeeds
 have come to an end,
 whose actions are virtuous—
 Such persons, freed from
 the bewilderment of duality,
 offer their love to me
 with intense devotion.⁹ 28

Striving for release
 from aging and death,
 those who have
 taken shelter of me
 Know Brahman completely
 and action entirely,
 and the 'principle of self'.¹⁰ 29

9 Misdeeds: Translates *pāpam*.

Virtuous: Translates *punyam*.

Intense devotion: Translates *dṛḍha-vratāḥ*.

10 The 'principle of self': Translates *adhyātmā*, introduced again in BG 8.1. The

principles of 'becoming', 'divinity', and 'sacrifice' are to follow. As principles, these terms refer to all things pertaining to these essential subject matters for understanding reality.

Those who know me as
 the 'principle of becoming',
 along with the 'principle of divinity'
 and the 'principle of sacrifice',
 Even at the time of passing on—
 they know me,
 for their thought
 is absorbed in yoga.¹¹

30

¹¹ The 'principle of becoming': Translates the term *adbibbhūta*.

The 'principle of divinity': Translates the term *adbidaiva*. The word *daiva* means "divine" and can also mean "destiny" or "fate," and most relevantly, carries the sense of the aggregate of the various divine beings within the cosmic

government that comprise the ultimate Person, the *puruṣa*. The word is translated here in the most general sense as "divinity," but it pertains to the multiple cosmic divinities. A slight variation of this term appears as *adbidaivatā* in BG 8.4.

The 'principle of sacrifice': Translates the term *adbiyajña*.

The Transcendent Brahman

Arjuna said:

What is that Brahman?

What is the 'principle of self'?

What is action,

○ Ultimate Person?

And the 'principle of becoming',

what is said about it?

The 'principle of divinity',

what is it declared to be?

I

What is the 'principle of sacrifice',

and how is it present

here within this body,

○ Madhusūdana?

And how, at the time

of passing on,

are you to be known by

those who are self-disciplined?

2

The Beloved Lord said:

Brahman is

the supreme indestructible;
the 'principle of self'
is described as one's
state of intrinsic being.

The activity of beings
that brings about their
emerging states of being
is the creative force
known as action.¹

3

The 'principle of becoming'
is the transitory state of being,
and the 'principle of divinity'
is the Person.

Indeed, I am

the 'principle of sacrifice'
here in the body,
O Best of the Embodied.²

4

And at the time of one's end,
remembering me alone
while giving up the body—

One who thus goes forth,
goes to my state of being;
about this there is no doubt.

5

¹ Emerging states of being: Translates the phrase *bhāvodbhava*, referring here to the successive life-states occurring in reincarnation.

Creative force: Translates *visarga*, referring to the epiphenomenal creative or

active process, the actions that create things within this creation.

² The Person: Translates *puruṣa*, referring to the *virāt puruṣa* found in the Vedas, the macrocosmic Person.

Furthermore,

whatever state of being
one remembers upon
giving up the body
at the end [of life],

To that very state

one always goes,
O Kaunteya,
being conditioned
by that state of being.

6

Therefore, at all times

remember me
and fight!

With your mind and

discernment offered to me,
certainly you shall come to me—
of this there is no doubt.

7

By absorption in yoga

through the practice of yoga,
with thought not wandering
to anything else,

One approaches

the supreme divine Person,

O Pārtha, continuously
focusing one's thought [on him].

8

One should continuously
remember [him]

As the wise one,
the most ancient one,
the perpetual governor,
the one who is smaller
than the atom;

As the arranger
of everything,
whose form
is inconceivable;

As the one who is
luminous like the sun,
beyond all darkness.

9

At the time
of passing on,
with undisturbed mind,
Absorbed in yoga
by offering one's love
and by the very power of yoga;
Intently focusing
the vital life-breath
between the eyebrows—
One reaches that
supreme divine Person.

10

The imperishable, which
 knowers of the Vedas describe,
 Into which enter the ascetics
 who are free from passion,
 Desiring which those persons
 lead a life of chastity—
 That place I shall
 briefly explain to you.

II

Controlling all
 the [bodily] gates
 and stopping the mind
 from within the heart,
 Placing the self's
 vital life-breath at
 the top of the head,
 one is established
 in yoga concentration.³

12

"OM"— thus sounding
 Brahman as a single syllable,
 continuously remembering me,
 One who passes away,
 relinquishing the body—
 such a person passes on
 to the supreme destination.

13

3 The [bodily] gates: Refers to the nine passages of the body spoken of in

BG 5.13 as the "city of nine gates."

One whose thought
 is never on anything else,
 who remembers me
 continuously—
 For that one, O Pārtha,
 I am easily attained,
 for the yogi who is
 constantly absorbed in yoga. 14

Once having come to me,
 they do not come
 to repeated birth,
 to that impermanent
 place of suffering;
 For those whose selves
 are extraordinary
 have gone to
 the supreme perfection. 15

From the earth up to
 the realm of Brahmā,
 the worlds undergo
 repeated cycles, O Arjuna.
 Having come to me,
 however, O Kaunteya,
 one does not find
 repeated birth.⁴ 16

4 The realm: Translates *bhuvana*, the highest station of this universe.

Brahmā: The cosmic deity who presides over creation within the great cycle of creation and dissolution (the latter

presided over by the deity Shiva) in the physical universe. Note that this name is different from Brahman, the ultimate reality, the supreme spirit.

Those who know of Brahmā's day,
 having the duration of
 a thousand ages,
 And of his night,
 ending after a thousand ages,
 are persons who know
 what is day and what is night. 17

All manifestations arise
 from the unmanifest
 with the coming of
 the day [of Brahmā].
 With the coming of
 the night [of Brahmā],
 they are absorbed,
 then and there, in that
 which is called the unmanifest. 18

This very same totality of beings,
 repeatedly coming into being,
 is reabsorbed helplessly
 With the coming of the night,
 O Pārtha;
 it [again] comes forth
 with the coming of the day. 19

Beyond this, however,
 there is another,
 unmanifest state of being
 that is eternal,
 Which, when all beings
 perish, itself does
 not ever perish. 20

The unmanifest is called
 "the indestructible";
 they declare it to be
 the supreme destination,
 Achieving which,
 they do not return—
 that is my supreme domain. 21

It is the supreme Person,
 moreover, O Pārtha,
 who is attainable
 by offering love
 to none other,
 Within whom beings exist,
 by whom all this [world]
 is pervaded.⁵ 22

Now, under what
 circumstances do the yogis
 who have passed away
 Pass on to the non-repetition
 and also the repetition of birth—
 I shall speak of those circumstances,
 O Best of the Bharatas. 23

5 It is the supreme Person: Here Krishna speaks about his cosmic manifestation in the third person. This objectification of his cosmic personal Self, who is ap-

proachable by offering love, implies that he who stands before Arjuna is the highest and most intimate Self with whom souls can relate.

Fire, light, day,
 the waxing moon,
 the six-month northern
 course of the sun—
 Those who have passed on
 under these circumstances,
 such persons, who are
 knowers of Brahman,
 go to Brahman.⁶

24

Smoke, night, also
 the waning moon,
 the six-month southern
 course of the sun—
 Under these circumstances,
 after attaining
 the light of the moon,
 the yogi returns.

25

For these two passages
 from the world,
 light and dark, are
 thought to be perpetual.
 By one, the yogi passes on
 with no return;
 by the other,
 the yogi again returns.

26

6 These elements—fire, light, day, etc.—in verses 24 and 25 also refer to the guidance of specific divinities on the two paths out of this world. These are the methods of liberation and departure from life found in the Chândogya Upanishad 4.5, Brhadâranyaka Upanishad 5.10, and Muṇḍaka Upanishad 2.11. However, Krishna ultimately expresses that offering one's heart transcends these processes,

positive or negative. In bhakti, all the technicalities of these paths are unnecessary and even a higher liberation can be achieved in the practice of loving devotion. In this verse and the following, Krishna is acknowledging these various elements for passing on that correspond to the internal dimensions of the self in its passage beyond this life.

Knowing these two paths,
 O Pārtha, the yogi is
 not bewildered in any way.
Therefore, at all times,
 be absorbed in yoga
 by means of yoga, O Arjuna.

27

In the Vedas, in sacrifices,
 in austerities, and also
In charitable gifts,
 whatever meritorious
 fruit is ordained—
One who goes beyond that,
 having understood all this,
Such a yogi goes
 on to the supreme
 and incomparable realm.

28

The King of Secrets

The Beloved Lord said:

Now I shall reveal to you
 this greatest secret,
 for you are without envy.
 It is knowledge together
 with realized knowledge,
 knowing which you shall
 be free from inauspiciousness. I

This is the king of knowledge,
 the king of secrets,
 the ultimate means
 of purification.

Understood by
 direct perception,
 in harmony with dharma,
 it is joyful to perform
 and everlasting.¹ 2

Those persons who have
 no faith in this dharma,
 O Destroyer of the Enemy,
 Not achieving me,
 again return to the path
 of recurring death. 3

1 "The king of knowledge" and "the king of secrets" are each taken as a special type of *karmadhārya* compound, known as *puruṣavyāghra*. The first of these two

phrases can thus be understood as meaning, "There is a knowledge that should rule souls just as a king rules his people."

By me this entire universe
is pervaded, by my
unmanifest form.

All beings rest on me
and I do not
rest upon them.

4

And [yet] beings
do not rest on me—
behold my divine
power of yoga!

Supporting beings
and not resting on beings,
my Self causes beings to be.

5

As the mighty wind
moving everywhere
rests on space,
So all beings
rest on me—
understand this!

6

All beings, O Kaunteya,
enter my
primordial nature
At the end of a life-cycle
of the universe;
again, I send them forth
at the beginning of
[another] cycle.²

7

² A life-cycle of the universe: translates the term *kalpa*, which equals 311 trillion years. A *kalpa* is divided into four sub-

periods called *yugas*, during each of which a manifestation of the Divinity descends to the earth.

Being firmly supported by
 my own primordial nature,
 I send forth again and again
 This entire aggregate of beings,
 which is powerless under
 the power of primordial nature. 8

And these actions
 do not bind me,
 O Conqueror of Wealth.
 Remaining aloof,
 I am not attached
 to these actions. 9

With my supervision,
 primordial nature
 brings forth the moving
 and the nonmoving.
 By this causal force,
 O Kaunteya,
 the universe
 revolves in cycles.³ 10

The bewildered discount me
 for having assumed
 the limited form
 of a human,
 Not knowing
 the supreme nature
 of my Lordship
 over all that exists.⁴ 11

3 Supervision: Translates *adhyakṣa*, which can also connote "the divine glance," identified as the "causal force." This translation can be justified by the way the word appears in Aitareya Upanishad 1.1.1 and Brhadāranyaka Upanishad 1.2.5.

4 Limited form: Translates *tanum*, which indicates an insignificant or small form. The sense here is that Krishna possesses an eternal humanlike form that he does not assume at any point in time.

Those who are of vain hopes,
 of vain actions,
 of vain knowledge;
 who are thoughtless,
 Demonic, and godless—
 they indeed are enslaved
 by the bewildering
 primordial nature.

12

However, those whose selves
 are extraordinary,
 O Pārtha, who abide
 in the divine nature,
 Offer love to me
 with their minds
 focused on none other,
 knowing me as
 the everpresent
 origin of beings.⁵

13

Constantly praising me
 and striving with
 intense devotion,
 And honoring me
 with an offering of love,
 always absorbed in yoga,
 they worship me.

14

⁵ Divine nature: Translates *daivīm prakṛtim*. Both words of this phrase are in the feminine gender, indicating that the

divine realm is of a feminine nature, as is *prakṛti* ("primordial nature") and *Māyā* ("divine illusive power").

And there are also others
 who, sacrificing
 with the sacrifice
 of knowledge,
 worship me

In my oneness,
 in my separateness,
 and in my many forms
 facing everywhere.

15

I am the ritual,
 I am the sacrifice,
 I am the oblation,
 I am the healing herb;
 I am the sacred mantra,
 I am indeed
 the clarified butter,
 I am the fire, and
 I am the offering.

16

I am the father of this universe,
 the mother, the creator,
 the grandfather;
 That which is to be known,
 the means of purification,
 the sacred sound OM,
 and indeed the Rig,
 Sāma, and Yajur [Vedas].⁶

17

⁶ Rig, Sāma, and Yajur: These are the major sections of the Vedic literature. The Rig Veda presents hymns of praise and philosophical reflection; the Sāma Veda

focuses primarily on the methods of recitation of the verses in the Rig Veda; and the Yajur Veda emphasizes Vedic ritual performance and practice.

I am the goal, the sustainer,
 the Lord, the witness,
 the dwelling, the shelter,
 the innermost heart;
 The coming forth into being,
 the going forth into
 cosmic absorption;
 the continuance of existence,
 the cosmic receptacle,
 and the everpresent seed.

18

I radiate warmth;
 I withhold and
 send forth the rain.
 I am mortality
 and indeed immortality,
 being and nonbeing,
 O Arjuna.

19

Those who know the three Vedas,
 the soma drinkers purified of vice
 Who worship me with sacrifices,
 seek passage
 to the celestial realm.
 Approaching the pious world
 of the lord of celestials,
 Such persons partake
 of the divine pleasures
 of divinities, in the divine realm.⁷

20

⁷ Soma: One of the primary substances utilized as a libation in the Vedic sacrifice. It is a very intoxicating drink derived from a specific plant, still unknown.

Celestial realm: In Hindu cosmology, this is a heavenly realm of celestial beings. The highest abode is beyond even this realm and is the ultimate, divine realm of Krishna.

Those persons,
 having enjoyed
 that vast celestial world,
 Their piety exhausted,
 then [again] enter
 the mortal world.
 Thus following
 the dharma of
 the three [Vedas],
 Desiring certain
 objects of desire,
 they achieve a state of
 going and coming back.⁸

21

Persons who, meditating
 on none other,
 worship me completely—
 For them, who are always
 fully absorbed in yoga,
 I bring prosperity and security.

22

Even those who
 have offered their love
 to different deities,
 who, filled with faith,
 perform sacrifice—
 Even they perform
 sacrifice for me alone,
 O Kaunteya,
 though not according
 to injunction.

23

⁸ A state of going and coming back:
 Expresses the futility of this process: one
 may go to a higher world but must return

to this one, and thus no progress is actually made.

For I am the beloved recipient
and indeed the Lord
of all sacrifices.

But they do not
recognize me in truth;
therefore they fall
[from the celestial realm]. 24

Those who serve divinities
go to the divinities;
those who serve ancestors
go to the ancestors;
Those who sacrifice for spirits
go to the spirits;
those who sacrifice for me
surely come to me. 25

One who, with love,
makes an offering to me
of a leaf, a flower,
fruit, or water—
Such an offering,
presented with love,
I accept from one
whose self is devoted. 26

Whatever you do,
whatever you eat,
whatever you sacrifice,
whatever you bestow,
Whatever austerity
you undertake—
that, enact as
an offering unto me. 27

Thus you shall be freed
from the bondage of action,
which produces
good and bad fruits.

With the self absorbed
in the yoga of renunciation,
completely liberated,
you shall come to me.

28

I am the same
toward all beings;
no one is either hated
or dearly loved by me.

Yet those who,
with an offering of love,
offer their love to me—
they are in me
and I am also in them.

29

Even if one has
behaved very badly,
if one offers one's love
to none other but me,
Indeed, one should be
considered saintly,
for such a person
is rightly absolved.

30

One quickly becomes
a self who embraces dharma
and attains eternal peace;

O Kaunteya,
know this for certain—
one who offers love to me
is never lost.

31

For those taking shelter
 of me, O Pārtha,
 whether they come
 from troubled wombs,
 Or whether they be
 women, tradespeople,
 or skilled workers—
 even they reach
 the supreme goal.⁹ 32

How much more, then,
 for the virtuous Brahmins,
 as well as the saintly kings
 who have offered their love?
 Having come to
 this impermanent
 unhappy world,
 offer your love to me. 33

Be mindful of me
 with love offered to me;
 sacrificing for me,
 act out of reverence for me.
 Surely you shall
 come to me,
 thus having absorbed
 your self in yoga with
 me as the supreme goal.¹⁰ 34

⁹ Troubled wombs: Translates *pāpa-yoni*.

¹⁰ Be mindful of me . . . come to me: The first half and part of the third quarter of this verse are repeated in BG 18.65.

The Sublime Presence of Divinity

The Beloved Lord said:

Once again, indeed,
O Mighty-Armed,
hear my supreme word,
Which I shall speak to you
who are so dearly loved,
with a desire for
your well-being.

I

Neither the multitude
of celestial beings
nor the exalted seers
understand how I have
come forth into being,
For I am the beginning
of the divinities
and exalted seers—
every one of them.

2

One who understands me
as unborn, beginningless,
and as the exalted supreme
Lord of the universe—
That person,
among mortals,
is unbewildered and
free from all misfortune.

3

Discernment, knowledge,
 freedom from illusion,
 forbearance, truth,
 restraint, calmness;
 Happiness, suffering,
 coming into being
 and cessation of being,
 fear and indeed fearlessness; 4

Nonviolence, sameness,
 contentment, austerity,
 charity, fame, and infamy—
 In their various forms,
 these conditions of beings
 arise from me alone. 5

The seven exalted seers,
 the four of previous times,
 and also the Manus,
 Having come into being from me,
 are generated from my mind—
 those from whom these progeny
 of the world have come.¹ 6

This abounding power
 and yoga of mine,
 one who knows this in truth—
 That one is absorbed in yoga
 through unwavering yoga practice;
 of this there is no doubt. 7

1 The seven exalted seers: A group of unnamed sages first mentioned in the Vedas.

The four of previous times: The four Kumāras, whose names are Sanātkumāra, Sananda, Sanaka, and Sanātana.

The Manus: *Manu* means "man," here referring to the primary progenitors of humankind.

"I am, of everything,
the coming forth into being;
from me everything
is set forth into motion."

Mindful [of these words],
they offer their love to me,
the enlightened ones,
being fully immersed
in feelings of love.²

8

With their thought on me,
with their life-breath
offered to me,
enlightening one another
And conversing about me
continuously,
they are satiated and
they feel rapturous love.³

9

For them, who are constantly
absorbed in yoga,
who offer loving service
with natural affection,
I offer that yoga
of discernment
by which they
come close to me.

10

2 The coming forth into being: Translates *prabhavaḥ*, as it is used in a cosmological context. The word is often translated as "source" or "origin."

Is set forth into motion: Translates the verb *pravartate*, often translated as

"emanates."

Being . . . feelings of love: Translates *bhāva*.

3 Life-breath: Translates *prāṇa*, a Sanskrit word adopted by the English language.

For them especially,
 out of compassion,
 dwelling as the Self
 within their hearts,
 I dispel the darkness
 that arises from
 the absence of knowledge
 with the radiant
 lamp of knowledge. 11

Arjuna said:

You are the supreme Brahman,
 the supreme dwelling place,
 the supreme means of purification;
 The eternal divine Person,
 the original Divinity,
 the unborn, all-pervading one. 12

All the seers describe you,
 including the divine seer Nārada;
 Also, Asita Devala, Vyāsa,
 and now, you yourself tell me.⁴ 13

All this that you tell me
 I consider to be true,
 O Keshava.
 Indeed, O Beloved Lord,
 neither the divinities
 nor the demons
 know your personality. 14

4 Nārada: The wandering mendicant who carries and plays a long stringed instrument (similar to the Indian sitar), who becomes a catalyst for various divine dramas. His name appears again in BG 10.26 below. The legendary author of the Bhakti Sūtra.

Asita Devala: The compiler of divine hymns, some of which are found in the Rig Veda.

Vyāsa: The great sage who is the compiler of the Vedas and other sacred literature, including the Mahābhārata and the Bhagavad Gītā.

Only you personally
 know your Self
 by your Self,
 O Ultimate Person,
 O Source of Beings,
 O Lord of Beings,
 O Divinity of Divinities,
 O Master of the Universe! 15

You are able to fully
 describe the divine,
 for boundless are
 the powers of your Self
 By which,
 pervading these worlds
 with such boundless powers,
 you are situated. 16

How may I know you,
 O Yogi, while constantly
 meditating upon you?
 And in what various states
 of being am I to meditate
 upon you, O Beloved Lord? 17

Elaborating upon the yoga
 and abounding power
 of your Self,
 O Janārdana,
 Describe further,
 as there is no satiation
 for me while hearing
 of the immortal. 18

The Beloved Lord said:

Listen! I shall tell you of
the abounding
powers of my Self
That are most prominent,
O Best of the Kurus,
for there is no end
to their extent.

19

I am the Self,
O Gudākesha,
abiding in the hearts
of all beings.
I am also the beginning
and the middle of beings,
as well as their end.⁵

20

Among the Ādityas,
I am Vishnu;
of luminaries,
I am the radiant sun.
Among the Maruts,
I am Marīchi;
of heavenly bodies,
I am the moon.⁶

21

⁵ All beings: Translates the phrase *sarva-bhūta*. The phrase also can be taken as "All Being," an epithet for the first created being, Brahmā, the deity charged with constructing the cosmos.

⁶ The Ādityas: The twelve celestial beings who preside over the sun.

The Maruts: The lords presiding over the wind.

Of the Vedas,
 I am the Sāma;
 among divinities,
 I am Vāsava.
 Of the senses,
 I am the mind;
 and of beings,
 I am consciousness.⁷ 22

And among the Rudras,
 I am Shankara [Shiva];
 among Yakshas and Rakshasas,
 I am Kuvera, lord of wealth.
 Among the Vasus,
 I am fire;
 and of lofty mountains,
 I am Meru.⁸ 23

And among priests,
 know me to be
 the principal one,
 Brihaspati, O Pārtha.
 Among military commanders,
 I am Skanda;
 of bodies of water,
 I am the ocean.⁹ 24

7 Sāma: The section of the Vedas that is sung.

Vāsava: The principal deity, whose name is Indra.

8 The Rudras: The eleven lords who are involved in cosmic destruction; also the celestial beings of roaring thunder.

Shankara: Known by the name of Shiva, the chief of the Rudras; the deity of cosmic dissolution and transformation.

Yakshas: Spirits.

Rakshasas: Horrific beings.

The Vasus: The eight atmospheric lords.

Meru: The golden mountain at the center of the cosmos.

9 Brihaspati: The principal priest of celestial beings.

Skanda: The lord of war, who is also the son of the deity, Shiva.

Among exalted seers,
 I am Bhrigu;
 of utterances,
 I am the one sacred syllable.
 Of sacrifices,
 I am the sacrifice of
 quietly repeated prayer;
 of stationary things,
 I am the Himalayas;¹⁰ 25

Of all trees,
 the sacred Ashwattha;
 and among
 divine seers, Nārada;
 Among the Gandharvas,
 Citraratha;
 among perfected beings,
 the sage Kapila.¹¹ 26

Of horses, know me
 as Uccaishravas,
 who arose from the nectar;
 Of princely elephants,
 Airāvata;
 and among humans,
 the ruler who protects the people.¹² 27

10 Bhrigu: The mediator between the divinities.

One sacred syllable: This is the syllable OM.

Quietly repeated prayer: Translates *japa*; understood as softly repeated mantra or prayer.

11 The sacred Ashwattha: Often understood as the banyan or fig tree. The image of this tree is used metaphorically to explain the metaphysics of the BG in the beginning of Chapter 15.

Gandharvas: The celestial singers and musicians.

Kapila: There are two personalities

with this name who are associated with the Sāṅkhya philosophical system: one is the founder of the philosophical school, and the other, here referred to by Krishna, is the divine descent of Vishnu presented in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa.

12 Uccaishravas: This horse arises from the nectar created by the churning of the ocean, and is associated with Indra and the deity of the sun.

Airāvata: The elephant belonging to Indra.

The ruler who protects the people: Translates Nārādhīpa, the king.

Of weapons,
 I am the thunderbolt;
 among cows,
 I am the one
 that fulfills desires.
 I am also the procreating force,
 Kandarpa;
 and of serpents,
 I am Vāsuki.¹³

28

Of the Nāgas,
 I am Ananta;
 of great aquatics,
 I am Varuna [their lord].
 Among ancestors,
 I am Aryaman;
 and among subduers,
 I am Death.¹⁴

29

And among the Daityas,
 I am Prahlāda;
 I am time of all that
 moves forward in time.
 Of animals,
 I am the king of animals;
 of winged creatures,
 the son of Vinatā, Garuda.¹⁵

30

13 The one that fulfills desires: Translates *kāmadbuk*, the divine cow that grants all one's desires (*kāma*).

Kandarpa: The deity of love, sometimes thought of as India's Cupid.

Vāsuki: The king of serpents.

14 Nāgas: Celestial serpents.

Ananta: "The unlimited one." The serpent on whom the cosmic Vishnu lies to sustain the universe.

Varuna: The lord of the water.

Aryaman: The chief ancestor.

Death: The lord of death, known as Yāma.

15 Daityas: A clan of demons.

Prahlāda: The saintly son of a demon father.

The king of animals: The lion.

The son of Vinatā: Translates *vainateya*, who is Garuda, the divine bird carrier of Lord Vishnu.

Of things that purify,
 I am the purifying wind;
 among wielders of weapons,
 I am Rāma.

Of fish,
 I am the shark;
 and of flowing waters,
 I am the Ganges,
 the daughter of Jahnu.¹⁶

31

Of creations,
 I am the beginning,
 the end, and indeed
 the middle, O Arjuna.

Of knowledge,
 I am knowledge of
 the 'principle of self';
 among those
 professing theories,
 I am the theorem.

32

¹⁶ Rāma: The manifestation of Vishnu known as Paraśurāma, meaning "the wielder of the ax."

The daughter of Jahnu: The sacred river Ganges, which flows from the toe of Vishnu.

Of letters,

I am the letter A;
and of compound words,
the dual form.

Indeed, I am

imperishable time;
I am the world-creator,
with faces in every direction.¹⁷

33

I am death, which

takes away everything,
and the rising into being
of all that will be.

Of feminine attributes

[and their presiding goddesses],

I am fame, beauty, speech,
remembrance, intelligence,
constancy, and forbearance.

34

¹⁷ Compound words: Translates *sāmā-sika*, referring to the grammatical construction in Sanskrit that involves the placing together and construal of two or more words to form a compound phrase.

Dual form: Translates *dvandva*, a certain type of compound word phrase in which each of the two members of the compound are given equal significance and are unified by their relationship. This grammatical construction resonates fun-

damental philosophical and theistic aspects of Vaishnava thought: embedded within this compound is the idea of "difference" between the two members as well as the "non-difference" of form, or the unity provided by the singularity of the compound itself.

The world-creator, with faces in every direction: The cosmic deity, *Brahmā*. However, it is Krishna who is the ultimate creator and designer of all the universes.

Also, of hymns,
 I am the great hymn, Brihatsāma;
 of poetic meters,
 I am the Gāyatrī,
 recited by saintly priests.

Of months,
 I am Mārgashīrsha;
 of seasons,
 I am the season
 that abounds in flowers.¹⁸

35

I am gambling
 among cheaters;
 I am splendor
 of the splendid.
 I am victory,
 I am firm resolve,
 I am courage
 among the courageous.

36

Among the descendants of Vrishni,
 I am Vāsudeva;
 among the Pāndavas,
 [you] the Conqueror of Wealth.
 Also, among sages,
 I am Vyāsa;
 among poets,
 the poet Ushanā.¹⁹

37

¹⁸ Brihatsāma: The "great hymn" for Indra found in the Sāma Veda.

Gāyatrī meter: A meter with eight syllables per quarter verse.

Mārgashīrsha: The span of time that corresponds to the months of November and December.

The season that abounds in flowers: Spring.

¹⁹ Vrishni: The dynasty in which Krishna appears.

Vāsudeva: A name for Krishna meaning "the son of Vasudeva." See BG 7.19. This name can also refer to Krishna's older brother, Balarāma.

Ushanā: A famous sage, frequently mentioned in the Vedas, who composed four hymns.

I am the taming rod
among those who tame;
I am moral conduct
among those who seek victory.
And indeed,
I am the silence of secrets;
I am knowledge
among those who have knowledge. 38

And I am also that which is
the seed of all beings,
O Arjuna.
There is nothing that
can exist without me—
no moving or nonmoving being. 39

There is no limit
to my boundless powers,
O Scorcher of the Enemy.
What has been described
by me is merely
an example of the extent
of my boundless power. 40

Whatever form of existence
possesses abounding power,
contains the beautiful,
or is well-endowed
with excellence—
Understand that
every such form
has become fully manifest
from but a part of my splendor. 41

But what is the necessity
of your knowing
so many things,
O Arjuna?

I support
this whole universe
continuously,
with one part [of myself].

Vision of the Universal Form

Arjuna said:

Due to your grace upon me,
 your supreme secret
 known as the 'principle of self',
 Which has been spoken
 by you in these words,
 has dispelled this
 bewilderment of mine.

I

For the becoming and
 the passing on of beings
 has been heard by me
 in great detail

From you,
 O One with Lotus-like Eyes,
 as well as [knowledge]
 of your everpresent supreme Self.

2

Thus as you have described
 this about your Self,
 O Highest Supreme Lord,
 I desire to see your
 supremely powerful form,
 O Ultimate Person.

3

If you think it is possible
 for me to see you
 in this way, O Lord,
 O Supreme Lord of Yoga,
 then reveal to me
 your everpresent Self.¹

4

The Beloved Lord said:

Behold my forms,
 O Pārtha,
 by the hundreds,
 or by the thousands—
 Divine, of various types,
 and of various colors
 and appearances.

5

Behold the Ādityas,
 the Vasus, the Rudras,
 the two Ashvins,
 also the Maruts.
 Many of these never
 have been seen before—
 behold these wonders,
 O Bhārata.²

6

¹ Supreme Lord of Yoga: Translates *yogeśvara*. This epithet appears in another instance within this chapter, and in two other instances in the final chapter. It consists of the words *yoga* and *īśvara* (the "Supreme Lord").

² The Ādityas: Celestial beings related to the sun.

The Vasus: Celestial beings of fire and light.

The Rudras: Celestial beings of roaring thunder.

The two Ashvins: Celestial beings of soothing dawn.

The Maruts: Celestial beings of wind and lightning.

Before you, in one place,
 behold now
 the entire universe,
 with every moving
 and nonmoving being
 Within my body,
 O Gudākesha,
 and whatever else
 you desire to see.

7

But you are unable to see me
 with only this, your own eyes.
 I [therefore] give divine eyes to you—
 behold my supremely powerful yoga!

8

Sanjaya said:

Thus having spoken,
 O King, the exalted
 Supreme Lord of Yoga, Hari,
 Then revealed to Pārtha
 his supremely powerful
 majestic form:

9

Of numerous mouths and eyes,
 of numerous extraordinary
 appearances;
 Of numerous divine ornaments,
 of numerous upraised
 divine weapons;

10

Wearing divine garlands
 and garments, with divine
 perfumes and ointments;
 Consisting of all wonders—
 the Divinity, endless,
 facing in all directions.

11

If a thousand suns
 were to have risen
 in the sky at once,
 Such brilliance as this
 might resemble
 the brilliance
 of that supreme Self. 12

There, in one place,
 the entire universe
 was unlimitedly divided.
 The Pāṇḍava then
 saw this in the body of
 the Divinity of divinities. 13

Then struck with amazement,
 the hairs of his limbs
 standing on end,
 the Conqueror of Wealth,
 Bowing his head
 to the Divinity,
 with palms joined
 in prayerful gesture, spoke. 14

Arjuna said:

I see the divinities
 in your body, O Divinity—
 All of this, and also various
 assemblages of beings,
 Lord Brahmā sitting
 on the seat of the lotus,
 As well as all the seers
 and divine serpents. 15

With many arms, bellies,
 mouths, and eyes,
 I see you everywhere
 in your unending form—
 No end, nor middle,
 nor even beginning
 of yourself
 Do I see, O All-Pervasive
 Supreme Lord,
 of all-pervading form.

16

Wearing a crown,
 bearing a club,
 and holding a disc,
 A mass of light
 shining everywhere—
 I see you, so difficult
 to perceive all at once,
 With the brilliance of
 the sun and blazing fires,
 which is immeasurable!

17

You are the indestructible,
 the supreme object of knowledge.
 You are the supreme
 resting place of all.
 You are the everpresent
 protector of lasting dharma.
 You are the eternal Person—
 so it is understood by me.³

18

³ Indestructible: Translates *akṣara*, which is the name of the sacred syllable OM, the sonic manifestation of the divinity.

Having no beginning,
middle, or end,
of unlimited prowess,
Of unlimited arms,
with the moon and sun
as your eyes—
I behold you, whose mouths
are of blazing fire,
Burning this entire universe
with your own splendor.

19

Indeed, that which is between
heaven and earth
Is pervaded by you alone
in all directions.
Seeing this wondrous
terrible form of yours,
The three worlds tremble,
O Mighty Self.

20

For over there, multitudes
of celestial beings
enter into you.
Some, daunted,
sing praises to you with
palms prayerfully joined.
Crying out "Glory!"
multitudes of great seers
and perfected beings
Praise you with abundant
prayerful hymns.

21

The Rudras, Ādityas,
 Vasus, and Sādhyas;
 The Vishva deities,
 the two Ashvins, the Maruts,
 and the forefathers;
 The multitudes of Gandharvas,
 Yakshas, Asuras,
 and perfected beings—
 All behold you
 and are truly amazed.⁴ 22

Your exalted form of
 numerous mouths
 and eyes,
 O Mighty-Armed,
 of numerous arms,
 thighs, and feet,
 Of numerous bellies,
 with numerous
 frightful teeth—
 Seeing this, the worlds
 are trembling,
 so also am I. 23

Touching the blazing
 sky of many colors,
 With mouths opened wide
 and expansive blazing eyes—
 Truly having seen you,
 my inner self trembles,
 And I find neither stability
 nor tranquility, O Vishnu. 24

4. Sādhyas: A class of celestial beings mentioned in Vedic literature.

The Vishva deities: Refers to at least ten minor deities, according to Purāṇic literature.

Asuras: Within the celestial realm, those "ungodly" beings who oppose the benevolent celestial beings and divinities.

And having seen your mouths
 with frightful teeth,
 Resembling the fires
 of the end of cosmic time,
 I know not any sense of direction
 and I find no shelter—
 Be merciful,
 O Lord of Divinities,
 dwelling place of the universe!

25

And [rushing] toward you,
 over there, are all the sons
 of Dhritarāshtra,
 Indeed, along with multitudes
 of protectors of the earth
 Such as Bhīshma, Drona,
 and even the son
 of the charioteer—
 Also along with our
 own chief warriors.⁵

26

In haste they enter
 your mouths,
 Which are terrible
 with frightful teeth.
 Some, clinging
 between your teeth,
 Are vividly seen with
 their heads crushed.

27

⁵ Bhīshma: The great Kaurava elder and leading warrior.

Drona: The teacher of warfare for both

Arjuna and Duryodhana, who fights for the Kauravas.

The son of the charioteer: Karna.

As the rivers' many
currents of water
Rush forward
toward the sea alone,
So, over there,
those heroes
of the world of men
Enter into your
wildly flaming mouths.

28

As moths,
with great velocity,
Enter a blazing fire
unto their destruction,
Similarly,
the worlds also
Enter your mouths
with great velocity,
unto their destruction.

29

Devouring them
from every side,
you lick up
All the worlds with
your flaming mouths.
Filling the entire
universe with splendor,
Your fierce rays burn,
O Vishnu.

30

Tell me, who are you,
 of such terrifying form?
 Respects unto you,
 O Best of Divinities—
 be merciful!
 I wish to truly know you,
 the Original One,
 For I do not fully
 understand what you have
 set forth into motion.

31

The Beloved Lord said:
 Time I am,
 acting to destroy the worlds,
 advancing forward
 To completely annihilate
 the worlds here,
 ever turning forward.
 Even without you [acting],
 they shall all cease to be—
 Those who are warriors
 arrayed on the opposing side.

32

Therefore you must rise up,
 aspire to glory;
 Conquering your enemies,
 enjoy prosperous kingship!
 By me these very men
 have already been slain—
 Merely be the instrument,
 O Masterful Archer.

33

Drona and Bhīshma
 and Jayadratha,
 And also Karna,
 as well as other
 warrior heroes,
 Are already slain by me;
 do not hesitate—
 you must slay them!
 Fight, for you
 shall conquer
 your rivals in battle!

34

Sanjaya said:

Having heard these
 words of Keshava,
 With palms joined in
 prayerful gesture, trembling,
 the diademed one [Arjuna],
 Offering obeisance,
 spoke yet again to Krishna.
 While stuttering,
 timid and terrified,
 he bowed down.

35

Arjuna said:

It is appropriate, O Hrishīkesha,
 that by declaring your fame
 The world loudly rejoices
 and is overjoyed.
 Demons, terrified,
 flee in every direction,
 And all the multitudes of
 perfected beings shall bow down.

36

And why should they not
 bow down to you,
 O Extraordinary Self?
 More venerable even than Brahmā,
 you are the original creator.
 O Unlimited Lord of Divinities,
 dwelling place of the universe,
 You are the indestructible,
 the existent, the nonexistent,
 and that which is beyond.

37

You are the original Divinity,
 the ancient cosmic Person.
 You are the highest
 resting place
 of this universe.
 You are the knower,
 what is to be known,
 and the highest domain.
 By you this universe is pervaded,
 O One of Unlimited Form.

38

You are Vāyu, Yama, Agni,
 Varuna, the moon,
 Prajāpati, and
 the Great-Grandfather.
 Obeisance! Obeisance unto you
 a thousand times over,
 And again, even more—
 obeisance, obeisance unto you!⁶

39

6 Vāyu: A Vedic deity and personification of "the wind."

Yama: A Vedic deity and the personification of "death."

Agni: The powerful Vedic deity of "fire."

Varuna: The Vedic deity of law and order; also identified as the ruler of the universe.

Prajāpati: The "progenitor" of humankind.

The Great-Grandfather: The deity of creation, Brahmā.

Obeisance unto you
 from the front
 and from behind.
 May there also be obeisance
 unto you from all sides,
 O Everything.
 Of immeasurable prowess,
 of unlimited might,
 You complete everything—
 therefore, you are everything. 40

Thus thinking of you as "friend,"
 whatever has been spoken
 inappropriately by me,
 Such as "O Krishna,
 O Yādava, O friend,"
 Without knowing
 this magnificence of yours,
 Due to my carelessness
 or even out of affection; 41

And if in sporting together
 you were treated
 disrespectfully by me,
 During play or rest,
 while sitting or dining,
 When alone, O Achyuta,
 or even before others' eyes—
 For that I beg
 your forgiveness,
 O Unfathomable One! 42

You are the Father of the world,
 of the moving
 and the non-moving,
 And you are to be honored
 as its most worthy guru.
 There is no other equal to you—
 how could there be
 anyone greater,
 Even in all the three worlds,
 O One of Incomparable Being?

43

Therefore, bowing down,
 prostrating my body before you,
 I ask you, the worshipping Lord,
 to bestow your grace.
 As a father is to a son,
 as a friend to a friend,
 As a dearly loved one
 to a dearly beloved—
 be pleased to show your
 loving kindness, O Divinity.

44

Having seen what never
 has been seen before,
 I am exceedingly pleased,
 Yet my mind is distressed
 and filled with fear.
 O Divinity, allow me to see
 that very [intimate] form.
 Bestow upon me your grace,
 O Lord of Divinities,
 dwelling place of the universe.

45

Adorned by the diadem,
 bearing the club,
 with disc held in hand,
 I desire to see you
 just as before.
 In that very form
 having four arms,
 Please become manifest,
 O Thousand-Armed One,
 O Universal Form!

46

The Beloved Lord said:
 Bestowing my grace
 upon you, O Arjuna,
 This supreme form
 has been manifested
 from the yoga of my Self.
 Consisting of splendor,
 it is all-pervasive,
 unending, and original—
 [This form] which has
 not been seen before
 by anyone other than you.

47

Not by the Vedas,
 sacrifice, or study,
 nor by giving [in charity],
 Nor even by rites,
 nor by severe austerities
 Am I able to be seen
 in such a form,
 within the world of humans,
 By anyone other than you,
 O Hero of the Kurus.

48

Do not fear
 and do not be confused,
 Having seen such
 a frightful awesome form
 as this one of mine.
 As one whose fear
 has been dispelled,
 with mind appeased,
 Once again
 you may behold
 my very [intimate] form.⁷

49

Sanjaya said:

Thus having spoken
 this to Arjuna,
 Vāsudeva revealed his
 own form as before.
 And he calmed that
 frightened one,
 Assuming once again
 the gentle appearance
 of the exalted Self.

50

Arjuna said:

Seeing this gentle
 humanlike form
 of yours, O Janārdana,
 I am now fulfilled,
 with thought restored
 to a normal state.⁸

51

⁷ Frightful, awesome: Translates *ghora*, which has both negative and positive senses. I have attempted to include both in this compound phrase.

⁸ Janārdana: Name for Krishna meaning "one who excites humans."

The Beloved Lord said:

Very rarely seen
is this form of mine
that you have seen.
Even the divinities
are always desiring
a vision of this form.

52

Not by study of the Vedas,
nor by austerity,
nor by giving,
nor by sacrifice
Am I able to be seen
in such a form
as you have seen me.

53

Only by the offering of
one's love to none other,
O Arjuna, am I able,
in such a form,
To be known and
to be truly seen,
and to be attained,
O Fighter of the Enemy.

54

Acting for me
in one's actions,
being devoted to me,
offering love to me,
having no attachments,

Free from enmity
toward all beings—
this is the one
who comes to me,
O Son of Pāndu.

The Way of Love

Arjuna said:

Those who are thus
 constantly absorbed in yoga,
 who fully worship you by
 offering their love,
And also those who [worship]
 the imperishable unmanifest—
 which of these is the greatest
 among those who know yoga?

I

The Beloved Lord said:

Directing the mind to me,
 those who are always
 absorbed in yoga
 worship me.
Endowed with the highest faith,
 they are considered by me
 to be the most
 absorbed in yoga.

2

But those who worship
 the imperishable,
 the uncontainable,
 the unmanifest;
The all-pervading,
 the inconceivable,
 the unchanging,
 the immovable,
 and the constant;

3

Having fully controlled
 the aggregate of the senses,
 having the same discernment
 in all instances—

They also attain me,
 delighting in
 the welfare of all beings.

4

Difficulty is greater
 for those whose thought
 is attached
 to the unmanifest.

Certainly, the goal of
 reaching the unmanifest
 is very hard to attain
 by the embodied.

5

However, for those who,
 having fully renounced
 all actions in me,
 are devoted to me

Through this yoga
 and by no other means;
 who, meditating on me,
 offer worship;

6

For them, I soon
 become the one who
 completely lifts them up
 from the ocean
 of the cycle of death,

○ Pārtha,
 for their thought
 has been drawn
 to enter into me.

7

Place your mind on me alone;
let your discernment
enter into me.

You shall dwell
only in me
from now forevermore—
of this there is no doubt.

8

Moreover, if you are
unable to fully absorb
your thought in me
with steadiness,
Then, with the practice of yoga
seek to attain me,
O Conqueror of Wealth.

9

If you also are incapable
of practicing this,
become wholly devoted
to me in action;
For even by
enacting such
actions for my sake,
you shall attain perfection.

10

If even this you
are unable to enact,
then, relying on me
through yoga,
With the relinquishment
of the fruits of all action—
act with restraint,
in possession of the self.

11

For knowledge is better
 than practice;
 meditation
 is preferred
 over knowledge;
 From meditation comes
 the relinquishment
 of the fruits of action;
 from relinquishment
 comes peace, immediately.

12

One who has no disdain
 for any being,
 who is amicable
 as well as compassionate;
 Who is without
 the sense of 'mine',
 without the notion
 of 'I am acting';
 who is the same in
 suffering and happiness,
 who is patient;

13

The yogi who is
 always fully satisfied,
 whose self is controlled,
 being of firm resolve;
 Whose mind and discernment
 are focused on me,
 whose love is offered to me—
 that one is dearly loved by me.

14

One before whom the world
is not disturbed,
and who is not disturbed
by the world;

Who is freed from elation,
impatience, fear,
and anxiety—
that one also
is dearly loved by me.

15

One who is impartial, pure,
capable, detached,
free from anxiety;
Who has completely
relinquished all undertakings—
that one, who offers love to me,
is dearly loved by me.

16

One who neither
relishes nor loathes,
who neither
laments nor desires,
Relinquishing the pleasant
and the unpleasant—
that one, who is filled
with offerings of love,
is dearly loved by me.

17

The same toward both
enemy and friend,
honor and dishonor;
The same in cold and heat,
happiness and suffering;
freed from attachment;

18

One for whom blame
and praise are equal,
who is disciplined in speech,
satisfied with whatever
comes of its own accord;
Who is without
[attachment to] home,
who is of steady mind,
replete with offerings of love—
such a person is dearly loved by me.

19

Indeed, this is the immortal
essence of dharma,
which has been declared;
those who participate in
this worship fully,
Who have faith,
who are devoted to me,
who have offered their love—
they are most dearly loved by me.

20

Primordial Nature and the Person

Arjuna said:

Primordial nature
and also the person,
the field as well as
the knower of the field,
Knowledge and
the object of knowledge—
I desire to learn about these,
O Keshava.¹

The Beloved Lord said:

This body,
O Son of Kuntī,
is considered "the field."
One who realizes this—
such a one they call
"a knower of the field,"
those who are realized in that.

I

¹ This verse is often not included in editions of the BG. When it is presented, it typically appears unnumbered.

Primordial nature: translates *prakṛti*.

The person: Translates *puruṣa*. It is often translated simply as "spirit" and understood as the antonym of the term *prakṛti*, often taken simply as "matter." However, in the BG, the word *puruṣa* is more fully translated as "person," denoting the "self," an individual spiritual being, a particular center of consciousness. Like the word "self," it can incorpo-

rate the sense of the embodied condition of a "person" in this world, or it can refer to the "person" liberated from this world, situated in the highest realm (BG 15.16). The BG also presents the "Person," the divinity personally present in all beings, or "the ultimate Person," the supreme divinity of Krishna, also referred to as "the everpresent supreme Lord" (*avyaya īśvara*) (BG 15.17).

The field: translates *kṣetra*.

The knower of the field: translates *kṣetra-jñā*.

Understand me also to be
 the knower of the field
 in all fields, O Bhārata.
 Knowledge of both the field
 and the knower of the field—
 this is deemed by me to be knowledge. 2

This field—what it is
 and what its nature is,
 what its transformations are
 and from where they [originate];
 And who one [the knower] is
 and what one's powers are—
 hear briefly about these from me. 3

It has been sung
 in numerous ways by seers,
 in various types of
 sacred hymns,
 And indeed,
 in the aphoristic phrases
 concerning Brahman,
 which are full of reasoning
 and firm resolve.² 4

The gross elements,
 the notion of 'I am acting',
 the faculty of discernment,
 and also the unmanifest;
 The senses,
 which are ten and one,
 and the five regions
 of the senses; 5

² Various types of sacred hymns: Refers to the Vedas.

The aphoristic phrases concerning Brahman: Translates *brahma-sūtra*, also

the name of a famous philosophical text (the Vedānta Sūtra) that presents a vision of the essential philosophy of the Upanishads.

Desire, aversion,
 happiness, suffering,
 the aggregate whole,
 thought, and constancy—
 This is described in brief
 as the field, along with
 its transformations.

6

Absence of pride,
 absence of deceit,
 nonviolence,
 patience, honesty;
 Service to the guru,
 purity, stability,
 control of the self;

7

Dispassion for the objects
 of the senses, and also,
 absence of the notion
 of 'I am acting';
 Foreseeing the perils
 of birth, death,
 old age, disease,
 and suffering;

8

Absence of attachment
 and excessive affection
 for children, spouse,
 home, and so on;
 Also, constant
 same-mindedness in
 desirable and undesirable
 circumstances;³

9

3 Children: Translates *pūtra*, literally "a son," taken here as children in general.

Spouse: Translates *dāra*, literally "a wife."

And absorbed in me
 with no yoga other than
 the unwavering
 offering of love;
 Dwelling in
 a secluded place,
 having disregard
 for crowds of people; 10

Continuity in knowledge of
 the 'principle of self',
 with a vision of the object
 of that knowledge
 of the truth—
 This is declared
 to be knowledge;
 the absence of knowledge
 is whatever is contrary to this.⁴ 11

I shall describe
 what is to be known,
 knowing which one
 attains immortality:
 The beginningless
 supreme Brahman
 is said to be neither
 existent nor nonexistent. 12

⁴ Truth: Translates *tattva*, which can also mean "reality."

Having hands and feet everywhere,
with eyes, heads, and faces
everywhere,

Hearing everywhere in the world,
surrounding everything,
it remains constant.

13

Having the appearance
of the 'qualities' of
all the senses,
though devoid
of all the senses;

Unattached yet
supporting everything;
free of the 'qualities'
though the experiencer
of the 'qualities';

14

Outside and inside of beings,
not moving
and yet moving,

Due to its subtle nature
it is unknowable—
it is both far away and near.

15

And among beings it is
undivided, though
remaining as if divided.

It is to be known
as the sustainer of beings,
and as the one who absorbs them
and sends them forth into being.

16

Also, of luminaries,
it is said to be
the luminary
beyond darkness.

It is knowledge,
what is to be known,
and the purpose of knowledge—
it is seated in the heart of everyone.

17

Thus the field,
as well as knowledge
and the object of knowledge,
have been briefly described.

One whose love
is offered to me,
who realizes this knowledge,
comes forth to my state of being.

18

Primordial nature
and indeed the person—
know for certain that both
are without beginning,
And know that the 'qualities'
and also their transformations
become manifest
from primordial nature.

19

In that which involves
 the object of action,
 the means of action,
 and the cause of action,
 primordial nature
 is said to be the cause.

[Whereas] the person,
 while experiencing the states
 of happiness and suffering,
 is said to be the cause.

20

For the person situated
 in primordial nature
 experiences the 'qualities'
 born of that primordial nature.

Attachment
 to the 'qualities'
 is the cause of one's birth
 into pure and impure wombs.

21

The observer and consenter,
 the supporter,
 the beloved recipient,
 the exalted supreme Lord,

Or even the "supreme Self"
 is declared to be
 the highest Person
 in this body.

22

Whoever thus knows the Person
 and primordial nature,
 along with the 'qualities'—

That one, though existing
 in any condition whatsoever,
 does not take birth again.

23

By means of meditation,
some perceive the Self
within the self, by the self;
Others, by the yoga of Sāṅkhya,
and even others,
by the yoga of action. 24

Still others,
having no knowledge,
thus only hearing
from others, offer worship.
And indeed they also
cross beyond death,
devoted to what
they have heard. 25

As for any being,
stationary or moving,
it takes birth
Due to the union of the field
with the knower of the field,
O Best of the Bharatas. 26

Situated as the same in
all beings is the highest
supreme Lord,
Who is not perishing
when they are perishing—
one who sees this,
that one [truly] sees. 27

Indeed, seeing the same
 supreme Lord fully
 established everywhere,
 One does not harm
 the self by the self—
 from there one reaches
 the highest goal. 28

By primordial nature alone,
 actions are being
 completely enacted.
 One who sees this,
 and thus sees that the self
 is not the creator of action—
 that one [truly] sees. 29

When one perceives
 the various states of being
 as abiding in one place,
 And from that alone
 their emanation,
 then one fully
 attains Brahman. 30

Due to having no beginning,
 free from the effect
 of the 'qualities',
 that everpresent supreme Self,
 Though situated in the body,
 O Son of Kuntī,
 does not act—
 nor is it tainted [by action]. 31

Just as all-pervasive space
is not tainted
due to its subtle nature,
Similarly, the Self
abiding in every body
is not tainted. 32

As the sun alone
illuminates
this entire world,
So the one who
resides in the field
illuminates
the entire field, O Bhārata. 33

Thus the difference
between the field
and the knower of the field,
[seen] with the eye of knowledge,
And the release of beings
from primordial nature—
those who know of these,
it is they who attain the Supreme. 34

The Qualities of Nature

The Beloved Lord said:

I shall describe further
 the best of knowledge,
 the ultimate knowledge,
 Knowing which, all seers
 have gone from here
 to the highest perfection.

1

Taking refuge in this knowledge,
 having come to a state
 of likeness with me,
 Even during creation
 they do not take birth—
 nor do they tremble
 during cosmic absorption.

2

The great Brahman
 is my womb;
 in this I place
 the [cosmic] embryo.
 The coming forth
 of all beings becomes
 manifest from that,
 O Bhārata.

3

In all wombs, O Son of Kuntī,
 for whatever forms
 come into being—
 For them, the great Brahman
 is the [cosmic] womb;
 I am the father
 who gives forth the seed.

4

"*Sattva*, *rajas*, and *tamas*,"
 the 'qualities' arising
 from primordial nature,
 O Mighty-Armed,
 bind the everpresent
 embodied to the body.

5

Among these, *sattva*,
 due to its untainted nature,
 is illuminating,
 free from contamination.
 It binds one by
 attachment to happiness,
 also by attachment
 to knowledge,
 O Blameless One.

6

Know that *rajas*
 is of the nature of
 passion, arising from
 thirst and attachment.
 It tightly binds
 one who is embodied,
 O Son of Kuntī,
 by attachment to action.

7

Moreover, know
 that *tamas* is born of
 the absence of knowledge,
 bewildering all
 who are embodied;
 With negligence,
 lethargy, and sleep,
 it binds tightly,
 O Bhārata.

8

Sattva causes attachment
 to happiness
 and *rajas* to action,
 O Bhārata.
 Obscuring knowledge,
 however, *tamas*
 causes attachment
 even to negligence.¹

9

Dominating *rajas* and *tamas*,
sattva becomes
 prominent,
 O Bhārata;
 Likewise *rajas*,
 with *sattva* and *tamas*;
 and also *tamas*,
 with *sattva* and *rajas*.

10

¹ Negligence: Translates *pramāda*, also meaning "madness" or "intoxication."

When in all
the gates of this body,
illumination gives rise
To knowledge,
then it should be
understood that, indeed,
“*sattva* is dominant.” 11

Greed, exertion,
the undertaking of actions,
disquietude, and desire—
These are produced
when *rajas* is dominant,
O Best of the Bharatas. 12

The absence of light,
also inactivity, negligence,
and even bewilderment—
These are produced
when *tamas* is dominant,
O Son of Kuru. 13

Now when, under
the dominance of *sattva*,
the embodied goes
to cosmic absorption,
Then one attains
the pure worlds
of those who
know the highest. 14

Having gone forth
 to cosmic absorption
 in the state of *rajas*,
 one is born among
 those attached to action.

Likewise, being absorbed
 into the cosmos while
 in the state of *tamas*,
 one is born into the wombs
 of bewildered persons.

15

Of action that is
 virtuous when enacted,
 they say the fruit is untainted,
 having the nature of *sattva*.

The fruit of *rajas*,
 however, is suffering;
 the absence of knowledge
 is the fruit of *tamas*.

16

From *sattva*,
 knowledge is born,
 and indeed from *rajas*, greed.

Negligence and bewilderment
 arise from *tamas*, as well as
 the absence of knowledge.

17

Those established in *sattva*
 progress upward;
 those attached to *rajas*
 remain in the middle;

Those established
 in the lowest state
 progress downward—
 those attached to *tamas*.

18

When the observer [self]
perceives no agent of action
other than the 'qualities',
And knows what is
higher than the 'qualities'—
that one attains my state of being. 19

Transcending these
three 'qualities'
emerging from the body,
the embodied one,
Freed from birth,
death, old age,
and suffering,
attains immortality. 20

Arjuna said:

By what characteristics
does one become identified
upon transcending these
three 'qualities',
O Majestic One?
What is one's conduct,
and how does one
transcend these
three 'qualities'? 21

The Beloved Lord said:

Both illumination
and activity, and
even bewilderment,
O Son of Pāndu—

One neither despises
these states when they occur
nor desires them when
they cease to occur.²

22

One who is seated
as if seated apart;
who is not disturbed
by the 'qualities',

Thinking only
that "the 'qualities'
[of nature] are at work";
who remains fixed,
who is not shaken;

23

For whom suffering and
happiness are the same,
being in one's natural state;
for whom a lump of earth,
a stone, and gold are the same;

For whom the dearly loved
and the unloved are equal;
who is grave, equal in blame
and praise of one's self;

24

2 Illumination: Translates *prakāśam*, describing *sattva*.

Activity: Translates *pravṛttim*, describing *rajas*.

Bewilderment: Translates *moham*, describing *tamas*.

Who is equal in both
honor and dishonor,
equal to friendly
and rival factions,
Completely relinquishing
all undertakings—
that one is said
to have transcended
the 'qualities'. 25

And one who, unfailingly,
with the yoga of
offering love,
serves me—
That one, transcending
these 'qualities',
prepares oneself for
being united with Brahman. 26

Truly, of Brahman,
I am the foundation—
and of the immortal
that is everpresent,
Also, of dharma
that is everlasting,
and of happiness
that is extraordinary. 27

The Ultimate Person

The Beloved Lord said:

With its roots upward
and its branches downward,
they speak of the everlasting
Ashwattha tree,

Whose leaves
are the Vedic hymns—
one who knows this
is a knower of the Vedas.¹

I

Extending downward and upward,
its branches are nourished
By the 'qualities' [of nature],
with its fresh shoots
as the objects of the senses.
Also stretched downward
are its roots,
Promoting action
in the world of humans.

2

¹ Ashwattha tree: Understood as a kind of fig tree, first mentioned in BG 10.26.

Some commentators understand this name to refer to the banyan tree.

The form of this [tree]
here in the world
cannot be perceived—
Not its end
nor beginning
nor foundation.
Cutting this Ashwattha tree,
whose roots
are fully grown,
With the strong
ax of detachment;

3

Then that place
is to be sought
To which having gone
such persons
never again return,
[Declaring]: And to that,
indeed I offer myself,
to that original Person
From whom cycles
of cosmic activity have
issued forth in former ages.

4

Without pride or bewilderment,
 having conquered
 the faults of attachment;
Constantly situated
 in the 'principle of self'
 with desires turned away;
Liberated from
 the dualities known
 as happiness and suffering—
Those who
 are not bewildered
 attain that everlasting place.

5

Neither the sun,
 nor the moon,
 nor fire illuminates
 that realm
To which having gone
 they do not return—
 that is my supreme dwelling.

6

A part of me alone
 in the world of the living
 is the living being,
 which is eternal.
It draws to itself the senses,
 the mind being the sixth,
 all of which are situated
 in primordial nature.

7

When one acquires a body
and also,
when one departs from it,
its master [the self],
Carrying these [senses],
moves on,
as the wind carries
scents from their source.

8

The senses of hearing,
sight, and touch,
as well as taste
and smell—
Presiding over these
and the mind,
one pursues the objects
of the senses.

9

Whether departing from
or remaining in [the body],
or experiencing [sense objects],
affected by the 'qualities',
Those who are very bewildered
do not perceive this [self]—
those with the eye
of knowledge see this.

10

And upon striving,
yogis see that [Self]
which exists
within the self.

But those who are
not self-actualized,
even though striving,
cannot see this,
being unthoughtful.

II

The splendor that comes
forth from the sun,
which illuminates
the entire universe;

That which
is in the moon
and in fire—
know this splendor
as belonging to me.

12

And entering the earth,
I sustain beings
by my potency.

And I nourish all vegetation
by becoming the moon,
which contains
the essence of taste.²

13

² Taste: Translates *rasa*, which also means "juice" or "flavor."

I, becoming the digestive fire
dwelling in the bodies
of breathing beings,

In conjunction

with the incoming
and outgoing breaths,
digest the four types
of foodstuffs.³

14

And I have fully entered
into the hearts of all;
From me come remembrance,
knowledge, and forgetfulness.

And by all the Vedas
only I am to be known;

I am the author of Vedānta
and truly the knower of the Vedas.⁴

15

The two types of persons
in the world are these:
the perishable and
also, the imperishable.

The perishable
consists of all beings;
the imperishable is described
as those who are situated
in the highest [state].⁵

16

³ Four types of foodstuffs: The four ways in which foods are eaten: licked, chewed, sucked, and swallowed.

⁴ Forgetfulness: Translates *apobanam*, which can also mean "the removal [of remembrance and knowledge]." For commentators, forgetfulness can be seen as both positive and negative.

Vedānta: Meaning "the end of the Vedas," referring to the Upanishads or to

the Vedānta Sūtra, a work composed of a comprehensive interpretation and synthesis of Upanishadic philosophy.

⁵ The perishable: Translates *kṣara*, which can mean "destructible" or "alterable," referring to the bodies of all beings in this world.

The imperishable: Translates *akṣara*, referring to persons who are not bound to this world, liberated even while in it.

Yet there is another—
 an ultimate person
 called "the supreme Self,"
 Who, entering into
 the three worlds,
 maintains them
 as the everpresent
 supreme Lord.⁶

17

Because I am beyond
 the perishable
 and am even higher
 than the imperishable,
 Therefore, I am celebrated
 in the oldest texts
 and in the Vedas
 as the Ultimate Person.

18

One who,
 unbewildered,
 thus knows me
 as the Ultimate Person—
 That one, who is
 a knower of all,
 offers love to me with
 all of one's being, O Bhārata.

19

6 The three worlds: Refers to the upper, lower, and middle worlds of this universe.

Everpresent supreme Lord: Translates *avyaya īśvaraḥ*, presented in the third person. The supreme Lord who enters the worlds and the living beings is a third

type of *puruṣa*, or "person," indeed the "ultimate person," a distinctive manifestation of Krishna's supreme divinity. This manifestation is identical with what is described in the following verse, spoken of in the first person, which is Krishna himself as he stands before Arjuna.

Thus the greatest secret
of the revealed scriptures—
this has been disclosed by me,
O Faultless One.

Having discerned this,
one would possess
discernment,
and would have enacted
all that is required
to be enacted, O Bhārata.

The Divine and Ungodly Natures

The Beloved Lord said:

Fearlessness, complete
 purity of existence,
 steadfastness in
 the yoga of knowledge;
 Acts of giving and restraint,
 sacrifice, study of scripture,
 austerity, and sincerity;

I

Nonviolence, truthfulness,
 freedom from anger,
 relinquishment, peacefulness,
 absence of slander;
 Compassion for all beings,
 freedom from longing,
 gentleness, humility,
 absence of agitation;

2

Vitality, patience, tenacity,
 purity, freedom from envy,
 absence of excessive pride—
 These become the attributes
 for those of divine birth,
 O Bhārata.

3

Deceitfulness, arrogance,
 and excessive pride;
 wrath, and indeed harshness,
 Also absence of knowledge—
 these are the attributes,
 O Pārtha, for those
 of ungodly birth. 4

The divine attributes move one
 toward complete freedom;
 the ungodly attributes,
 it is thought, toward bondage.
 Do not worry—
 you are wellborn
 with divine attributes,
 O Son of Pāndu. 5

The creation of beings
 in this world is only
 of two types: the divine
 and the ungodly.
 The divine has been
 described in detail,
 O Pārtha;
 now here from me
 about the ungodly. 6

Both activity and inactivity
 ungodly persons
 do not understand.
 Neither purity
 nor good behavior
 nor truth is found in them. 7

Without reality,
without foundation,
the world, they say,
is without the supreme Lord,
That the one is not brought
into being by the other—
then by what?
It is caused by selfish desire. 8

Supporting this view,
persons whose self is lost,
having little discernment,
Whose actions are cruel—
they come forth into being
as enemies of the world
for its destruction. 9

Resorting to insatiable desire,
filled with deceitfulness,
pride, and arrogance;
Due to bewilderment,
holding onto notions
that are held as untrue—
they proceed with impure resolve. 10

And subjected to
immeasurable anxiety,
which continues until
one's final death;
Having gratification
of selfish desires as
one's highest aim,
convinced that
"this is all there is"—

11

Bound by a hundred
chains of hope,
devoted to desire
and wrath,
With the aim of
indulging in desires—
those persons seek
the accumulation of wealth
by unjust means.

12

"Today this has been
acquired by me;
this desire I shall fulfill.
This belongs to me—
even more wealth
shall become mine."

13

"That enemy
has been slain by me,
and I shall also slay others.

I am the supreme lord,
I am the enjoyer;
I am perfect, powerful,
and happy."

14

"I am wealthy,
of high birth;
who else is there
like me?

I shall sacrifice,
I shall offer gifts,
I shall rejoice,"
say those bewildered
by a lack of knowledge.

15

Carried away by many thoughts,
enveloped in a snare
of bewilderment,

Very attached to the enjoyment
of selfish desires—
they fall into an unclean
place of torment.

16

Self-centered, stubborn,
 full of pride and conceit
 coming from wealth,
 They perform sacrifices
 in name only, with deceit—
 not according to what
 previously has been enjoined.¹ 17

The notion of 'I am acting',
 also power, arrogance,
 selfish desire, wrath—
 completely attached to these,
 Such envious persons
 loathe me
 in their own bodies
 and in the bodies of others. 18

Those who hate,
 who are cruel,
 low persons caught in
 the cycle [of birth and death]—
 I repeatedly hurl
 such impure persons
 only into the wombs
 of the ungodly. 19

¹ What previously has been enjoined:
 Refers to what was stated in the Vedas.

Having come
into an ungodly womb,
those who are bewildered
birth after birth,
Not ever attaining me,
O Son of Kuntī—
they then go
to the lowest place. 20

This is the threefold passage
of a tormented existence,
which destroys the self:
Desire, anger, also greed—
therefore, it is these three
that one should relinquish. 21

Completely freed
from these three
passages of darkness,
O Son of Kuntī,
A human being does
what is best for the self,
then goes to the highest place. 22

One who, abandoning
scriptural injunction,
acts according to one's
own selfish desires—
That person does not
attain perfection,
nor happiness,
nor the highest place. 23

Therefore, let scripture
be your authority
for understanding what
action should be performed
and what action should
not be performed.

Knowing the prescribed
scriptural injunctions,
you are obliged to enact
such action in this world.

The Three Types of Faith

Arjuna said:

Those who,
 having abandoned
 scriptural injunctions,
 engage in sacrifice,
 endowed with faith—

What indeed is
 their condition,
 O Krishna:
 is it *sattva*, *rajas*, or *tamas*?

I

The Beloved Lord said:

The faith of the embodied
 is of three types,
 arising from one's
 particular state of being:
 "That of the nature of *sattva*,
 or of the nature of *rajas*,
 or even of the nature of *tamas*"—
 now hear about this.

2

According to the degree of *sattva*,
 the faith of everyone
 becomes manifest,
 O Bhārata.

A person is made of this faith—
 whatever the faith,
 that is indeed
 what one is.¹

3

Those of the nature of *sattva*
 offer sacrifice to divinities;
 those of the nature of *rajas*
 offer sacrifice to spirits
 and demonic beings.

To ghosts and multitudes
 of departed beings,
 the others, those humans
 of the nature of *tamas*,
 offer sacrifice.

4

Those persons
 who perform terrible
 austerities not enjoined
 in the scriptures,
 Who are fully united
 with deceit and the notion
 of 'I am acting',
 who are full of selfish
 desire, passion, and power;

5

¹ According to the degree of *sattva*:
 Translates the phrase, *sattvānurūpāḥ*,
 meaning the greater the degree of *sattva*,
 the more pure the faith. Every combina-
 tion of the essential qualities contains
 some degree of *sattva*.

Faith: Translates *śraddhā*, which means
 literally, "where one places one's heart."

A person: Refers to the embodied soul
 as it is influenced by the essential quali-
 ties of nature, and not the soul proper.

Mindless ones,
 causing torment
 to the aggregate of elements
 existing within the body,
 And thus to me,
 who am also existing
 within the body—
 know them to be
 of ungodly resolve.

6

Indeed, the food
 that becomes dear
 to each person
 is even of three types,
 As well as one's sacrifice,
 austerity, and also
 one's acts of giving—
 hear of their differences.

7

Promoting life, energy,
 strength, good health,
 happiness, and satisfaction;
 Flavorful, appealing,
 substantial, and hearty—
 such foods are dear to those
 of the nature of *sattva*.

8

Bitter, sour, salty,
 very hot and acidic,
 astringent and burning,
 Causing misery,
 sorrow, and disease—
 such foods are desired
 by those of the nature of *rajas*.

9

Food that is no longer fresh,
 that is tasteless, putrid,
 and stale,
 That has been rejected
 and is also impure—
 eating such foods is dear
 to those of the nature of *tamas*.

10

Sacrifice offered as observed
 in scriptural injunctions
 by one who does
 not desire its fruits,
 Whose mind is completely
 absorbed in the thought that,
 "only sacrifice is to be made"—
 this is of the nature of *sattva*.

11

But that which is offered
 with a motive for the fruit,
 and indeed, even with
 a deceitful purpose,
 O Best of the Bharatas—
 know that this sacrifice
 is of the nature of *rajas*.

12

Sacrifice that is lacking
 in scriptural foundation,
 with no offering of grains,
 with no recitation of mantras,
 without monetary donations,
 Completely devoid of faith—
 this they regard as having
 the nature of *tamas*.

13

Respect for the divinities,
 the twice-born, the gurus,
 and for those who possess
 profound knowledge;
 purity, sincerity,
 Chastity, and
 nonviolence—
 this is called
 austerity of the body.²

14

² Twice-born: Translates *dvija*, referring to a Brahmin, a member of the priestly and educated class. The Brahmin is born

twice, first through a physical birth, and then through the initiatory rite-of-passage.

Words that do not cause distress,
 that are truthful,
 endearing, and beneficial;
 And further, the practice
 of reciting sacred texts—
 this is called
 austerity of speech.

15

Calmness of mind,
 gentleness, silence,
 control of the self,
 "Complete purity of being"—
 this is called austerity
 in relation to the mind.

16

That threefold austerity
 practiced by humans
 who possess the highest faith,
 Who do not desire its fruits,
 who are absorbed in yoga—
 they regard that as having
 the nature of *sattva*.

17

That austerity which is enacted
 with pretense, and indeed
 with the aim of receiving
 kind treatment, respect,
 and honor—

That is declared
 in this world to be
 of the nature of *rajas*,
 vacillating and unstable.

18

That which is enacted
 with bewildered notions,
 with self-inflicted pain,
 Or with the aim of
 destroying another—
 that austerity is said to be
 of the nature of *tamas*.

19

That gift which is given
 with the thought that,
 "this should be given,"
 to one who may not
 act reciprocally,
 At an appropriate
 time and place,
 and to a worthy person—
 that gift is to be
 remembered as having
 the nature of *sattva*.

20

But that gift which is given
 with the aim of gaining
 a returned favor, or
 further, aspiring
 for the fruit,
 Or which is given
 reluctantly—
 that gift is to be
 remembered as having
 the nature of *rajas*.

21

That gift which is given
 at an inappropriate
 time and place,
 to unworthy persons,
 Without acting respectfully
 or with contempt—
 that is declared to be
 of the nature of *tamas*.

22

“OM TAT SAT”—
 these are the designations
 of Brahman, which are
 remembered as threefold.
 By this, the Brahmins
 and the Vedas
 and sacrifices were
 ordained in ancient times.

23

Therefore, with the sounding
 of [the syllable] “OM”—
 acts of sacrifice, giving,
 and austerity,
 Which are prescribed
 by scriptural injunction,
 are always set into motion
 by those who profess Brahman.

24

Uttering "TAT" without
the aim of the fruit—
acts of sacrifice and austerity,
And various acts of giving
are enacted by those
who desire liberation.

25

In the meaning
of 'eternal truth'
and in the meaning
of 'truth-seeking sage'
this word "SAT"
is properly engaged.

When action
is praiseworthy,
O Pārtha,
the word "SAT"
is also engaged.

26

Steadfastness in sacrifice,
in austerity, and in giving
is also called "SAT,"

And any action for
the sake of such purposes
is likewise explained as "SAT."

27

Without faith,
 that which is sacrificed,
 given, performed as
 intense austerity,
 or enacted
 Is called "*asat*" [not SAT],
 O Pārtha, and is not
 truly that [as it seems]—
 for those having passed on,
 or for us remaining here
 in this world.³

28

3 "*Asat*" [not SAT]: Meaning literally, "not true" or "what is not the supreme truth."

Not truly that: Translates *tat*, the correlative pronoun of *yat* ("which") found

in the first half of the verse; "that" refers to that which is "sacrificed, given, etc.," echoing the efficacious TAT presented in BG 17.25.

The Supreme Secret of Yoga

Arjuna said:

About renunciation,
 O Mighty-Armed,
 I desire to know the truth,
 And about relinquishment,
 O Hrishikesha;
 also the distinctions
 between them,
 O Slayer of Keshi.

I

The Beloved Lord said:

The renouncing of acts
 arising from selfish desire
 wise ones understand
 to be renunciation.

The relinquishing of
 the fruits of all action
 seers declare
 as relinquishment.

2

"It is to be relinquished
 for it is full of fault,"
 certain thoughtful persons
 declare of action.

"Actions of sacrifice,
 giving, and austerity
 are not to be relinquished,"
 yet others declare.

3

Hear my conclusion
 on this subject
 of relinquishment,
 O Best of the Bharatas.

For relinquishment,
 O Tiger Among Men,
 is widely proclaimed
 to be of three types.

4

Actions of sacrifice,
 giving, and austerity
 are not to be relinquished;
 rather, they are to be enacted.

Sacrifice, giving, and austerity
 are certainly sources
 of purification for
 thoughtful persons.

5

"These actions, however,
 only after relinquishing
 attachment to them
 and their fruits,
 Should be enacted,"

O Pārtha—
 this, without doubt,
 is my highest opinion.

6

So renunciation
 of prescribed action
 is not appropriate.
 Complete relinquishment
 of such due to bewilderment
 is proclaimed to be
 of the nature of *tamas*.

7

Who deems action as "difficult,"
 only due to fear
 of bodily suffering—
 one who should
 relinquish in this way,
 Enacting relinquishment
 of the nature of *rajas*,
 certainly would not obtain
 the fruits of such relinquishment.

8

"It should be enacted,"
 indeed, that action
 which is enacted
 because it is prescribed,
 O Arjuna.

Relinquishing attachment
 and certainly the fruit,
 such relinquishment
 is thought to be
 of the nature of *sattva*.

9

One who is not adverse
 to disagreeable action
 nor attached to that
 which is agreeable—
 Such a relinquisher
 is fully absorbed in *sattva*;
 the doubts of that
 learned person are severed.

10

For one who bears a body
 is not able to relinquish
 actions entirely;
 Yet one who relinquishes
 the fruits of action—
 that one is said to be
 “one who relinquishes.”

11

Undesirable,
 desirable, and mixed
 are the threefold
 fruits of action,
 Which continue
 to come into being
 for those who
 do not relinquish,
 even after passing on,
 but never for those
 who are renouncers.

12

The five causes of action,
 O Mighty-Armed—
 learn from me about these,
 Which have been declared
 in the enacted conclusions
 by the followers of Sāṅkhya
 for success in all actions:

13

[They are] the physical basis,
 also the agent of action,
 and the various
 means of action,
 And the different types
 of various movements,
 and even the divine forces,
 the fifth of these.

14

With one's body,
speech, or mind,
whatever action
a human undertakes,
Whether it be normal,
or contrary to the norm—
these are its five causes.

15

This being so,
one who perceives
the self alone as
the agent of action,
Due to one's
inner discernment
not being active—
that one does not
truly perceive things,
being weak-minded.

16

One whose state of being
is free from the notion
of 'I have acted',
whose discernment
is not contaminated—

That one,
even though having
slain these people,
does not slay;
nor is that one bound.

17

Knowledge,
 the object of knowledge,
 and the knower
 are the three factors
 that compel one to act.

The means of action,
 action itself, and
 the agent of action
 are the three factors
 that constitute action.

18

Knowledge and action
 and the agent of action
 are [all] of three types,
 determined by the divisions
 of the 'qualities'.

This is declared
 in the Sāṅkhya theory
 of the 'qualities'—
 hear also about these,
 as they are.

19

That by which one
 perceives in all beings
 one everpresent being,
 Who is undivided
 among divided beings—
 understand that knowledge
 to be of the nature of *sattva*.

20

But with a view of separateness,
 that knowledge
 which understands
 various states of being
 As having been separately
 formed in all beings—
 understand that knowledge
 to be of the nature of *rajas*.

21

However, that [knowledge]
 wherein one thing
 is taken to be the whole—
 being attached, without reason,
 to the performance of
 [a single] activity
 Having no true value
 or significance—
 that is said to be
 of the nature of *tamas*.

22

Disciplined,
 free from attachment,
 acting without
 passion or repulsion,
 Without desiring to obtain
 the fruit of action—
 that is said to be
 of the nature of *sattva*.

23

But that action which,
 with the hope of
 fulfilling selfish desires,
 or further, with the notion
 of 'I am acting',

Is enacted
 with great effort—
 that is declared to be
 of the nature of *rajas*.

24

Disregarding consequences,
 loss, harm, and also
 personal capacity—
 Such action, undertaken
 due to bewilderment,
 is said to be of
 the nature of *tamas*.

25

Freed from attachment,
 not speaking of oneself,
 fully endowed with
 energy and steadfastness,
 Unaffected by both success
 and lack of success—
 such an agent of action
 is said to be of
 the nature of *sattva*.

26

Passionate, desirous of
 gaining the fruits of action,
 having an aggressive nature,
 greedy, unclean,
 Filled with joy and sorrow—
 such an agent of action
 is proclaimed to be of
 the nature of *rajas*.

27

Not absorbed in yoga,
 vulgar, stubborn, deceitful,
 denouncing others, lethargic,
 Despondent, and procrastinating—
 such an agent of action is said
 to be of the nature of *tamas*. 28

The different types of discernment
 and also of determination,
 according to the 'qualities'
 are divided into three—
 now hear of these
 Expounded upon separately,
 with nothing left out,
 O Conqueror of Wealth. 29

Positive engagement
 and disengagement,
 what is to be enacted
 and not to be enacted,
 what is to be feared
 and not to be feared,
 Bondage and freedom—
 one who perceives these,
 that one's discernment
 is of the nature of *sattva*,
 O Pārtha. 30

Dharma and what
 opposes dharma,
 and what is to be enacted,
 and also, what is not
 to be enacted—

That discernment
 which incorrectly
 understands these
 is of the nature of *rajas*,
 O Pārtha.

31

“What opposes dharma
 is dharma”—
 that which thinks this
 is covered by *tamas*,
 And that which completely
 reverses all meaning;
 such discernment is of
 the nature of *tamas*, O Pārtha.

32

That determination by which
 one is able to hold steady
 the activities of the mind,
 the breath, and the senses
 Through the undisturbed
 practice of yoga—
 that determination, O Pārtha,
 is of the nature of *sattva*.

33

But that by which one
 holds steadily to dharma,
 desires, and wealth,
 with determination,
 O Arjuna,

With attachment,
 desirous of the fruits—
 that determination is
 of the nature of *rajas*,
 O Pārtha.

34

That by which an ignorant person
 does not let go of sleep, fear,
 lamentation, depression,
 and even madness—

That determination,
 O Pārtha, is of
 the nature of *tamas*.

35

But now hear from me
 about the three
 types of happiness,
 O Leader of the Bharatas,
 In which one experiences

[such happiness]
 through repetition,
 then finally comes
 to the end of suffering.

36

That which in the beginning
seems like poison
but in the end
resembles the immortal—

That is declared
to be happiness
of the nature of *sattva*,
born from the serenity
of the discerning self.

37

Due to the conjunction
of the senses with their objects,
that which in the beginning
resembles the immortal

But in the end
seems like poison—
that happiness is understood
to be of the nature of *rajas*.

38

Happiness which in the beginning
and consequently in the end
is bewildering for the self,

Which arises from sleep,
lethargy, and confusion—
that is declared to be
of the nature of *tamas*.

39

There is nothing
either on this earth
or in the divine realm,
even among the divinities,

With an existence
that is freed from
these three 'qualities'
born of primordial nature.

40

Among Brahmins,
rulers, tradespeople,
and skilled workers,
O Scorcher of the Enemy,
Actions are determined
by the coming forth into being
of their particular natures,
according to the 'qualities'.

41

Calmness, restraint,
austerity, purity, patience,
and also sincerity;
Knowledge, realized knowledge,
and strong faith in the divine
are the active traits of Brahmins,
born of their own nature.

42

Heroism, prowess,
steadfastness, skill, and
also, not fleeing in battle,
Generosity, and lordliness
are the active traits of rulers,
born of their own nature.

43

Cultivating the fields,
 protecting cows, and
 engaging in commerce
 are the actions
 of tradespeople,
 born of their own nature.
 Characterized by performing
 all kinds of service for others
 are the actions
 of skilled workers, also
 born of their own nature. 44

Being practiced in one's
 own specific activity,
 a person attains
 full perfection.
 How one who is practiced
 in such activity
 finds perfection—
 hear about this. 45

That one from whom the activity
 of beings comes forth,
 by whom this [universe]
 is pervaded—
 Worshipping that one
 by one's own action,
 a human being
 finds perfection. 46

Better is one's own dharma
 even if imperfect
 than another's dharma
 followed perfectly.
 Performing action
 determined by
 one's own nature,
 one does not incur fault. 47

Action born of one's nature,
 O Son of Kuntī,
 even if faulty,
 should not be relinquished.

For all undertakings
 are covered by faults,
 as fire is by smoke.

48

With one's discernment
 unattached in all circumstances,
 with the self conquered,
 longings having vanished,

One attains
 the supreme perfection
 of actionlessness
 through renunciation.¹

49

Once having attained perfection,
 how one also attains Brahman,
 learn from me through

Just a brief summary,
 O Son of Kuntī—
 this is the highest
 culmination of knowledge.²

50

1 Actionlessness: Translates *naiṣkarmya*, which means literally, "action without any binding consequences [for the one who acts]."

2 This verse begins Krishna's summary of the greater secret, which is a trans-

dent state of being that focuses upon Brahman and Purushottama. From the beginning of this chapter up to the present verse, Krishna's summary of his great secret is presented.

Absorbed in yoga
 with pure discernment
 and subduing the self
 with steadfastness;
 Relinquishing
 the objects of the senses,
 such as sound and so forth,
 casting away attraction and repulsion; 51

Dwelling apart from others,
 eating lightly,
 controlling one's speech,
 body, and mental activity;
 Constantly devoted
 to the yoga of meditation,
 taking full refuge
 in dispassion; 52

Being completely freed from
 the notion of 'I am acting',
 from aggressiveness, pride,
 selfish desire, anger,
 and possessiveness;
 Without a sense of
 'mine', peaceful—
 that one is prepared
 to be united with Brahman. 53

Being united with Brahman,
 one whose self is tranquil,
 who neither laments
 nor desires,
 Who is the same
 toward all beings—
 that one attains the highest,
 the offering of love to me. 54

By offering love
one recognizes
me fully and
who I am in truth.

Once knowing
me in truth,
one comes to me
immediately.³

55

Even though continually
enacting all activities,
fully taking refuge
in me,

By my grace
one attains
the everpresent
eternal dwelling.

56

With one's thought
having renounced
all actions in me,
wholly devoted to me,
Fully taking refuge in
the yoga of discernment—
always be thinking of me.

57

With thought on me,
due to my grace
you shall transcend
all difficulties.

Now, if you shall
not hear because of
the notion of 'I am acting',
then you shall be lost.

58

³ Comes: Translates *visate*, which can also mean "enters into" or "comes back."

When you think,
 having taken shelter
 of the notion of 'I am acting',
 that "I shall not fight"—

This resolve of yours
 is in vain since
 primordial nature
 shall force you.⁴

59

Being bound by what is
 born of your own nature,
 O Son of Kuntī,
 by your own action—

Whatever way you
 desire not to act
 due to bewilderment,
 that way you shall act,
 even against your will.

60

The supreme Lord
 of all beings, O Arjuna,
 is present within the inner
 region of the heart,

Causing all beings
 to move about like riders
 upon a mystical machine,
 by the divine power of Māyā.⁵

61

⁴ "I shall not fight": Translates the phrase, *na yotsya iti*. Note the similar sounding last word of this verse, *niyoksyati*, which translates the phrase "primordial nature shall force you." This is an example of Krishna's clever play on words.

⁵ A mystical machine: Translates the word *yantra*, which can refer to "the body" or even to "the complex workings of the whole cosmos."

In him alone take shelter
with your whole being,
O Bhārata.

Through his grace
you shall attain
supreme peace,
the eternal dwelling.

62

Thus for you this knowledge,
which is a greater secret
than the [previous] secret,
is made known by me.

Having fully grasped this,
with nothing overlooked,
then act as you so choose.⁶

63

Hear still further
the greatest secret of all,
my supreme message:
"You are so much loved by me!"
Therefore I shall speak
for your well-being.⁷

64

6 A greater secret: Translates *gubhyatara*. This "greater" secret, more secret than the [previous] secret, constitutes the transcendent state of realizing Brahman and the development of a vision of the "supreme Self," *puruṣa*, or the "supreme Lord," *īśvara*, within one's own heart and the hearts of all living beings. The "greatest secret" of Krishna is introduced in the following verse and expressed in subsequent verses.

The [previous] secret: The first of three secrets, constituting Krishna's words on acting in the outer world according to

one's nature, without being attached to the fruits of one's actions. This first secret is to act out of love, and its summary begins with the first verse of this chapter.

7 The greatest secret of all: Translates *sarva-gubhyatama*.

Loved: Translates *iṣṭa*, which literally means "wished" or "desired." "You are so much loved by me" therefore conveys the sense of an impassioned love, a divine yearning.

Well-being: translates *bita*, which can also mean "advantage," "welfare," "benefit," or "good."

Be mindful of me
 with love offered to me;
 sacrificing for me,
 act out of reverence for me.
 Truly you shall
 come to me—
 this I promise you
 for you are dearly loved by me.

65

Completely relinquishing
 all forms of dharma,
 come to me
 as your only shelter.
 I shall grant you
 freedom from
 all misfortune—
 do not despair!⁸

66

This is not to be spoken
 by you at any time
 to one who is
 without discipline,
 nor to one who
 does not offer one's love,
 Nor to one who hears
 yet has no desire to follow,
 nor to one who is
 envious of me.

67

⁸ Forms of dharma: Translates the plural form of dharma.

One who reveals
 this supreme secret
 to those who have
 offered me their love,
 Enacting the highest
 offering of love for me—
 that one shall certainly
 come to me, without doubt.

68

And among humans,
 there is no one whose acts
 are more dearly loved by me
 than that one,
 Nor shall there be
 any other on earth who
 is more dearly loved by me
 than such a person.

69

Also, whosoever shall study
 this sacred dialogue of ours
 concerning dharma—
 By that person, through
 the sacrifice of knowledge,
 I shall be lovingly worshipped;
 this is my conviction.⁹

70

⁹ Lovingly worshipped: This phrase translates *iṣṭa*, which, interestingly, is a past participle derived from two different verbal roots, meaning either "sacrificed, worshipped" (*yaj*) or "loved, desired" (*ich*). Though most scholars understand this participle to be the first of these

meanings, I have used "lovingly worshipped" to reflect its expressive ambiguity. It is also interesting to note that this participle bears the sense of "loved" or "desired" several verses earlier, in Krishna's impassioned words, "You are so much loved (*iṣṭa*) by me!" (BG 18.64).

Possessing faith
 and free from envy,
 such a person who
 should only hear it—
 Even that one,
 liberated, would attain
 the blissful worlds of
 those whose actions are pure. 71

Has this [teaching] been
 heard by you, O Pārtha,
 with thought focused upon
 the single highest point?
 Has this profound
 bewilderment coming
 from the absence of knowledge
 been perfectly destroyed in you,
 O Conqueror of Wealth? 72

Arjuna said:
 With confusion destroyed,
 my memory is restored
 by your grace,
 O Achyuta.
 I am firmly resolved
 with doubts dispelled—
 I shall act according
 to your guidance. 73

Sanjaya said:

Thus from Vāsudeva
and Pārtha,
whose self is exalted,
I have heard this
wondrous conversation,
which causes a state
of rapturous bliss.¹⁰

74

By the grace of Vyāsa
I have heard this
supreme secret of yoga
From Krishna,
the Supreme Lord of Yoga,
appearing directly
before my eyes,
speaking it himself.¹¹

75

O King, remembering—
remembering over and over
this wondrous dialogue
Of Keshava and Arjuna,
which is auspicious,
I feel rapturous bliss
moment after moment!¹²

76

¹⁰ Causes a state of rapturous bliss: Translates *romaharshana*, meaning "bodily hairs standing on end" or the "thrilling of bodily hairs."

¹¹ Supreme secret of yoga: Translates *guhyaṁ param̐ yogam*.

¹² O King: Refers to Dhritarāshtra.

And remembering—
 remembering over and over
 that most wondrous
 beautiful form of Hari,
 My amazement is great,
 O King, and I feel
 rapturous bliss
 again and again!¹³

77

Where there is Krishna,
 the Supreme Lord of Yoga,
 where there is Pārtha,
 Holder of the Bow,
 There is fortune,
 triumph, well-being,
 and lasting righteousness—
 that is my conclusion.¹⁴

78

13 Hari: A name for Krishna meaning "one who takes away," referring either to one's heart or one's troubles.

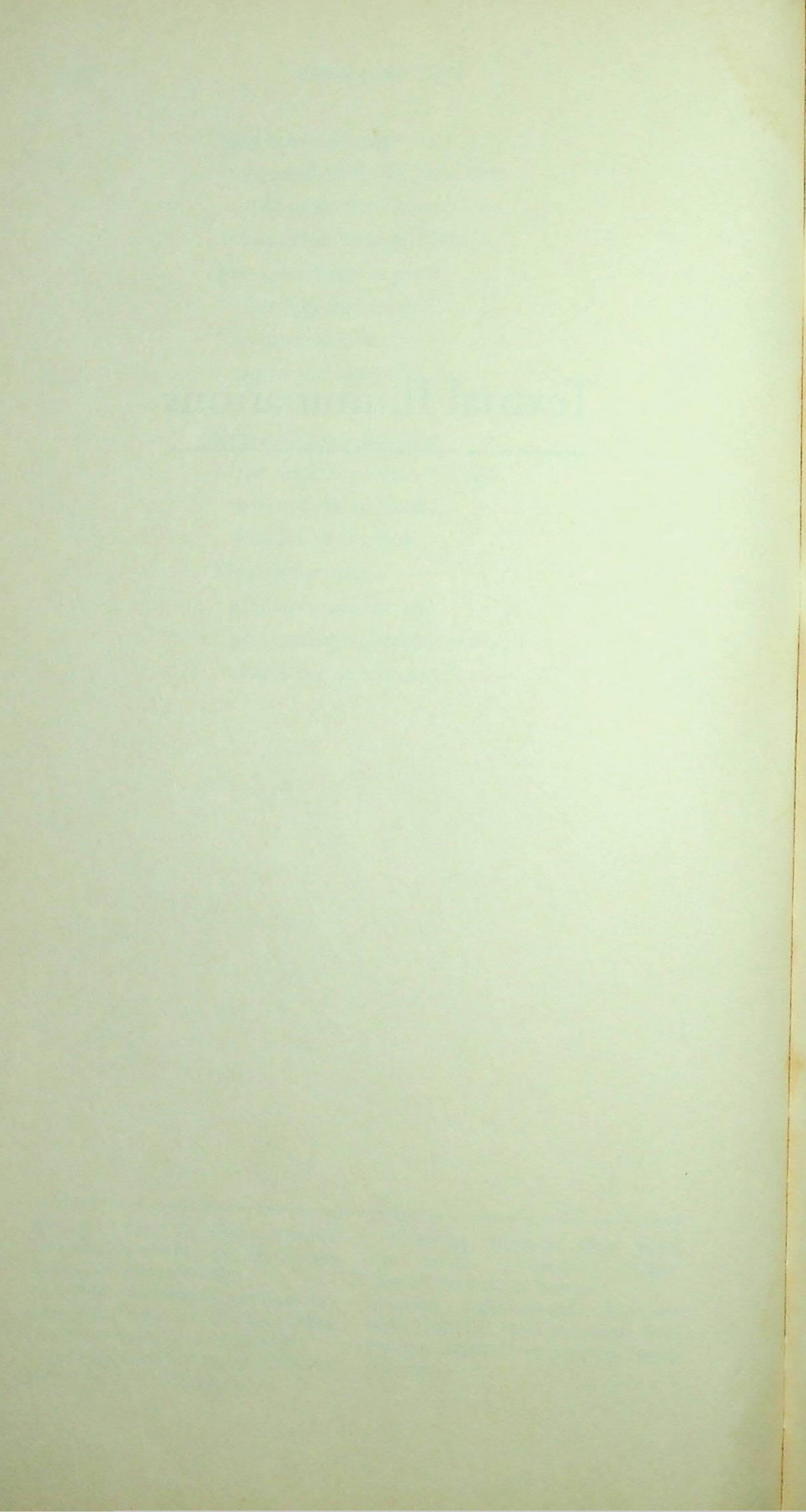
14 Fortune: Translates *śrī*, which can also mean "light," "splendor," "beauty," "auspiciousness," "success," or "prosperity."

Triumph: Translates *viṣaya*, which also means "victory" or "conquest."

Well-being: Translates *bhūti*, which also means "prosperity," "might," "power," "wealth," or "fortune."

Lasting righteousness: Translates *dhruvā nīti*. The word *nīti* means "wise conduct," "political wisdom," or "moral philosophy."

Textual Illuminations



The Yoga of the Bhagavad Gītā

An essential message concerning yoga pervades the text of the Bhagavad Gītā. Yoga, though taking many forms in the Gītā, acts as a unifying force that ties together all the teachings, practices, philosophies, and analyses presented in Krishna's discourse. The various yogas are meant to lead one to the ultimate form of yoga, what the narrator calls "the supreme secret of yoga." Embedded within the text, unifying its diverse themes, this cohesive message of yoga allows the reader to grasp every aspect of the Bhagavad Gītā through its revealing lens.

Many religious traditions and spiritual or yogic practices claim the Bhagavad Gītā as their own. Commentators from these varied traditions frequently interpret verses in ways that support their doctrines, far too often to the exclusion of the evident meaning of the text as a whole. The voice of the Bhagavad Gītā is powerful, and the text tells us how it wants to be understood. There is no need to superimpose anything that is not presented by the text, as is often done, nor is it necessary to privilege aspects of the text that the text itself does not emphasize. Supplementation is thus required only to bring out what is already emphasized by the text. The imposition of a doctrinal or even esoteric vision onto the verses of the Gītā, ungrounded in the text's essential message of yoga, risks an overly free interpretation. Our task here, therefore, is to offer a vision of the text that is generated from the text itself and a translation that is dedicated to this vision, through which sectarian interpretations of this great work may be better understood and assessed. Such a powerful and embracing vision speaks to those both within and outside traditions that revere this text as sacred.

We can begin to grasp the vision of the Bhagavad Gītā by reviewing the many applications of yoga in the text. The term *yoga* denotes a variety of human practices, disciplines, and even experiences to reach the divine, or a state of perfection that is achieved through rigorous meditational or ascetical discipline. The Bhagavad Gītā explains that these many forms of yoga may be practiced to attain a state of transcendent consciousness and ultimately be united with a specific dimension of the divine. Though the word

yoga is often used to refer to the human achievement of evolving to higher states of consciousness, the *Gītā* tells us that it is more than that. At the highest level, *yoga* is a secret state of union within supreme love, bestowed by divinity, who is also subsumed in this union. Indeed, *yoga* is the power of love that transforms the heart and to which even divinity submits.

Although *yoga* generally denotes the soul's union with the divine, the term refers more specifically to the numerous paths for attaining several levels of perfection, as well as the perfections themselves. These paths can be perceived in the prefixed words that modify the term *yoga*, for instance in the compound phrase *buddhi-yoga*, "the *yoga* of discernment" (BG 2.49). Other prefixed words referring to the different forms of *yoga* are observable in the titles traditionally given to the eighteen chapters of the *Gītā*. These traditional presentations of the text are most often read independently from its greater epic context. Although there are no titles in the original text (or for that matter, in the whole of the *Mahābhārata*), over time, in multiple editions, similar or identical titles have been consistently assigned to its chapters. Most significantly, the word *yoga* always appears in each chapter title. The first group of titles below refers to human practices and philosophical visions that enable souls to reach some aspect of the divine; the second to ways that the divinity manifests himself to allow souls to know particular dimensions of the divine:

TITLES INDICATING PRIMARY FORMS OF YOGA FOR SOULS

- The *Yoga* of Action, *karma-yoga* (chapter 3)
- The *Yoga* of Knowledge, *jñāna-yoga* (chapter 4)
- The *Yoga* of Renunciation, *saṁnyāsa-yoga* (chapter 5)
- The *Yoga* of Meditation, *dhyāna-yoga* (chapter 6)
- The *Yoga* of Love, *bhakti-yoga* (chapter 12)

TITLES INDICATING PRIMARY FORMS OF YOGA FOR DIVINITY

- The *Yoga* of Divine Power, *vibhūti-yoga* (chapter 10)
- The *Yoga* of the Universal Form, *viśva-rūpa-yoga* (chapter 11)
- The *Yoga* of the Ultimate Person, *purushottama-yoga* (chapter 15)

Perhaps the most unexpected form of yoga is indicated in the title of the first chapter, "The Yoga of Arjuna's Despair" (*arjuna-viṣāda-yoga*). Indeed, the concept of yoga is so broad that it even can conceive of despondency as a yoga that connects the practitioner with God.

To understand further the depth of yoga as the Bhagavad Gītā presents it, let us examine the term *yoga* itself. Many introductions to yoga explain that it is a Sanskrit word derived from the verbal root *yuj*, meaning to "yoke," "harness," or "connect." Interestingly, the essential elements as well as the ultimate meaning of *yoga* are revealed in the English definition of the noun *yoke*. The lexical description of *yoke* is a harness or crossbar by which the heads or necks of two farm animals are joined together. The essential elements derived from this definition could be described as: (1) an overarching powerful element, (2) a particular entity, (3) another distinct entity, and (4) an intimate conjunction between the two entities. Thus, the overarching element of power joins one entity with another in order to create an intimate relationship between the two entities. In the simplest of terms, *yoga* is the intimacy experienced between two entities who are joined together by a special power (see Figure 1 on the following page).

These four elements found in the yoke are clearly present in the yoga of the Bhagavad Gītā: (1) *Yoga-Māyā*, abbreviated as *Māyā*, means literally "the power of yoga."¹ This power can be seen as the potency found in all forms of yoga. Broadly, it is the power that both reveals divinity to souls and conceals divinity from souls. More specifically, it is the divine feminine power that either facilitates intimacy between the two entities of yoga or keeps souls who are not interested in this intimacy from discovering it. *Yoga-Māyā* thus keeps secret all that is divine, and reveals that secret only to those who are ready to receive it. When this divine power of union is not facilitating intimacy between the soul and the divinity, it is arranging a binding connection between the soul and this world of mixed happiness and suffering, in a state of complete forgetfulness of divinity. (2) *Yogeshvara* is a name applied to Krishna that

¹ *Yoga-Māyā* appears in BG 7.25; *Māyā* appears in BG 4.6, 7.14, and 18.61.

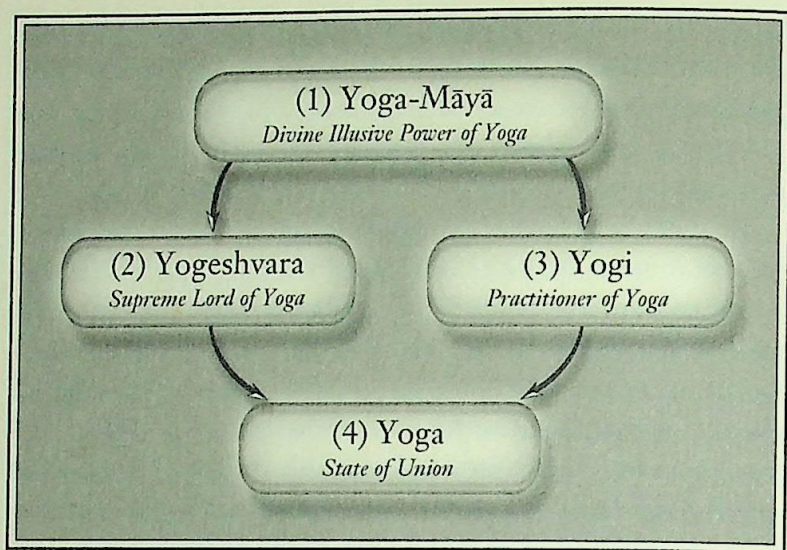


Figure I

means “the Supreme Lord of Yoga.”² While the name implies that any of Krishna’s numerous divine manifestations can be an object of yoga for souls, he himself is the ultimate object. The name also suggests that Krishna is the supreme yogi, that even *he* practices a form of yoga and is himself subsumed by yoga; thus Arjuna addresses Krishna as “O Yogi.”³ When Krishna displays his various manifestations, he is practicing his divine yoga. Arjuna acknowledges this when Krishna reveals his universal form. Moreover, the “ultimate secret,” the supreme teaching on yoga, comes from and is sustained by Krishna.⁴ (3) A yogi is that soul who practices one of the many forms of yoga presented in the Bhagavad Gītā, of which the primary forms are the yoga of action, the yoga of knowledge, the yoga of meditation, and the yoga of love. Each is a path or discipline that joins the individual self, the yogi, to some dimension of the divine. Thus Krishna tells Arjuna, “Be a yogi!”⁵ (4) Yoga here refers to a perfectional union that the soul achieves with a certain level of divinity as the result of yoga practice. In the

² The name Yogeshvara appears in BG 11.4, 11.9, 18.75, and 18.78.

³ The name Yogi for Krishna appears in BG 10.17.

⁴ The “ultimate secret” is presented in BG 4.3.

⁵ BG 6.46.

Gītā, this perfectional state of yoga is the supreme love that exists between Yogeshvara and the yogi.

The Bhagavad Gītā demonstrates that, metaphysically, the yoga of divinity has already been achieved, and therefore the divinity is appropriately named Yogeshvara. Krishna expresses his metaphysical achievement of yoga in various ways. He describes the superlatives of this world as his "outer world" manifestations; he presents Brahman, in whom all existences are contained, as his "inner world," or the totality of his spiritual being; and he explains his personal presence as the Purusha in the hearts of living entities, all of which are included within the totality of Brahman, as part of this inner world. Since nothing can exist apart from divinity, and since all living beings are eternally unique and constituent parts of the divine existence, it stands to reason that the only yoga Yogeshvara has yet to achieve is that yoga involving the hearts of humans. In other words, the only thing that God lacks is the personal union with human hearts. Krishna thus beckons souls to come to him in his "innermost" world, the world of his divine heart, where they can offer their love to him freely and fully. The Gītā's ultimate message reflects this choice the human heart makes either to become a part of the intimate world of divinity, or to remain apart from the heart of God in this world of fleeting existence.

The supreme message of the Gītā is revealed gradually in the text, as Krishna discusses the ways in which the hearts of souls can either move toward him, which is the essence of yoga, or away from him, which could be understood as *vi-yoga* ("that which moves one away [*vi-*] from yoga"). The soul that follows the path of *vi-yoga* leads a life of ego-centeredness (*ahaṅkāra*) and selfishness (*mamatva*); whereas the soul that practices some form of yoga focused on divinity leads a life without selfishness and ego-centeredness (*nirmama nirahaṅkāra*). In the former, the self, disconnected from the inner world of the self, becomes entangled in a precarious existence within the outer world of conflict and suffering. In the latter, the self, connected in any number of ways with some dimension of the divine, experiences the inner world of transcendence in which it finds Brahman, "the supreme Spirit," or Purushottama, "the supreme Self." The soul may even see the innermost world of the heart in which it discovers the heart of divinity, as the ultimate human achievement. This concept of the soul moving toward or

away from yoga is behind every practice and philosophical discussion presented in the *Gītā*.

After Krishna has imparted the foundational teaching of the Bhagavad *Gītā* to Arjuna, and before presenting the ultimate message of his teaching, he boldly declares, "Having fully grasped this, with nothing overlooked, then act as you so choose" (BG 18.63). These words from the final chapter are telling, for they suggest that souls ultimately determine their own destiny. Souls appear to be living in a deterministic universe in which the 'qualities' arising from primordial nature, the *guṇas* (consisting of *sattva*, *rajas*, and *tamas*), consume them in their daily lives. Souls act according to their unchangeable innate nature, as presented in Krishna's teaching on dharma. No matter what this nature dictates, however, and no matter how forcefully the 'qualities' shape individual lives, when souls have grasped the teachings of the *Gītā*, they discover that they have a choice—identifying with and serving this temporal world (*vi-yoga*) or identifying with and serving the eternal divine world (*yoga*).

When the soul is bound to this world, it is subject to the powerful conditioning of the 'qualities' of nature. Furthermore, when a soul is reborn, the life of that soul is largely determined by the positive and negative effects arising from the activities of one's previous births. The worldview of the *Gītā*, however, blends conceptions of free will with this deterministic view. Free will is a necessary ingredient in love; that love cannot be coerced or controlled is axiomatic for the *Gītā*. This subtle but critical theme shows that souls are given the power of choice, without which there is no possibility of love.

The love call of God, found within his sacred teachings, awakens free will, enabling the soul either to accept the cycle of endless birth and rebirth that binds the soul to this world, or to choose a path leading to the eternal world that frees the soul from the cycle of suffering. This mortal world, the *Gītā* implies, exists so that souls can exercise choice, without which there is no possibility of love. The implication is that there can be no true love in the divine world without an alternate world. Thus this world, ultimately designed to facilitate love, is brought into being by the divinity to give souls the freedom to love.

The name *Bhagavān* indicates the one from whom love comes and the one who is the most beloved for souls. Wherever Krishna's words are introduced throughout the Gītā, this epithet is utilized. This name also appears as *Bhagavat* (an inflected form of the same word) in the title of the work (in which *t* changes to *d* before the word Gītā). The word *Bhagavat* embraces many meanings and connotations, one of which is "the one who possesses (-vat) his portions (*bhaga*-)," implying that he is the supreme whole, the totality of all portions. The word also means "one who possesses all superlative attributes" or "one who possesses love." The portions (*bhagas*) of the Bhagavat include all souls, each individual soul constituting a bhakta. The metaphysical meaning of *bhakta*, often translated as "devotee," is literally "an apportioned (soul)," and theologically, it denotes a soul who both loves the divinity and is loved by divinity. *Bhakti*, then, refers to the mutual offerings of love intimately shared between the Bhagavat and the bhakta, and bhakti-yoga is the conjunction of Bhagavat and bhakta, achieved through and perfected in love. In bhakti, Bhagavat sends out his love call to all souls, expressed in the deeper theological meaning of the word Gītā.

The Beloved Lord already possesses souls metaphysically and loves souls unconditionally, yet he yearns for our hearts to turn toward him, a desire he expresses through his love song. The highest attainment of yoga is therefore reached when the yogi becomes a bhakta, or one who "offers one's love to God." Such a soul unites with Yogeshvara, who is the Bhagavat, in "the yoga of bhakti" (*bhakti-yoga* in chapter 12). The Gītā defines the relationship of yoga to bhakti at the end of chapter 6, where Krishna conclusively states that among all yogis, the one most absorbed in yoga is the bhakta:⁶

Even among all yogis,
one whose inner self
has come to me,

⁶ For other examples of how yoga is construed with bhakti, see BG 6.31, 8.10, 9.14, 9.34, 12.1, 12.2, 12.14, 13.10, and 14.26.

Who is full of faith,
 who offers love to me—
 that one is considered by me
 to be the most deeply
 absorbed in yoga.

(BG. 6.47)

This verse reveals that the highest form of yoga is the soul's offering of love (*bhajate*) to Krishna. The Yoga Sūtra of Patañjali (YS) also acknowledges the ultimate status of the supreme Lord within the practice of yoga when it states that "the perfection of *samādhi* [which itself is the highest perfectional stage of the eight-limbed yoga system called *aṣṭāṅga*] is dedication to the supreme Lord [*īśvara-praṇidhāna*]" (YS 2.45). Such dedication to the divinity appears most prominently in the Gītā, in which yoga is conceived as a practice that ideally involves the heart:

Among these,
 the person of knowledge,
 who is constantly absorbed
 in yoga that is solely
 an offering of love,
 is exceptional.
 For I am so dearly loved
 by the person of knowledge,
 and that person
 is dearly loved by me.

(BG 7.17)

The supreme divinity is thus the object of love, or the goal of yoga, for all souls; the innumerable souls are the object of love, or the goal of yoga, for the supreme divinity. Because he is unfalteringly receptive to yoga with each and every soul, the divinity is known as the Supreme Lord of Yoga (*yogeshvara*). These two entities, the Lord and the individual soul, are joined, or harnessed as it were, by the yoke, the intimate loving union, which subsumes both the soul and the divinity. We learn from Krishna's teachings that this power of yoga belongs to divinity but is also something to

which the divinity himself submits, and upon which even he becomes dependent.

Sanjaya: Minister and Visionary

Sanjaya has a central position in the Bhagavad Gītā. Most obviously he plays the role of minister for King Dhritarāshtra, but it is in his capacity as a visionary that he is extraordinary. Sanjaya also represents the consummate teacher, or guru. He epitomizes the "seer of the truth" (BG 4.34), for he sees and hears what transpires privately between Arjuna and Krishna in a remote location. Sanjaya is privy to the secret vision of the universal form that Krishna insists is only for Arjuna's eyes—the exclusive manifestation reserved for Krishna's dearest friend. Sanjaya, then, appears to be as blessed as Arjuna is by Krishna's presence, teachings, and visions.

This fortunate minister and seer clearly has received the grace of God as a devotee, or bhakta. He transmits his visions directly to the troubled king, indirectly to Vyāsa, the author of the text, and finally, through Vyāsa to all readers of the Bhagavad Gītā. Thus Sanjaya simultaneously functions as a teacher. Krishna could easily be speaking about Sanjaya himself in these concluding verses:

One who reveals
this supreme secret
to those who have
offered me their love,
Enacting the highest
offering of love for me—
that one shall certainly
come to me, without doubt.

And among humans,
there is no one whose acts
are more dearly loved by me
than that one,

Nor shall there be
 any other on earth who
 is more dearly loved by me
 than such a person.

(BG 18.68–18.69)

Clearly, Sanjaya, as an ecstatic devotee and transmitter of Krishna's supreme secret, is loved most dearly by the divinity.

The words of Sanjaya fall into three categories: dialogical, narrative, and rapturous. The text begins with the *dialogical*, when the king, Dhritarāshtra, asks Sanjaya in the first verse what is occurring on the battlefield. Sanjaya responds to the king using *narrative* discourse, as he relates the events at Kurukshetra. In the next nine verses he quotes the king's eldest son, who, from the battlefield, reports on the might of the two armies. Throughout the Gītā, while narrating events, Sanjaya occasionally addresses the king in dialogue. His *narrative* words are his dominant form of expression, however, as he transmits either what is taking place on the battlefield or the interactions between Arjuna and his charioteer. Through his special extrasensory power, Sanjaya functions as the visionary minister for the king and the transmitting teacher for the reader of the Gītā. Not until the final verses of the text do we encounter Sanjaya's third type of expression, that of *rapturous* words, in a suite of verses that begins with the following:

Thus from Vāsudeva
 and Pārtha,
 whose self is exalted,
 I have heard this
 wondrous conversation,
 which causes a state
 of rapturous bliss.

(BG 18.74)

These rapturous expressions, along with those of dialogue and narration, demonstrate Sanjaya's powerful presence as a blissful and compassionate deliverer of souls. Sanjaya thus functions as the archetypal guru, a prominent role in India from ancient times.

Sanjaya's central role in the Bhagavad Gītā is understood in the mystical transmission of this personal dialogue between divinity and devotee, achieved through a complex arrangement. It is Sanjaya alone, far removed from the battle arena, who directly witnesses the dramatic scene:

By the grace of Vyāsa
 I have heard this
 supreme secret of yoga
 From Krishna,
 the Supreme Lord of Yoga,
 appearing directly
 before my eyes,
 speaking it himself.

(BG 18.75)

The secret dialogue is then received by generations of readers through Vyāsa, the author of the text, from Sanjaya, who is central to its rich delivery (see Figure 2 on the following page).

The Gītā provides us with literary and theological information for understanding the dynamics of the transmission of this sacred dialogue, identified in eight steps: (1) the opening verse of the text, which launches the "outer dialogue," presents Dhritarāshtra, the blind king, who inquires from the enlightened Sanjaya, his minister (BG 1.1); (2) Vyāsa, the famous compiler of the Vedas and other sacred texts, is the renowned sage who grants Sanjaya the power to hear and observe (BG 18.75); (3) what is generally taking place on the battlefield of Kurukshetra (BG 1.2–1.20), specifically the words of Duryodhana (son of Dhritarāshtra) to his teacher, Dronāchārya (BG 1.3–1.11); (4) and, most essentially, the power to transmit the "inner dialogue," those interactions between Arjuna and Krishna (BG 2.11–18.73); (5) Sanjaya narrates what he hears and sees to Dhritarāshtra (BG 18.74–18.78); (6) all of which is then recorded by the author Vyāsa as the complete text of the Bhagavad Gītā (BG 10.13); (7) which is transmitted through teachers of the tradition (BG 4.2); (8) and contemplated by the reader (BG 18.70) either in sacred communities of worshippers (BG 10.9, 18.68–18.69) or intellectual traditions, both keeping the inner and outer dialogues of the Bhagavad Gītā alive.

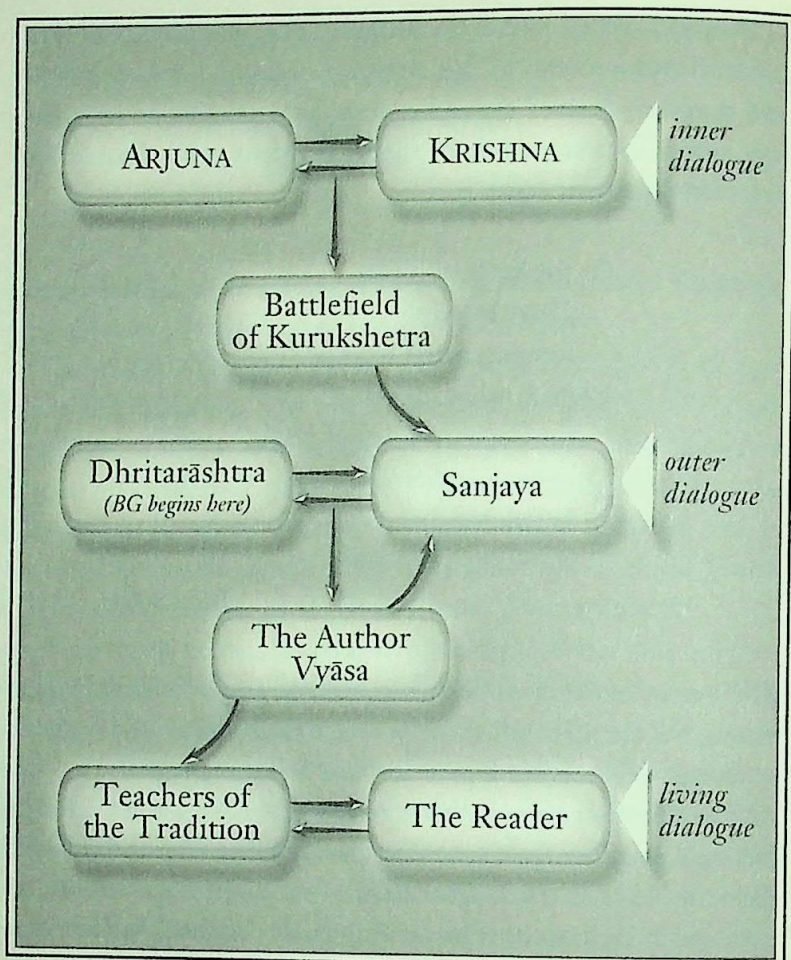


Figure 2

Arjuna: Warrior and Softhearted Soul

Arjuna exhibits a colorful persona. The types of expression exhibited by Arjuna point to the various dimensions of his relationship with Krishna: the chauffeured general, the troubled and softhearted friend, the humble student, and the paradigmatic devotee. We learn that Arjuna is a leading general of his army, who orders his charioteer, Krishna, to place his chariot between the armies in order to assess the challenge before him. Arjuna is overwhelmed when he sees close relatives, friends, and revered gurus on both sides of the

battlefield. His heart is naturally torn between his nature as a warrior, which compels him to protect the innocent and establish righteousness, and his deep affection and respect for so many on the opposing side, as well as on his own side. This conflict causes Arjuna to turn to Krishna as a close friend and confidant.

Very quickly, however, their intimate relationship is transformed into that of a humble student with his wise and compassionate teacher. Now Arjuna has become the archetypal spiritual aspirant, the inquiring disciple who is deeply troubled by insurmountable challenges. The shift in his persona, from a warrior to one seeking counsel to a submissive student, occurs over the first chapter and the beginning of the second. Arjuna's role as a disheartened student who receives Krishna's guidance and teachings dominates the remainder of the text.

Later, however, we discover that Krishna also considers Arjuna to be his loving friend, and elsewhere in the Mahābhārata we learn that Arjuna is a cousin to Krishna, whose aunt, Queen Kuntī, is Arjuna's mother. The final aspect of Arjuna's layered relationship with Krishna is that of a devotee whose softheartedness leads him to dedication, strength, and resolve. The reader observes the soft-hearted Arjuna as he moves along the path of self-realization, all the way to God realization. After exhibiting these distinct dimensions of identity, he returns to his role as a leading general. Finally Arjuna is able to put his heart fully into his duties, even in this treacherous world, having received strength and counsel from his beloved guru, Krishna.

Arjuna's words within the sacred dialogue show struggle, humility, prayer, inquiry, praise, and resolve. These types of expression paint a full portrait of Arjuna as he confronts his dilemma. They are presented in the text as follows: (I) His words of *struggle* are found primarily within the second part of the first chapter, in what we have already described as his "inner conflict." Arjuna's struggle is further expressed by his confusion and despair at the beginning of the second chapter: "My very being is afflicted by a piteous weakness of spirit. My thoughts on dharma are completely bewildered" (BG 2.7). Arjuna also expresses uneasiness while witnessing Krishna's terrific and frightening universal form in chapter II: "Yet my mind is distressed and filled with fear." (BG II.45).

(2) Arjuna speaks words of *humility* when approaching Krishna as a disciple, in the words "I am your student—instruct me, for I have offered myself unto you" (BG 2.7). (3) Arjuna's words are *prayerful* in chapter 11: "O Divinity, allow me to see that very [intimate] form. Bestow upon me your grace, O Lord of Divinities, dwelling place of the universe" (BG 11.45). (4) Words of *inquiry* are Arjuna's dominant form of expression throughout the dialogue, such as these found in chapter 6:

Arjuna said:

One who does not strive
yet possesses faith,
whose mind has
deviated from yoga
Without achieving
full perfection in yoga—
to what destiny does
that one go, O Krishna?

(BG 6.37)

Here, Arjuna's questions characterize his relationship with Krishna as a student with his mentor. (5) Arjuna offers words of *praise* or exaltation, as in these worshipful expressions from chapter 10:

You are the supreme Brahman,
the supreme dwelling place,
the supreme means of purification;
The eternal divine Person,
the original Divinity,
the unborn, all-pervading one.

(BG 10.12)

(6) Words of personal *resolve* are found in the last verse spoken by Arjuna. After receiving Krishna's secret teachings, he is resolved to re-enter the outer world of conflict where he now can act with realization and a full heart:

With confusion destroyed,
 my memory is restored
 by your grace,
 O Achyuta.

I am firmly resolved,
 with doubts dispelled—
 I shall act according
 to your guidance.

(BG 18.73)

These ways in which Arjuna expresses himself are indicative of his various roles in the Bhagavad Gītā, as he evolves in his spiritual quest.

Krishna: Intimate and Infinite Divinity

The portrait of Krishna as the divinity in the Bhagavad Gītā is characterized by intimacy, as well as sublimity and infinite might. Krishna exhibits tender and endearing qualities while serving Arjuna as his charioteer, confidant, teacher, and friend; whereas Krishna's magnificence and sublime power become known when he describes his divine attributes and various forms, and proclaims his cosmological and pantheistic manifestations. He even frightens Arjuna when he displays his terrifying "universal form." Although Krishna's intimate and powerful forms differ dramatically, they share a common element. In each manifestation, Krishna embraces souls through his supreme yoga. He embraces the outer world of souls, those who have not yet discovered his inner worlds of transcendence and divine love, with the yoga of his mighty manifestations, and he embraces the inner world of souls with the yoga of his intimate divine form.

Early on, the Gita reveals Krishna's identity as Arjuna's charioteer. After requesting Krishna to drive his chariot between the two armies (BG 1.21), Arjuna pours his heart out to Krishna, disclosing his torment over the battle that is about to begin. Krishna thus

becomes Arjuna's confidant (BG 1.28–2.6). As Arjuna reveals his deep despair to Krishna, who responds with words of wisdom, Arjuna relates to the divinity as his teacher (BG 2.7). Thereafter, Krishna's identity is gradually revealed.

When Krishna begins his philosophical discourse, the narrator identifies him as Bhagavān, which can be taken as simply an honorific for any venerable personage. Moreover, none of Krishna's own words overtly announce his divinity until chapter 4. Krishna's initial role as a charioteer is merely described, but from chapter 2 on he actively plays the part of counselor and teacher. In only a single verse in chapter 2 and one verse in chapter 3 are we given even a hint of Krishna's divinity. These hints take the form of unexpected or even abrupt interjections that express his divine calling, his eternal yearning for souls to come to him. These exhortative expressions give the viewer an underlying powerful message in the form of a communicated subtext. The first hint of Krishna's divinity appears in a verse about yoga:

Restraining all these [senses],
 one should be seated
 while absorbed in yoga,
 wholly intent on me.
 For one whose senses
 are under control—
 for that one,
 profound knowledge
 is firmly established.

(BG 2.61)

The phrase "wholly intent on me" introduces the idea that Krishna is not only the charioteer, the confidant, and the teacher, but the object of his own teachings. Furthermore, the phrase provides a brief glimpse into Krishna's divine secret. This idea that Krishna is the object of meditation is without precedent in the text.

In these two earlier chapters, Krishna's interjections prepare the reader for what is to come. Krishna's divine identity remains hidden in chapter 3, and yet is suggested:

Renouncing all actions in me,
 with one's thought on
 the 'principle of self',
 Without longings,
 without a sense of 'mine'—
 fight, with grief cast off.

(BG 3.30)

Here, Krishna refers to himself in the first person, "renouncing all actions in me," and indirectly in the third person, in the phrase "with one's thought on the 'principle of self'," thus cleverly concealing his identity. We learn later in the text that this 'principle of self' is ultimately Krishna as the Purusha, the divinity dwelling within the hearts of all beings, a form to which he will often refer in the third person.

Krishna openly reveals his divine identity for the first time in chapter 4, after which his interjections seem far less abrupt. Through these interjections Krishna communicates that he is the ultimate end of all actions, disciplines, and spiritual attainments, and also explains that everything metaphysical and cosmic is contained within himself. But most significantly, Krishna includes these exhortative bursts in his teachings as an expression of his impassioned love for humans and his desire for humans to love him, to come to him. Krishna first introduces his divine secret through these hints and later, through bold expressions, until it is fully disclosed in the final chapter.

In Krishna's speaking, which dominates the text, the reader encounters eight types of expression: protective, philosophical, edifying, exhortative, declarative, revelational, compassionate, and affectionate. All facilitate the yoga of the divine heart, in which the divinity desires the love of every soul. Thus, collectively, these types of expression constitute the divinity's love call in the Gītā.

Krishna's *protective* words can take the form of encouragement, as found in an earlier chapter: "Relinquishing this poor faint-heartedness, stand up, O Scorcher of the Enemy!" (BG 2.3). In his climactic words toward the end of the text Krishna is both protective and reassuring: "I shall grant you freedom from all

misfortune—do not despair!” (BG 18.66). Even Krishna’s philosophical words can carry an underlying tone of reassurance:

Never, truly,
 have I ever not existed—
 nor you, nor these kings
 who protect the people,
 And never
 shall any of us
 ever cease to be,
 now or forevermore.

(BG 2.12)

Again, Krishna’s words offer refuge and comfort through his bold declaration of complete protection for souls who never forget him:

One who sees me everywhere
 and sees all things in me,
 To such a person I am never lost
 nor is such a person ever lost to me.

(BG 6.30)

Krishna’s *philosophical* words, the second type of expression, are most prominent in the Gītā and can exhibit an objective and even abstract tone:

Of the impermanent
 one finds no being;
 one finds no nonbeing
 of the permanent.
 Indeed, the certainty
 of both of these
 has been perceived
 by seers of the truth.

(BG 2.16)

However, these words do not remain abstract for long. As he addresses the practical challenges of life, Krishna's words become more supportive, offered by the divinity to elevate the soul to the highest region within his divine realm. He may even combine philosophical teaching with a rhetorical question:

One who knows this [self]
 to be indestructible,
 eternal, unborn,
 and everpresent—
 How and whom does
 that person slay, O Pārtha?
 And whom does
 that one cause to slay?

(BG 2.21)

Krishna's *edifying* words, another form of expression, are instructive, often addressed to Arjuna in the second person, "you." Here, a certain directional force leads souls ever closer to the ultimate level of Krishna's divinity. Such edifying speech acts in one of three ways: (1) to prepare the soul for elevation to the divine, (2) to encourage particular practices and disciplines that connect the soul to the divine, or (3) to encourage the perfection of offerings and practices, intensifying the soul's intimate connection with the supreme and personal divinity, Krishna. These three types of edifying speech, found throughout the text, typically direct an individual from the outer world of conflict to the inner world of spirit and transcendence, and finally to the innermost world of the heart, in which a soul finds the perfect love of divinity.

Krishna's edifying preparatory remarks emphasize the importance of performing one's "dharma," the right way of acting in this world determined by one's phase of life (*āshrama*) and one's particular capabilities and talents (*varna*). He stresses the importance of acting *according to one's nature*, thus being true to one's dharma:

Better is one's own dharma
 even if imperfect
 than another's dharma
 followed perfectly.

Performing action
 determined by
 one's own nature,
 one does not incur fault.

(BG 18.47)

Here, Krishna reinforces Arjuna's position as a warrior. He also warns Arjuna that he could not act against his nature even if he were to try to do so (BG 18.60). Krishna teaches in the second type of edifying words that the fruits of action produced from following one's dharma are not to be enjoyed; rather, they are to be renounced, resulting in detachment from the outer world and the lifting of consciousness to the inner world of transcendence, where one becomes freed from the cycle of birth and death:

Indeed, those wise ones
 who are absorbed
 in the yoga of discernment,
 relinquishing the fruits
 born of action,
 Who are freed
 from the bondage
 of repeated births,
 go to a place beyond suffering.

(BG 2.51)

These edifying statements of Krishna act as encouraging words that gradually elevate the soul *through practice and discipline* to eternal life, beyond this fleeting world of hardship and impermanence. Finally, when action arising from dharma produces fruits that are offered to the divinity *out of love*, then such a soul reaches the innermost world of the heart, in which the love of divinity is discovered:

For them, who are constantly
 absorbed in yoga,
 who offer loving service
 with natural affection,
 I offer that yoga
 of discernment
 by which they
 come close to me.

(BG 10.10)

These words encouraging souls to perfect such offerings of love form the third level of edifying speech. All three types of edifying statements—preparatory, practical, and perfectional—are phases of yoga that connect the soul more and more intimately with the divinity.

The *exhortative* words of Krishna strongly urge souls to know him, act for him, come to him, or love him. This type of expression, through which Krishna draws souls to himself, often contains, overtly or covertly, the objective pronoun *me*. The following verse demonstrates the language of reflexive exhortation:

Place your mind on me alone;
 let your discernment
 enter into me.
 You shall dwell
 only in me
 from now forevermore—
 of this there is no doubt.

(BG 12.8)

This and many other verses exhort souls to take up any of the contemplative or more active practices presented in the *Gītā* and integrate them as an offering to Krishna. Whatever the path or discipline chosen, Krishna urges souls to tread that path since it ultimately leads to the heart of the divinity. These exhortations express Krishna's passionate yet patient love for souls. He

proclaims in a great number of verses his desire that souls know, see, and remember him.⁷ Similarly, throughout the text, Krishna encourages souls to "meditate" on him and to remain "wholly intent" on him, "with mind deeply attached" to him and "thought focused" upon him.⁸ Furthermore, Krishna implores souls to act only for him when he instructs them to take "full refuge" in him and to "renounce all actions" for him.⁹

Krishna's divine love call is most evident in his exhortations to "love" him and "come to" him. First and foremost, he desires that souls "offer their love" to him, as shown in the numerous words derived from the verbal root *bhaj*, meaning "to offer love to the divine," such as the words *bhakti* or *bhakta*. These derivative words appear thirty-eight times and are present in twelve of the Gītā's eighteen chapters. Krishna also speaks of "worshipping" him, "sacrificing" for him, "praising" and "honoring" him, and "acting out of reverence" for him. Krishna describes souls who have "offered their lives" and who are "devoted" to him. The sheer quantity and pervasiveness of these exhortations convey Krishna's ardent desire for the love of souls. This divine yearning is further expressed in exhortations that invite, even entreat, souls to come to him. Indeed, Krishna explains at least twenty-three times the ways in which souls may "come" to him.¹⁰

In Krishna's *declarations*, another type of expression, he proclaims his divine identity and the manifestations of his divinity. These statements are most often expressed in the first person as "I am" declarations. In numerous places he identifies himself with the superlative dimensions of this world:

7 Some verses exhorting souls to remember Krishna are: 7.30, 8.7, 8.13, 8.14; to know Krishna: 5.29, 7.3, 7.10, 7.12, 7.30, 10.24, 10.27, 15.19, 18.55 (twice); to understand Krishna: 4.14, 7.6, 9.6, 10.2, 10.3; to see Krishna: 4.35, 5.18, 6.29, 6.30, 11.3-8, 11.54.

8 Meditating on Krishna: 9.22, 10.8, 12.6; intent on him: 2.61, 6.14, 12.6, 12.20, 18.57; immersed in him: 4.10, 12.10; with thought focused upon him: 6.14, 10.9, 18.57; with mind on him: 5.13, 7.1, 9.13, 9.34, 12.2, 12.8, 12.14, 18.65; with thought on him: 12.7, 12.9, 18.57, 18.58.

9 Taking refuge in Krishna: 4.10, 7.19, 7.29, 9.18, 9.32, 18.56, 18.66; renouncing actions for Krishna: 3.30, 5.13, 12.6, 18.57.

10 Coming to Krishna: 4.9, 4.10, 6.47, 7.14, 7.15, 7.19, 7.23, 8.7, 8.15, 8.16, 9.11, 9.25, 9.28, 9.34, 10.10, 11.55, 13.18, 14.2, 18.55, 18.65, 18.66, 18.68.

I am the taste in water,
 O Kaunteya;
 I am the radiance
 of the moon and the sun,
 The sacred utterance
 in all the Vedas,
 the sound in space,
 the prowess in men.

(BG 7.8)

Krishna finally states that all sublime things in this world are but a reflection of his divine splendor:

Whatever form of existence
 possesses abounding power,
 contains the beautiful,
 or is well-endowed
 with excellence—
 Understand that
 every such form
 has become fully manifest
 from but a part of my splendor.

(BG 10.41)

Thus the superlative aspects of creation function as a medium through which divinity embraces souls. This becomes part of Krishna's yoga. The beautiful and the sublime continuously reveal messages from the heart of divinity, directing us toward him.

Krishna's *revelational* words are found mostly in chapter II. This form of expression, in which Krishna reveals his manifestation of omnipotence as the Vishva Rūpa, and his intimate divinity as the Bhagavat, also dramatizes the relationship between the two. Arjuna asks to see Krishna's mighty and powerful forms, and Krishna tells him that these forms are innumerable:

Behold my forms,
 O Pārtha,
 by the hundreds,
 or by the thousands—
 Divine, of various types,
 and of various colors
 and appearances.

(BG 11.5)

To see these forms would require that Arjuna possess a special kind of vision:

But you are unable to see me
 with only this, your own eyes.
 I [therefore] give divine eyes to you—
 behold my supremely powerful yoga!

(BG 11.8)

This orchestrated vision of the awesome manifestation of Krishna is described not only by the divinity himself, but also by the narrator, Sanjaya, and by Arjuna, as he witnesses the marvelous display of divine grandeur.

The juxtaposition of this majestic form with Krishna's preferred form further reveals the supremacy of the divinity's more intimate form, which has been in dialogue with Arjuna all along. We learn that Krishna's ultimate form is, paradoxically, concealed as the manifestation of divine intimacy with whom Arjuna has interacted but which he has perhaps not fully appreciated until now, after encountering this starkly contrasting and frightful form of might. While attempting to comprehend such a display of overwhelming power, Arjuna implores Krishna to return to the personal affectionate form that he has always cherished:

As a father is to a son,
 as a friend to a friend,

As a dearly loved one
 to a dearly beloved—
 be pleased to show your
 loving kindness, O Divinity.
 (BG 11.44cd)

Arjuna is careful to express his gratitude for being granted a vision of the divinity's universal form, though he yearns to be reunited with Krishna's intimate form:

Having seen what never
 has been seen before,
 I am exceedingly pleased,
 Yet my mind is distressed
 and filled with fear.
 O Divinity, allow me to see
 that very [intimate] form.
 Bestow upon me your grace,
 O Lord of Divinities,
 dwelling place of the universe.
 (BG 11.45)

Many in India, as well as in the West, consider the awesome and terrifying Vishva Rūpa to be the superior form of divinity. In fact, some consider chapter 11 as the climactic chapter of the Bhagavad Gītā because of Krishna's spectacular revelation of the Vishva Rūpa. One might ask, however, why would the climactic portion of an eighteen-chapter work be placed in the eleventh chapter?

Arjuna, in his longing for Krishna's personal form, makes a statement about the superiority of this form. Arjuna's anxious retreat from his vision of the Vishva Rūpa, and his corresponding eagerness to reconnect with Krishna's humanlike form, certainly confirms the Gītā's emphasis on the intimate divinity. Moreover, chapter 12 is solely dedicated to the offering of the heart to this personal form of divinity, leading the reader away from the grandiose form of the eleventh chapter, which further expresses the

ultimacy of the intimate deity. Thus the Vishva Rūpa, for Arjuna, functions as an extraordinarily ornate throne that highlights and celebrates Krishna's manifestation as the loving personal deity. And just as Arjuna requires a special vision to see the Vishva Rūpa, he requires a fully devoted heart in order to know the most intimate form of divinity:

Only by the offering of
 one's love to none other,
 O Arjuna, am I able,
 in such a form,
 To be known and
 to be truly seen,
 and to be attained,
 O Fighter of the Enemy.

(BG 11.54)

Krishna's words of *compassion*, the next type of expression, demonstrate his loving generosity toward all souls. Krishna clearly is not a jealous God, for out of his infinite compassion he accepts that souls also worship lesser divinities who personify Krishna's divine powers. Krishna even goes so far as to fortify the faith of souls who worship such divinities:

Whoever, with faith,
 has offered love
 to whatever form that
 person desires to worship—
 Upon every such person,
 I bestow this
 immovable faith.

(BG 7.21)

Krishna's openness to the numerous paths by which souls can approach him is an expression of his inclusiveness, as well as his unwavering love:

In the way they offer
 themselves to me,
 in just that way
 I offer my love
 to them reciprocally.

Human beings
 follow my path
 universally,
 O Pārtha.

(BG 4.11)

Here, Krishna's words are gentle and accommodating. The divinity's acceptance of all souls is confirmed. Krishna loves souls in whatever ways they are able to love him, directly or indirectly. Moreover, although Krishna states that he is equal toward all souls, he feels especially close to those who offer their hearts directly to him. The following verse demonstrates Krishna's *compassionate* as well as his *affectionate* words:

I am the same
 toward all beings;
 no one is either hated
 or dearly loved by me.
 Yet those who,
 with an offering of love,
 offer their love to me—
 they are in me
 and I also am in them.

(BG 9.29)

In this verse Krishna declares, perhaps surprisingly, that no one is dearly loved by him. Such impartiality, as expressed in the first half of the verse, is associated with Krishna's manifestation as the Lord within the hearts of beings. Yet in this and several other verses Krishna states that those who have offered their hearts to him are

indeed in him and are dearly loved by him. These verses are examples of the final type of expression, Krishna's *affectionate* words:

Indeed, this is the immortal
 essence of dharma,
 which has been declared;
 those who participate in
 this worship fully,
 Who have faith,
 who are devoted to me,
 who have offered their love—
 they are most dearly loved by me.
 (BG 12.20)

This verse is the last one in a grouping of verses found in chapter 12 (BG 12.13–12.20), in which Krishna describes the types of souls who are recipients of his dearest love. As seen above, Krishna emphasizes that there has never been nor will there ever be any soul whom he loves more dearly than the one who reveals his secret of divine love to other souls (BG 18.68–69).

The Secret Love Song

The Bhagavad Gītā is an impassioned expression of divine yearning. Krishna explains that everything is contained in him, that he is the one by whom everything is set forth into motion and sustained, and that he is truly the Bhagavat, the “possessor of all superlatives, existences, and beings.” Despite the infinite and absolute fullness of his being, he yearns for one thing that is not within his possession or under his control—the human heart. Thus the divinity experiences some incompleteness within his divine completeness, and longs for what he does not possess. Krishna therefore sends out his secret love call, a song coming from his heart to all hearts, which is the unifying message of the Gītā.

This essential message of divine love, presented in chapter 18 as “the greatest secret of all,” is at once revealed and concealed in the

Gītā. It is secret because Krishna desires souls to know about it only when they are ready to receive it, to preserve the purity of the soul's loving response. The secret nature of this divine longing of God's heart is reflected in its subtle presentation in earlier chapters. It is introduced gradually, then more boldly presented in later chapters, not only because it is secret, but also because Krishna wishes to show how everything is related to this message.

Arjuna is informed of Krishna's divine yearning through his teachings on how souls come to him and how all paths, or dharmas, can lead souls to his inner world. Indeed, the penultimate and final verses of many chapters express this. Krishna's acknowledgment and approval of such paths functions in two ways: one is to demonstrate his compassion in accepting the various ways souls desire to move toward him; and the other is to express his intention to keep his ultimate teachings secret from those who are not yet ready to love him, by diverting them to those paths that are themselves preliminary to realizing the divine secret.

The Gītā opens with an irresolvable ethical conflict in Arjuna's outer world. Through this conflict, which acts as a catalyst, Arjuna attains the highest yoga, the yoga of the heart. By hearing Krishna's call to love, by hearing what the divinity most secretly desires, Arjuna's vision of his overwhelming problems is transformed. He learns to see the embrace of divinity behind all the events of this world, even the most dreadful.

The supreme secret is revealed in key places throughout the text. At the beginning of chapter 4, Krishna claims to deliver the ancient secret of yoga, which had been lost from the lineage that once transmitted it. He specifies who may receive such a secret:

This same ancient yoga
is now spoken
by me to you:
"Having offered your love,
you have also
become my friend"—
truly, this is the ultimate secret.

(BG 4.3)

This verse introduces the reader to divine secrecy, suggested by the words *ultimate secret*. We hear nothing more of divine secrecy until chapter 9, where Krishna states, "Now I shall reveal to you this greatest secret, for you are without envy" (BG 9.1). Krishna himself speaks highly of this secret of secrets: "This is the king of knowledge, the king of secrets" (BG 9.2), then later declares, "I am the silence of secrets" (BG 10.38). In chapter 11, Arjuna speaks of Krishna's "supreme secret" as the 'principle of self' (BG 11.1). Krishna declares "the greatest secret" to be knowledge of his identity as the "Ultimate Person" (BG 15.18–20). The presentation in chapter 18 of "the secret" constitutes the dramatic finale of the entire work. Here, Krishna speaks about the three levels of "the secret" in the climactic point of the chapter (BG 18.63–64), and explains that one who disseminates this "supreme secret" becomes very dear to him (BG 18.68). Furthermore, Sanjaya describes Krishna's complete teachings as "the supreme secret of yoga" in the last words of the text (BG 18.75).

Krishna's supreme message is positioned within the final chapter of the *Gītā* as its focal point. Chapter 18 can be divided into four sections, each with its own theme:

1. The Secret: Acting According to One's Nature (vss. 1–49)
2. The Greater Secret: Transcendence and the Supreme Self (vss. 50–63)
3. The Greatest Secret of All: Divine Love (vss. 64–66)
4. Concluding Words: Krishna, Arjuna, and Sanjaya (vss. 67–78)

The first section is dedicated to the capacity of the soul to achieve spiritual transcendence through action in the outer world of conflict. It begins with renunciation of selfish actions by relinquishment of the fruits of action (1–12), then addresses the five causes of action (13–19) and how action is affected by the 'qualities' of primordial nature (19–40). Next, it describes the four general classes of society according to their work: the educators or priests, the rulers or warriors, the business- or tradespeople, and the skilled workers (41–48). Finally, the *Gītā* explains how attainment

of transcendence is possible in a state of actionlessness, through renunciation (49). This constitutes the secret.

The second section presents the inner world of transcendence and moves the reader toward the innermost world of the heart in bhakti. It presents disciplines of the self to attain Brahman (50–53), how Brahman leads to bhakti and the nature of bhakti (54–58), as well as how acting according to one's nature in dharma is inevitable (59–60). The text then describes how love is offered to the supreme Self, the indwelling Lord within the heart (61–62). The transitional and pivotal verse (63) reveals the secret in relation to the greater secret, which anticipates the greatest secret of all (64).

The third section, only three verses, focuses exclusively on the innermost world of the heart. In verse 64, Krishna's supreme message is fully disclosed; verse 65 describes the ultimate achievement of offering one's heart to the divinity and a reaffirmation of how such a soul is dearly loved. Verse 66 explains the exclusive attention of the soul for the divinity, a love that goes beyond all forms of dharma. These three verses, beginning with the revelation of the divinity's passion for souls, constitute the ultimate message in Krishna's teachings, the greatest secret of all.

In the fourth section, the voices of Krishna, Arjuna, and Sanjaya are heard. First, the soul who is qualified to receive the supreme secret is presented (67); then comes a declaration that one who reveals this supreme secret to others possesses the highest love for divinity, and is more loved by the divinity than any other soul (68–69). Krishna's words of benediction follow, stating that by contemplating this dialogue, spiritual achievements will be made (70–71). In his final words, Krishna inquires from Arjuna if he has heard "the single highest point" of his teachings, which would dispel his bewildered state (72), and Arjuna responds in the affirmative (73). Sanjaya's ecstatic epilogue then forms the concluding verses of the text (74–78).

Thus divine secrecy is a theme that runs throughout the *Gītā*, building toward Krishna's full disclosure in the final chapter of all the various forms of secret knowledge that comprise "the supreme secret of yoga." Krishna identifies the first two phases of secrecy explicitly, as the "secret" and the "greater secret":

Thus for you this knowledge,
 which is a greater secret
 than the [previous] secret,
 is made known by me.
 Having fully grasped this,
 with nothing overlooked,
 then act as you so choose.

(BG 18.63)

It is clear from this verse that Krishna gives Arjuna the freedom to either act in accordance with this secret knowledge or not, demonstrating free will within supreme love. Then Krishna discloses the third phase of secrecy, his greatest secret among all secrets:

Hear still further
 the greatest secret of all,
 my supreme message:
 "You are so much loved by me!"
 Therefore I shall speak
 for your well-being.

(BG 18.64)

This secret of divine secrets is now revealed: "You are so much loved by me!" The simple message here is that the divinity passionately loves souls, as indicated by the use of the Sanskrit word *iṣṭaḥ*, meaning "desired" or "ardently loved," and the use of the adverbial intensive *so much*. These few words constitute the very essence of the song or "Gītā" of the Beloved Lord. Every verse in the Bhagavad Gītā thus revolves around these words. Krishna underscores this declaration of divine love by calling it his "supreme message," and further emphasizes the message with the use of the Sanskrit equivalent of quotation marks. This ultimate statement establishes the tone of the entire text, the inner intention of the author, and the controlling principle for understanding the text. No other statement in the Gītā receives such attention.

Krishna builds up to the revelation of this greatest secret, as we have seen, with a dramatic summary of his teachings in the first sixty-three verses of the chapter, thus positioning the greatest

secret of all as the climax of the work. In verse 65, following this greatest secret, Krishna urges souls to love him, and promises that they will come to him since they are “dearly loved” by him:

Be mindful of me
 with love offered to me;
 sacrificing for me,
 act out of reverence for me.
 Truly you shall
 come to me—
 this I promise you
 for you are dearly loved by me.
 (BG 18.65)

This verse reveals that the best possible response of souls to Krishna’s greatest of all secrets is bhakti, the love offered by the soul to the supreme divinity. Bhakti, therefore, is not merely a means to reach the divine, but is itself the perfection of all other means for attaining an intimate connection with the divinity in yoga.

Many commentators, beginning with Rāmānuja of the twelfth century, consider the next verse, BG 18.66, to be the Gītā’s ultimate statement. Here, Krishna states his desire that souls give up everything and come to him as their only refuge. He provides divine assurance that such souls will be free from all troubles:

Completely relinquishing
 all forms of dharma,
 come to me
 as your only shelter.
 I shall grant you
 freedom from
 all misfortune—
 do not despair!
 (BG 18.66)

Krishna presents in this verse a certain irony, even an apparent contradiction, when he directs all forms of dharma to be completely given up, after a significant part of the text has been devoted to establishing the importance of dharma. This request expresses

Krishna's desire for the unmediated love of humans, accentuated by his plea to come to him as one's only shelter. This verse communicates a divine passion for souls, and how such love between the devotee and the divinity is ultimately not limited by dharma. Divine love goes beyond dharma, yet at the same time includes dharma.

Yoga at its highest level is the soul's intimate connection with the divine through the heart. Yoga, for divinity, is the various manifestations of the divine that embrace souls: the all-pervading imperishable Brahman; the presence of divinity in the beautiful and sublime in this world; the powerful and spectacular Vishva Rūpa; the supreme Self dwelling in the hearts of all as the Purusha; and the supreme personal divinity, Krishna, celebrated as Purushottama, the ultimate Person; or Yogeshvara, the supreme Lord of Yoga; or Bhagavān, the Beloved Lord—the most intimate deity for the loving devotee. Through these divine manifestations, the supreme divinity is revealed to souls or concealed from souls according to their desire or lack of desire to come to him, to unite with him.

According to the Gītā, yoga is not a reclusive meditation in some distant mountain hermitage; rather, the hermitage is found within one's heart, and in the hearts of others. The ultimate yoga for souls is to attain a state of full-heartedness — a heart that offers itself in unremitting, unconditional love in response to the divine yearning. This yearning, the greatest secret of all, is pronounced as "You are so much loved by me."

The Bhagavad Gītā is truly the Beloved Lord's "secret love song." This ever-beckoning song urges souls to embrace divinity just as divinity forever embraces souls. The Gītā begins with a question that speaks to every one of us: "How are we to act in this world of conflict and suffering?" The Gītā's answer is simply *to act out of love*. This hidden song of the divinity calls souls to *act out of love* in all that they do, in all that they think, feel, and will. The Gītā insists that human life is meant for hearing this innermost song of the heart. It behooves souls to search for this song, and upon hearing it, to listen to the divine love song as it resonates in everything, everywhere, and at every moment—to hear it through the hearts of all beings and in all of life. Once heard, this secret love song is celebrated as the most blessed gift of divinity to humankind.

Sanskrit Text

On the English Transliteration

The original Sanskrit text is provided here in transliteration. For this I have relied upon the critical edition of the text and its verse divisions presented in the great work of the Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute (BORI), in Pune, India (see Bibliography). Although popular editions of the BG contain some differences in verse division and numbering in chapters I and I3, I have mostly utilized the BORI edition of the text. Readers may find the transliteration helpful in reconciling differences from other translations.

The transliterated text that appears here has been formatted to give nonspecialist readers a visual sense of the versification of the original Sanskrit. The typical eight-syllable quarter-lined metered verses, or *anuṣṭubh*, appear as couplets of Sanskrit text, the quarter lines indicated by commas. For example:

dharma-kṣetre kuru-kṣetre, samavetā yuyutsavaḥ |
māmakāḥ pāṇḍavāś caiva, kim akurvata sañjaya || I.1 ||

The eleven-syllable quarter-lined verses, or *triṣṭubh*, appear as quatrains, easily distinguishable from the more common two-line *anuṣṭubh* verses by the four lines of embellished metered verses. For example:

gurūn ahatvā hi mahānubhāvān
śreyo bhoktuṁ bhaiṣyam apīha loke |
hatvārtha-kāmāns tu gurūn ihaiva
bhuñjīya bhogān rudhira-pradigdhān || 2.5 ||

The English translation also imitates this visual distinction between the couplets of the *anuṣṭubh* verses and the quatrains of the longer verse form. This is accomplished in the translated *anuṣṭubh* verses by presenting two “leading lines,” nonindented lines of text, followed by one or more indented lines. Likewise, for the more complex *triṣṭubh* verses, I have presented four leading lines, each followed by one or more indented lines.

Recitation of Sanskrit Verse

Sanskrit distinguishes between accent and length of syllables. Syllables within words are spoken in either short or long (held twice the length as short) lengths of time, also called light and heavy respectively, and there are numerous varieties of poetic meters for many types of verse lengths. Following are basic rules to acquaint the reader with the recitation of Sanskrit verse, so important to the language.

ACCENT

1. The first syllable of two-syllable words: e.g., *bhakti*, *deva*;
2. The penultimate syllable of all words having more than two syllables if the syllable contains a long vowel, a diphthong, or a short vowel followed by two consonants: e.g., *nirvāna*, *Ganeśa*, *gr̥hastha*;
3. The antepenultimate syllable in most other cases: e.g., *Mahābhārata*, *Himālaya*, *Rāmāyana*, *Upaniṣad*.

LIGHT AND HEAVY SYLLABLES IN POETIC METER

1. Light syllables (*laghu*) are those made up of short vowels which are not followed by more than one consonant (*anusvāra* "ṁ" and *avagraha* "ḥ" included), either within a word or between words. Light syllables are short, half the length of heavy or long syllables. For example, *nama oṃ viṣṇupādāya* (underlined vowels indicate light syllables).
2. Heavy syllables (*guru*) are those made up of long vowels or those made up of short vowels followed by more than one consonant (*anusvāra* "ṁ" and *avagraha* "ḥ" included), either within a word or between words. For example, *nama oṃ viṣṇupādāya* (underlined vowels indicate heavy syllables).

The Complete Sanskrit Text

I

Dhṛtarāṣṭra uvāca

- 1 dharma-kṣetre kuru-kṣetre, samavetā yuyutsavaḥ |
māmakāḥ pāṇḍavāś caiva, kim akurvata sañjaya ||

Sañjaya uvāca

- 2 dṛṣṭvā tu pāṇḍavānīkaṁ, vyūḍhaṁ duryodhanas tadā |
ācāryam upasaṅgamyā, rājā vacanam abravīt ||
3 paśyaitāṁ pāṇḍu-putrāṇāṁ, ācārya mahatīm camūm |
vyūḍhāṁ drupada-putreṇa, tava śiṣyeṇa dhīmatā ||
4 atra śūrā maheṣv-āsā, bhīmārjuna-samā yudhi |
yuyudhāno virāṭaś ca, drupadaś ca mahā-rathaḥ ||
5 dhṛṣṭaketuś cekitānaḥ, kāśīrājaś ca vīryavān |
puruḥjit kuntibhojaś ca, śaibyaś ca nara-puṅgavaḥ ||
6 yudhāmanyuś ca vikrānta, uttamaujāś ca vīryavān |
saubhadro draupadeyāś ca, sarva eva mahā-rathāḥ ||
7 asmākaṁ tu viśiṣṭā ye, tān nibhoda dvijottama |
nāyakā mama sāinyasya, saṁjñārthaṁ tān bravīmi te ||
8 bhavān bhīṣmaś ca karṇaś ca, kṛpaś ca samitīm-jayaḥ |
aśvatthāmā vikarṇaś ca, saudamattis tathaiva ca ||
9 anye ca bahavaḥ śūrā, mad-arthe tyakta-jīvitāḥ |
nānā-śastra-praharaṇāḥ, sarve yuddha-viśāradāḥ ||
10 aparyāptaṁ tad asmākaṁ, balaṁ bhīṣmābhirakṣitam |
paryāptaṁ tv idam eteṣāṁ, balaṁ bhīmābhirakṣitam ||
11 ayaṇeṣu ca sarveṣu, yathā-bhāgam avasthitāḥ |
bhīṣmam evābhirakṣantu, bhavantaḥ sarva eva hi ||
12 tasya sañjanayan haṛṣaṁ, kuru-vṛddhaḥ pitāmahaḥ |
sīṁha-nādaṁ vinadyoccaiḥ, śaṅkhaṁ dadhmau pratāpavān ||
13 tataḥ śaṅkhāś ca bheryaś ca, paṇavānaka-gomukhāḥ |
sahasaiṅgābhyahanyanta, sa śabdas tumulo 'bhavat ||
14 tataḥ śvetair hayair yukte, mahati syandane sthitau |
mādhavaḥ pāṇḍavaś caiva, divyau śaṅkhau pradadhmauḥ ||
15 pāñcājanyaṁ hrīṣīkeśo, devadattaṁ dhanañjayaḥ |
pauṇḍraṁ dadhmau mahā-śaṅkhaṁ, bhīma-karmā vṛkodaraḥ ||
16 anantavijayaṁ rājā, kunti-putro yudhiṣṭhiraḥ |
nakulaḥ sahadēvaś ca, sughoṣa-maṇipuṣpakau ||
17 kāśyaś ca parameṣv-āsaḥ, śikhāṇḍī ca mahā-rathaḥ |
dhṛṣṭadyumno virāṭaś ca, sāt看akiś cāparājitaḥ ||

- 18 drupado draupadeyās ca, sarvaśaḥ pṛthivī-pate |
 saubhadraś ca mahā-bāhuḥ, śāṅkhān dadhmuḥ pṛthak pṛthak ||
- 19 sa ghoṣo dhārtarāṣṭrāṇām, hṛdayāni vyadārayat |
 nabhaś ca pṛthivīm caiva, tumulo vyanunādayan ||
- 20 atha vyavasthitān dṛṣṭvā, dhārtarāṣṭrān kapi-dhvajaḥ |
 pravṛtte śāstra-sampāte, dhanur udyamya pāṇḍavaḥ ||
- 21 hṛṣīkeśaṁ tadā vākyam, idam āha mahī-pate |
 senayor ubhayor madhye, rathaṁ sthāpaya me 'cyuta ||
- 22 yāvad etān nirikṣe 'haṁ, yoddhu-kāmān avasthitān |
 kair mayā saha yoddhavyam, asmin raṇa-samudyame ||
- 23 yotsyamānān avekṣe 'haṁ, ya ete 'tra samāgatāḥ |
 dhārtarāṣṭrasya durbuddher, yuddhe priya-cikīrṣavaḥ ||
- 24 evam ukto hṛṣīkeśo, guḍākeśena bhārata |
 senayor ubhayor madhye, sthāpayitvā rathottamam ||
- 25 bhīṣma-droṇa-pramukhataḥ, sarveśāṁ ca mahī-kṣitām |
 uvāca pārtha paśyaitān, samavetān kurūn iti ||
- 26 tatrāpaśyat sthitān pārthaḥ, pitṛn atha pitāmahān |
 ācāryān mātulān bhrātṛn, putrān pautrān sakhiṁś tathā ||
- 27 śvaśurān suhṛdaś caiva, senayor ubhayor api |
 tān samikṣya sa kaunteyaḥ, sarvān bandhūn avasthitān ||
- 28 kṛpayā parayāviṣṭo, viśīdann idam abravīt |
 dṛṣṭvemān sva-janān kṛṣṇa, yuyutsūn samavasthitān ||
- 29 sīdanti mama gātrāṇi, mukhaṁ ca pariśuśyati |
 vepathuś ca śarīre me, roma-harṣaś ca jāyate ||
- 30 gāṇḍivam sraṁsate hastāt, tvak caiva paridahyate |
 na ca śaknoṃy avasthātum, bhramatīva ca me manaḥ ||
- 31 nimittāni ca paśyāmi, viparītāni keśava |
 na ca śreyo 'nupaśyāmi, hatvā sva-janam āhave ||
- 32 na kāṅkṣe vijayaṁ kṛṣṇa, na ca rājyaṁ sukhāni ca |
 kiṁ no rājyena govinda, kiṁ bhogair jīvitena vā ||
- 33 yeśāṁ arthe kāṅkṣitaṁ no, rājyaṁ bhogaḥ sukhāni ca |
 ta ime 'vasthitā yuddhe, prāṇāṁś tyaktvā dhanāni ca ||
- 34 ācāryāḥ pitarāḥ putrāś, tathaiva ca pitāmahāḥ |
 mātulāḥ śvaśurāḥ pautrāḥ, śyālāḥ sambandhinas tathā ||
- 35 etān na hantum icchāmi, ghnato 'pi madhusūdana |
 api trailokya-rājyasya, hetoḥ kiṁ nu mahī-kṛte ||
- 36 nihatya dhārtarāṣṭrān naḥ, kā prītiḥ syāj janārdana |
 pāpam evāśrayed asmān, hatvaitān ātatāyinaḥ ||
- 37 tasmān nārthā vyaṁ hantum, dhārtarāṣṭrān sa-bāndhavān |
 sva-janaṁ hi kathaṁ hatvā, sukhinaḥ syāma mādhabaḥ ||
- 38 yady apy ete na paśyanti, lobhopahata-cetasāḥ |
 kula-kṣaya-kṛtaṁ doṣaṁ, mitra-drohe ca pātakam ||
- 39 kathaṁ na jñeyam asmābhiḥ, pāpād asmān nivartitum |
 kula-kṣaya-kṛtaṁ doṣaṁ, prapaśyadbhir janārdana ||

- 40 kula-kṣaye praṇaśyanti, kula-dharmāḥ sanātanaḥ |
dharṁe naṣṭe kulaṁ kṛtsnam, adharmo 'bhibhavaty uta ||
- 41 adharmābhibhavāt kṛṣṇa, praduṣyanti kula-striyaḥ |
striṣu duṣṭāsu vārṣṇeya, jāyate varṇa-saṅkaraḥ ||
- 42 saṅkaro narakāyaiva, kula-ghnānām kulasya ca |
patanti pitaro hy eṣāṁ, luṭṭa-piṇḍodaka-kriyāḥ ||
- 43 doṣair etaḥ kula-ghnānām, varṇa-saṅkara-kāraṇaiḥ |
utsādyante jāti-dharmāḥ, kula-dharmāś ca śāśvatāḥ ||
- 44 utsanna-kula-dharmāṇām, manuṣyāṇām janārdana |
narake niyataṁ vāso, bhavatīty anuśūruma ||
- 45 aho bata mahat pāpaṁ, kartuṁ vyavasitā vayam |
yad-rājya-sukha-lobhena, hantuṁ sva-janam udyatāḥ ||
- 46 yadi mām apratikāram, āśāstraṁ śāstra-pāṇayaḥ |
dhārtarāṣṭrā raṇe hanyus, tan me kṣematarāṁ bhavet ||
- 47 evam uktvārjunaḥ saṅkhye, rathopastha upāviśat |
viṣṭjya sa-śaraṁ cāpaṁ, śoka-saṁvigna-mānasaḥ ||

2

Saṁjaya uvāca

- 1 taṁ tathā kṛpayāviṣṭam, āśru-pūrṇākulekṣaṇam |
viṣīdantam idaṁ vākyam, uvāca madhusūdanaḥ ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 2 kutas tvā kaśmalam idaṁ, viṣame samupasthitam |
anārya-juṣṭam asvargyam, akīrti-karam arjuna ||
- 3 klaiḍyaṁ mā sma gamaḥ pārtha, naitat tvayy upapadyate |
kṣudraṁ hṛdaya-daurbalyaṁ, tyaktvottiṣṭha parantapa ||

Arjuna uvāca

- 4 kathaṁ bhīṣmam ahaṁ saṅkhye, droṇaṁ ca madhusūdana |
iṣubhiḥ pratiyotsyāmi, pūjārḥāv ari-sūdana ||
- 5 gurūn ahatvā hi mahānubhāvān
śreyo bhoktuṁ bhaikṣyam apīha loka |
hatvārtha-kāmāṁs tu gurūn ihaiva
bhuñjīya bhogān rudhira-pradigdhān ||
- 6 na caitad vidmaḥ katarān no garīyo
yad vā jayema yadi vā no jayeyuh |
yān eva hatvā na jijīviṣāmas
te 'vasthitāḥ pramukhe dhārtarāṣṭrāḥ ||

- 7 kārpaṇya-doṣopahata-svabhāvaḥ
 prcchāmi tvāṁ dharma-saṁmūḍha-cetāḥ |
 yac chreyaḥ syān niścitaṁ brūhi tan me
 śiṣyas te 'ham śādhi mām tvāṁ prapannam ||
- 8 na hi prapaśyāmi mamāpanudyād
 yac chokam ucchoṣaṇam indriyāṇām |
 avāpya bhūmāv asapatnam ṛddham
 rājyaṁ surāṇām api cādhipatyam ||

Saṁjaya uvāca

- 9 evam uktvā hr̥ṣīkeśaṁ, guḍākeśaḥ parantapaḥ |
 na yotsya iti govindam, uktvā tūṣṇīm babbhūva ha ||
- 10 tam uvāca hr̥ṣīkeśaḥ, prahasann iva bhārata |
 senayor ubhayor madhye, viśīdantam idam vacaḥ ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 11 aśocyaṁ anvaśocas tvāṁ, prajñā-vādānīs ca bhāṣase |
 gatāsūn agatāsūnīs ca, nānuśocanti paṇḍitāḥ ||
- 12 na tv evāhaṁ jātu nāsaṁ, na tvāṁ neme janādhipāḥ |
 na caiva na bhaviṣyāmaḥ, sarve vayam ataḥ param ||
- 13 dehino 'smin yathā dehe, kaumāraṁ yauvanaṁ jarā |
 tathā dehāntara-prāptir, dhīras tatra na muhyati ||
- 14 mātṛā-sparśās tu kaunteya, śītoṣṇa-sukha-duḥkha-dāḥ |
 āgamāpāyino 'nityās, tānīs titikṣasva bhārata ||
- 15 yaṁ hi na vyathayanty ete, puruṣaṁ puruṣarṣabha |
 sama-duḥkha-sukhaṁ dhīraṁ, so 'mṛtatvāya kalpate ||
- 16 nāsato vidyate bhāvo, nābhāvo vidyate sataḥ |
 ubhayor api dṛṣṭo 'ntas, tv anayos tattva-darśibhiḥ ||
- 17 avināśī tu tad viddhi, yena sarvam idaṁ tatam |
 vināśam avyayasyāsyā, na kaścit kartum arhati ||
- 18 antavanta ime dehā, nityasyoktāḥ śarīriṇaḥ |
 anāśīno 'prameyasya, tasmād yudhyasva bhārata ||
- 19 ya enam veti hantāraṁ, yaś cainaṁ manyate hatam |
 ubhau tau na vijānīto, nāyaṁ hanti na hanyate ||
- 20 na jāyate mriyate vā kadācin
 nāyaṁ bhūtvā bhavitā vā na bhūyaḥ |
 ajo nityaḥ śāśvato 'yaṁ purāṇo
 na hanyate hanyamāne śarīre ||
- 21 vedāvināśīnaṁ nityaṁ, ya enam ajam avyayam |
 kathaṁ sa puruṣaḥ pārtha, kaṁ ghātayati hanti kam ||

- 22 vāsāṁsi jīrṇāṇi yathā vihāya
navāni gṛhṇāti naro 'parāṇi |
tathā śarīrāṇi vihāya jīrṇāṇy
anyāni saṁyāti navāni dehī ||
- 23 nainam chindanti śastrāṇi, nainam dahati pāvakaḥ |
na cainam kledayanty āpo, na śoṣayati mārutaḥ ||
- 24 acchedyo 'yam adāhyo 'yam, akledyo 'śoṣya eva ca |
nityaḥ sarva-gataḥ sthāṇur, acalo 'yam sanātanaḥ ||
- 25 avyakto 'yam acintyo 'yam, avikāryo 'yam ucyate |
tasmād evam viditvainam, nānuśocitum arhasi ||
- 26 atha cainam nitya-jātam, nityam vā manyase mṛtam |
tathāpi tvam mahā-bāho, nainam śocitum arhasi ||
- 27 jātasya hi dhruvo mṛtyur, dhruvam janma mṛtasya ca |
tasmād aparihārye 'rthe, na tvam śocitum arhasi ||
- 28 avyaktādīni bhūtāni, vyakta-madhyāni bhārata |
avyakta-nidhanāny eva, tatra kā paridevanā
- 29 āścarya-vat paśyati kaścīd enam
āścarya-vad vadati tathaiva cānyaḥ |
āścarya-vac cainam anyaḥ śṛṇoti
śrutvāpy enam veda na caiva kaścīd ||
- 30 dehī nityam avadhyo 'yam, dehe sarvasya bhārata |
tasmāt sarvāṇi bhūtāni, na tvam śocitum arhasi ||
- 31 sva-dharmam apī cāvekṣya, na vikampitum arhasi |
dharmyād dhi yuddhāc chreyo 'nyat, kṣatriyasya na vidyate ||
- 32 yadṛcchayā copapannam, svarga-dvāram apāvṛtam |
sukhinaḥ kṣatriyāḥ pārtha, labhante yuddham īdṛśam ||
- 33 atha cet tvam imam dharmyam, saṅgrāmam na kariṣyasi |
tataḥ sva-dharmam kīrtim ca, hitvā pāpam avāpsyasi ||
- 34 akīrtim cāpi bhūtāni, kathayiṣyanti te 'vyayam |
sambhāvitasya cākīrtir, maraṇād atiricyate ||
- 35 bhayād raṇād uparataḥ, maṁsyante tvam mahā-rathāḥ |
yeṣāṁ ca tvam bahu-mato, bhūtvā yāsyasi lāghavam ||
- 36 avācya-vādāmś ca bahūn, vadiṣyanti tavāhitāḥ |
nindantas tava sāmarmyam, tato duḥkhatarām nu kim ||
- 37 hato vā prāpsyasi svargam, jitvā vā bhokṣyase mahim |
tasmād uttiṣṭha kaunteya, yuddhāya kṛta-niścayaḥ ||
- 38 sukha-duḥkhe same kṛtvā, lābhālābhau jayājayau |
tato yuddhāya yujyasva, naivam pāpam avāpsyasi ||
- 39 eṣa te 'bhihitā sāṅkhye, buddhir yoge tv imam śṛṇu |
buddhyā yukto yayā pārtha, karma-bandham prahāsyasi ||
- 40 nehābhikrama-nāśo 'sti, pratyavāyo na vidyate |
sv-alpam apy asya dharmasya, trāyate mahato bhayāt ||

- 41 vyavasāyātmikā buddhir, ekeha kuru-nandana |
 bahu-śākhā hy anantās ca, buddhayo 'vyavasāyinām ||
- 42 yām imām puṣpitām vācam, pravadanty avipaścitaḥ |
 veda-vāda-ratāḥ pārtha, nānyad astīti vādinaḥ ||
- 43 kāmātmānaḥ svarga-parā, janma-karma-phala-pradām |
 kriyā-viśeṣa-bahulām, bhogaiśvarya-gatiṁ prati ||
- 44 bhogaiśvarya-prasaktānām, tayāpahṛta-cetasām |
 vyavasāyātmikā buddhiḥ, samādhau na vidhīyate ||
- 45 traī-guṇya-viśayā vedā, nistrai-guṇyo bhavārjuna |
 nirdvandvo nitya-sattva-stho, niryoga-kṣema ātmavān ||
- 46 yāvān artha udapāne, sarvataḥ samplutodake |
 tāvān sarveṣu vedeṣu, brāhmaṇasya vijānataḥ ||
- 47 karmaṇy evādhikāras te, mā phaleṣu kadācana |
 mā karma-phala-hetur bhūr, mā te saṅgo 'stv akarmaṇi ||
- 48 yoga-sthaḥ kuru karmāṇi, saṅgam tyaktvā dhanañjaya |
 siddhy-asiddhyoḥ samo bhūtvā, samatvaṁ yoga ucyate ||
- 49 dūreṇa hy avaraṁ karma, buddhi-yogād dhanañjaya |
 buddhau śaraṇam anviccha, kṛpaṇaḥ phala-hetavaḥ ||
- 50 buddhi-yukto jahātiha, ubhe sukṛta-duṣkṛte |
 tasmād yogāya yujyasva, yogaḥ karmasu kauśalam ||
- 51 karma-jaṁ buddhi-yuktā, hi phalaṁ tyaktvā manīṣiṇaḥ |
 janma-bandha-vinirmuktāḥ, padaṁ gacchanty anāmayaṁ ||
- 52 yadā te moha-kalilaṁ, buddhir vyatitariṣyati |
 tadā gantāsi nirvedaṁ, śrotavyasya śrutasya ca ||
- 53 śruti-vipratipannā te, yadā sthāsyati niścalā |
 samādhāv acalā buddhis, tadā yogam avāpsyasi ||

Arjuna uvāca

- 54 sthita-prajñasya kā bhāṣā, samādhi-sthasya keśava |
 sthita-dhīḥ kiṁ prabhāṣeta, kiṁ āsīta vrajeta kim ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 55 prajahāti yadā kāmān, sarvān pārtha mano-gatān |
 ātmany evātmanā tuṣṭaḥ, sthita-prajñas tadocyate ||
- 56 duḥkheṣv anudvigna-manāḥ, sukheṣu vigata-sprṇaḥ |
 vīta-rāga-bhaya-krodhaḥ, sthita-dhīr munir ucyate ||
- 57 yaḥ sarvatrānabhisnehas, tat tat prāpya śubhāśubham |
 nābhinandati na dveṣṭi, tasya prajñā pratiṣṭhitā ||
- 58 yadā saṁharate cāyaṁ, kūrmo 'ṅgānīva sarvaśaḥ |
 indriyāṇindriyārthebhyas, tasya prajñā pratiṣṭhitā ||
- 59 viśayā vinivartante, nirāhārasya dehinaḥ |
 rasa-varjaṁ raso 'py asya, param dṛṣṭvā nivartate ||

- 60 yatato hy api kaunteya, puruṣasya vipaścitaḥ |
indriyāṇi pramāthīni, haranti prasabham manaḥ ||
- 61 tāni sarvāṇi saṁyamya, yukta āsīta mat-paraḥ |
vaśe hi yasyendriyāṇi, tasya prajñā pratiṣṭhitā ||
- 62 dhyāyato viśayān puṁsaḥ, saṅgas teṣūpajāyate |
saṅgāt sañjāyate kāmaḥ, kāmāt krodho 'bhijāyate ||
- 63 krodhād bhavati sammohaḥ, sammohāt smṛti-vibhramaḥ |
smṛti-bhramśād buddhi-nāśo, buddhi-nāśāt praṇaśyati ||
- 64 rāga-dveṣa-viyuktais tu, viśayān indriyaiś caran |
ātma-vaśyair vidheyātmnā, prasādam adhigacchati ||
- 65 prasāde sarva-duḥkhānām, hānir asyopajāyate |
prasanna-cetaso hy āśu, buddhiḥ paryavatiṣṭhate ||
- 66 nāsti buddhir ayuktasya, na cāyuktasya bhāvanā |
na cābhāvayataḥ śāntir, aśāntasya kutaḥ sukham ||
- 67 indriyāṇām hi caratām, yan mano 'nuvidhīyate |
tad asya harati prajñām, vāyur nāvam ivāmbhasi ||
- 68 tasmād yasya mahā-bāho, nigṛhītāni sarvaśaḥ |
indriyāṇīndriyārthebhyas, tasya prajñā pratiṣṭhitā ||
- 69 yā niśā sarva-bhūtānām, tasyām jāgarti saṁyamī |
yasyām jāgrati bhūtāni, sā niśā paśyato muneh | ||
- 70 āpūryamāṇam acala-pratiṣṭhan
samudram āpaḥ praviśanti yadvat |
tadvat kāmā yaṁ praviśanti sarve
sa śāntim āpnoti na kāma-kāmī ||
- 71 vihāya kāmān yaḥ sarvān, pumāṁś carati niḥspṛhaḥ |
nirmamo nirahaṅkāraḥ, sa śāntim adhigacchati ||
- 72 eṣā brāhmī sthitiḥ pārtha, nainām prāpya vimuhyati |
sthitvāsyām anta-kāle 'pi, brahma-nirvāṇam ṛcchati ||

3

Arjuna uvāca

- 1 jyāyāsī cet karmaṇas te, matā buddhir janārdana |
tat kiṁ karmaṇi ghore mām, niyojayasi keśava ||
- 2 vyāmiśreṇaiva vākyena, buddhiṁ mohayasīva me |
tad ekaṁ vada niścītya, yena śreyo 'ham āpnuyām ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 3 loke 'smin dvi-vidhā niṣṭhā, purā proktā mayānagha |
jñāna-yogena sāṅkhyānām, karma-yogena yoginām ||
- 4 na karmaṇām anārambhān, naiṣkarmyaṁ puruṣo 'śnute |
na ca saṁnyasanād eva, siddhiṁ samadhigacchati ||

- 5 na hi kaścit kṣaṇam api, jātu tiṣṭhaty akarma-kṛt |
 kāryate hy avaśaḥ karma, sarvaḥ prakṛti-jair guṇaiḥ ||
 6 karmendriyāṇi sarīyamya, ya āste manasā smaran |
 indriyārthān vimūḍhātmā, mithyācāraḥ sa ucyate ||
 7 yas tv indriyāṇi manasā, niyamyārabhate 'rjuna |
 karmendriyaiḥ karma-yogam, asaktaḥ sa viśiṣyate ||
 8 niyataṁ kuru karma tvaṁ, karma jyāyo hy akarmaṇaḥ |
 śarīra-yātrāpi ca te, na prasiddhyed akarmaṇaḥ ||
 9 yajñārthāt karmaṇo 'nyatra, loko 'yam karma-bandhanaḥ |
 tad-arthaṁ karma kaunteya, mukta-saṅgaḥ samācara ||
 10 saha-yajñāḥ prajāḥ sṛṣṭvā, purovāca prajāpatiḥ |
 anena prasaviṣyadhvam, eṣa vo 'stv iṣṭa-kāma-dhuk ||
 11 devān bhāvayatānena, te devā bhāvayantu vaḥ |
 parasparaṁ bhāvayantaḥ, śreyasḥ param avāpsyatha ||
 12 iṣṭān bhogān hi vo devā, dāsyante yajña-bhāvitāḥ |
 tair dattān apradāyaibhyo, yo bhuṅkte stena eva saḥ ||
 13 yajña-śiṣṭāśinaḥ santo, mucyante sarva-kilbiṣaiḥ |
 bhuñjate te tv aghaṁ pāpā, ye pacanty ātma-kāraṇāt ||
 14 annād bhavanti bhūtāni, parjanyaḍ anna-sambhavaḥ |
 yajñād bhavati parjanya, yajñaḥ karma-samudbhavaḥ ||
 15 karma brahmodbhavaṁ viddhi, brahmākṣara-samudbhavam |
 tasmāt sarva-gataṁ brahma, nityaṁ yajñe pratiṣṭhitam ||
 16 evaṁ pravartitaṁ cakraṁ, nānuvartayatīha yaḥ |
 aghāyur indriyārāmo, moghaṁ pārtha sa jīvati ||
 17 yas tv ātma-ratir eva syād, ātma-tṛptaś ca mānavaḥ |
 ātmany eva ca santuṣṭas, tasya kāryaṁ na vidyate ||
 18 naiva tasya kṛtenārtho, nākṛteneha kaścana |
 na cāsyā sarva bhūteṣu, kaścid artha-vyapāśrayaḥ ||
 19 tasmād asaktaḥ satataṁ, kāryaṁ karma samācara |
 asakto hy ācaran karma, param āpnoti pūruṣaḥ ||
 20 karmaṇaiva hi saṁsiddhim, āsthitā janakādayaḥ |
 loka-saṅgraham evāpi, sampaśyan kartum arhasi ||
 21 yad yad ācarati śreṣṭhas, tat tad evetaro janaḥ |
 sa yat pramāṇaṁ kurute, lokas tad anuvartate ||
 22 na me pārthāsti kartavyaṁ, triṣu lokeṣu kiñcana |
 nānavāptam avāptavyaṁ, varta eva ca karmaṇi ||
 23 yadī hy ahaṁ na varteyaṁ, jātu karmaṇy atandritaḥ |
 mama vartmānuvartante, manuṣyāḥ pārtha sarvaśaḥ ||
 24 utsīdeyur ime lokā, na kuryāṁ karma ced aham |
 saṅkarasya ca kartā syām, upahanyām imāḥ prajāḥ ||
 25 saktāḥ karmaṇy avidvāṁso, yathā kurvanti bhārata |
 kuryād vidvāṁs tathāsaktaś, cikīrṣur loka-saṅgraham ||

- 26 na buddhi-bhedam janayed, ajñānām karma-saṅginām |
joṣayet sarva-karmāṇi, vidvān yuktaḥ samācaran ||
- 27 prakṛteḥ kriyamāṇāni, guṇaiḥ karmāṇi sarvaśaḥ |
ahaṅkāra-vimūḍhātmā, kartāham iti manyate ||
- 28 tattva-vit tu mahā-bāho, guṇa-karma-vibhāgayoḥ |
guṇā guṇeṣu vartanta, iti matvā na sajjate ||
- 29 prakṛter guṇa-sammūḍhāḥ, sajjante guṇa-karmasu |
tān akṛtsna-vido mandān, kṛtsna-vin na vicālayet ||
- 30 mayi sarvāṇi karmāṇi, saṁnyasyādhyātma-cetasā |
nirāśir nirmamo bhūtvā, yudhyasva vigata-jvaraḥ ||
- 31 ye me matam idaṁ nityam, anuṣṭhanti mānavāḥ |
śraddhāvanto 'nasūyanto, mucyante te 'pi karmabhiḥ ||
- 32 te tv etad adhyasūyanto, nānuṣṭhanti me matam |
sarva-jñāna-vimūḍhāṁs tān, viddhi naṣṭān acetasaḥ ||
- 33 sadṛśaṁ ceṣṭate svasyāḥ, prakṛter jñānavān api |
prakṛtiṁ yānti bhūtāni, nigrahaḥ kiṁ kariṣyati ||
- 34 indriyasyendriyasyārthe, rāga-dveṣau vyavasthitau |
tayoṛ na vaśam āgachet, tau hy asya paripanthinau ||
- 35 śreyān sva-dharmo viguṇaḥ, para-dharmāt sv-anuṣṭhitāt |
sva-dharṁ nidhanam śreyāḥ, para-dharmo bhayāvahaḥ ||

Arjuna uvāca

- 36 atha kena prayukto 'yaṁ, pāpam carati pūruṣaḥ |
anicchann api vārṣṇeya, balād iva niyojitaḥ ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 37 kāma eṣa krodha eṣa, rajo-guṇa-samudbhavaḥ |
mahāśano mahā-pāpmā, viddhy enam iha vairiṇam ||
- 38 dhūmenāvriyate vahnir, yathādarśo malena ca |
yatholbenāvṛto garbhas, tathā tenedam āvṛtam ||
- 39 āvṛtam jñānam etena, jñānino nitya-vairiṇā |
kāma-rūpeṇa kaunteya, duṣpūreṇānalena ca ||
- 40 indriyāṇi mano buddhir, asyādhiṣṭhānam ucyate |
etair vimohayaty eṣa, jñānam āvṛtya dehinam ||
- 41 tasmāt tvam indriyāṇy ādau, niyamy bharataṣabha |
pāpmānam prajahi hy enam, jñāna-vijñāna-nāśanam ||
- 42 indriyāṇi parāṇy āhur, indriyebhyaḥ paraṁ manaḥ |
manasas tu parā buddhir, yo buddheḥ paratas tu saḥ ||
- 43 evaṁ buddheḥ paraṁ buddhvā, saṁstabhyātmānam ātmanā |
jahi śatruṁ mahā-bāho, kāma-rūpaṁ durāsadam ||

4

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 1 imāṁ vivasvate yogaṁ, proktavān aham avyayam |
vivasvān manave prāha, manur ikṣvākave 'bravīt ||
- 2 evaṁ paramparā-prāptam, imāṁ rājarṣayo viduḥ |
sa kālenecha mahatā, yogo naṣṭaḥ parantapa ||
- 3 sa evāyaṁ mayā te 'dya, yogaḥ proktaḥ purātanaḥ |
bhakto 'si me sakhā ceti, rahasyaṁ hy etad uttamam ||

Arjuna uvāca

- 4 aparaṁ bhavato janma, paraṁ janma vivasvataḥ |
katham etad vijānīyāṁ, tvam ādau proktavān iti ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 5 bahūni me vyatītāni, janmāni tava cārjuna |
tāny ahaṁ veda sarvāṇi, na tvaṁ vettha parantapa ||
- 6 ajo 'pi sann avyayātmā, bhūtānāṁ īśvaro 'pi san |
prakṛtiṁ svām adhiṣṭhāya, sambhavāmy ātma-māyayā ||
- 7 yadā yadā hi dharmasya, glānir bhavati bhārata |
abhyutthānam adharmaśya, tadātmānaṁ sṛjāmy aham ||
- 8 paritrāṇāya sādḥūnāṁ, vināśāya ca duṣkṛtām |
dharma-saṁsthāpanārthāya, sambhavāmi yuge yuge ||
- 9 janma karma ca me divyam, evaṁ yo vetti tattvataḥ |
tyaktvā dehaṁ punar janma, naiti mām eti so 'rjuna ||
- 10 vīta-rāga-bhaya-krodhā, man-mayā mām upāśritāḥ |
bahavo jñāna-tapasā, pūtā mad-bhāvam āgatāḥ ||
- 11 ye yathā mām prapadyante, tāṁs tathaiva bhajāmy aham |
mama vartmānuvartante, manuṣyāḥ pārtha sarvaśaḥ ||
- 12 kāṅkṣantaḥ karmanāṁ siddhiṁ, yajanta iha devatāḥ |
kṣipraṁ hi mānuṣe loke, siddhir bhavati karma-jā ||
- 13 cātur-varṇyaṁ mayā sṛṣṭaṁ, guṇa-karma-vibhāgaśaḥ |
tasya kartāram api mām, viddy akartāram avyayam ||
- 14 na mām karmāṇi limpanti, na me karma-phale spṛhā |
iti mām yo 'bhijānāti, karmabhir na sa badhyate ||
- 15 evaṁ jñātvā kṛtaṁ karma, pūrvair api mumukṣubhiḥ |
kuru karmaiva tasmāt tvaṁ, pūrvaiḥ pūrvataṁ kṛtam ||
- 16 kiṁ karma kim akarmeti, kavayo 'py atra mohitāḥ |
tat te karma pravakṣyāmi, yaj jñātvā mokṣyase 'śubhāt ||
- 17 karmaṇo hy api boddhavyaṁ, boddhavyaṁ ca vikarmaṇaḥ |
akarmaṇas ca boddhavyaṁ, gahanā karmaṇo gatīḥ ||

- 18 karmaṇy akarma yaḥ paśyed, akarmaṇi ca karma yaḥ |
sa buddhimān manuṣyeṣu, sa yuktaḥ kṛtsna-karma-kṛt ||
- 19 yasya sarve samārambhāḥ, kāma-saṅkalpa-varjitāḥ |
jñānāgni-dagdha-karmāṇaṁ, tam āhuḥ paṇḍitaṁ budhāḥ ||
- 20 tyaktvā karma-phalāsaṅgaṁ, nitya-tṛpto nirāśrayaḥ |
karmaṇy abhipravṛtto 'pi, naiva kiñcit karoti saḥ ||
- 21 nirāśir yata-cittātmā, tyakta-sarva-parigrahaḥ |
śārīraṁ kevalaṁ karma, kurvan nāpnoti kilbiṣam ||
- 22 yadṛcchā-lābha-santuṣṭo, dvandvātīto vimatsaraḥ |
samaḥ siddhāv asiddhau ca, kṛtvāpi na nibadhyate ||
- 23 gata-saṅgasya muktasya, jñānāvasthita-cetasah |
yajñāyācarataḥ karma, samagraṁ praviliyate ||
- 24 brahmārpaṇaṁ brahma havir, brahmāgnau brahmaṇā hutam |
brahmaiva tena gantavyaṁ, brahma-karma-samādhinā ||
- 25 daivam evāpare yajñam, yoginaḥ paryupāsate |
brahmāgnāv apare yajñam, yajñenaivopajuhvati ||
- 26 śrotrādīnīndriyāṇy anye, saṁyamāgniṣu juhvati |
śabdādīn viṣayān anyā, indriyāgniṣu juhvati ||
- 27 sarvānīndriya-karmāṇi, prāṇa-karmāṇi cāpare |
ātma-saṁyama-yogāgnau, juhvati jñāna-dīpitaḥ ||
- 28 dravya-yajñās tapo-yajñā, yoga-yajñās tathāpare |
svādhyāya-jñāna-yajñās ca, yatayaḥ saṁśīta-vratāḥ ||
- 29 apāne juhvati prāṇam, prāṇe 'pānaṁ tathāpare |
prāṇāpana-gatī ruddhvā, prāṇāyāma-parāyaṇāḥ ||
- 30 apare niyatāhārāḥ, prāṇān prāṇeṣu juhvati |
sarve 'py ete yajña-vido, yajña-kṣapita-kalmaṣāḥ ||
- 31 yajña-śiṣṭāmṛta-bhujo, yānti brahma sanātanaṁ |
nāyaṁ loko 'sty ayajñasya, kuto 'nyaḥ kuru-sattama ||
- 32 evaṁ bahu-vidhā yajñā, vitatā brahmaṇo mukhe |
karma-jān viddhi tān sarvān, evaṁ jñātvā vimokṣase ||
- 33 śreyān dravya-mayād yajñāḥ, jñāna-yajñāḥ parantapa |
sarvaṁ karmākhilaṁ pārtha, jñāne parisamāpyate ||
- 34 tad viddhi praṇipātena, paripraśnena sevayā |
upadekṣyanti te jñānaṁ, jñāninas tattva-darśinaḥ ||
- 35 yaj jñātvā na punar moham, evaṁ yāsyasi paṇḍava |
yena bhūtāny āśeṣeṇa, drakṣyasy ātmany atho mayi ||
- 36 api ced asi pāpebhyaḥ, sarvebhyaḥ pāpa-kṛt-tamaḥ |
sarvaṁ jñāna-plavenaiva, vṛjinaṁ santariṣyasi ||
- 37 yathaidhārīsi samiddho 'gnir, bhasma-sāt kurute 'rjuna |
jñānāgniḥ sarva-karmāṇi, bhasma-sāt kurute tathā ||
- 38 na hi jñānena sadṛśaṁ, pavitram iha vidyate |
tat svayaṁ yoga-saṁsiddhaḥ, kālenātmani vindati ||

- 39 śraddhāvān labhate jñānaṁ, tat-parah saṁyatendriyaḥ |
jñānaṁ labdhvā parāṁ śāntim, acireṇādhigacchati ||
- 40 ajñāś cāśraddadhānaś ca, saṁśayātmā vinaśyati |
nāyam loko 'sti na paro, na sukhaṁ saṁśayātmanaḥ ||
- 41 yoga-saṁnyasta-karmāṇaṁ, jñāna-saṁchinna-saṁśayam |
ātmavantaṁ na karmāṇi, nibadhnanti dhanañjaya ||
- 42 tasmād ajñāna-sambhūtaṁ, hṛt-sthaṁ jñānāśinātmanaḥ |
chittvainaṁ saṁśayaṁ yogam, ātiṣṭhotttiṣṭha bhārata ||

5

Arjuna uvāca

- 1 saṁnyāsaṁ karmaṇāṁ kṛṣṇa, punar yogam ca śaṁsasi |
yac chreya etayor ekaṁ, tan me brūhi su-niścitam ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 2 saṁnyāsaḥ karma-yogaś ca, niḥśreyasa-karāv ubhau |
tayos tu karma-saṁnyāsāt, karma-yogo viśiṣyate ||
- 3 jñeyaḥ sa nitya-saṁnyāsī, yo na dveṣṭi na kāṅkṣati |
nirdvando hi mahā-bāho, sukhaṁ bandhāt pramucyate ||
- 4 sāṅkhyā-yogau pṛthag bālāḥ, pravadanti na paṇḍitāḥ |
ekam apy āsthitaḥ samyag, ubhayor vindate phalam ||
- 5 yat sāṅkhyaiḥ prāpyate sthānaṁ, tad yogair api gamyate |
ekaṁ sāṅkhyam ca yogam ca, yaḥ paśyati sa paśyati ||
- 6 saṁnyāsaś tu mahā-bāho, duḥkham āptum ayogataḥ |
yoga-yukto munir brahma, na cireṇādhigacchati ||
- 7 yoka-yukto viśuddhātmā, vijitātmā jitendriyaḥ |
sarva-bhūtātma-bhūtātmā, kurvann api na lipyate ||
- 8 naiva kiñcit karomīti, yukto manyeta tattva-vit |
paśyañ śṛṇvan spṛśaṁ jighrann, āśnan gacchan svapañ śvasan ||
- 9 pralapan viśṛjan gṛhṇann, unmiṣaṁ nemiṣann api |
indriyāṇīndriyārtheṣu, vartanta iti dhārayan ||
- 10 brahmaṇy ādhāya karmāṇi, saṅgaṁ tyaktvā karoti yaḥ |
lipyate na sa pāpena, padma-patram ivāmbhasā ||
- 11 kāyena manasā buddhyā, kevalair indriyair api |
yogināḥ karma kurvanti, saṅgaṁ tyaktvātma-śuddhaye ||
- 12 yuktaḥ karma-phalaṁ tyaktvā, śāntim āpnoti naiṣṭhikīm |
ayuktaḥ kāma-kāreṇa, phale sakto nibadhyate ||
- 13 sarva-karmāṇi manasā, saṁnyasyāste sukhaṁ vaśī |
nava-dvāre pure dehī, naiva kurvan na kārayan ||
- 14 na kartṛtvaṁ na karmāṇi, lokasya sṛjati prabhuh |
na karma-phala saṁyogam, svabhāvas tu pravartate ||

- 15 nādatte kasyacit pāpaṁ, na caiva sukr̥taṁ vibhuḥ |
ajñānenāvṛtaṁ jñānaṁ, tena muhyanti jantavaḥ ||
- 16 jñānena tu tad ajñānaṁ, yeṣāṁ nāśitam ātmanaḥ |
teṣāṁ āditya-vaj jñānaṁ, prakāśayati tat param ||
- 17 tad-buddhayas tad-ātmānas, tan-niṣṭhās tat-parāyaṇāḥ |
gacchanty apunar-āvṛttiṁ, jñāna-nīrdhūta-kalmaṣāḥ ||
- 18 vidyā-vinaya-sampanne, brāhmaṇe gavi hastini |
śuni caiva śva-pāke ca, paṇḍitāḥ sama-darśinaḥ ||
- 19 ihaiva tair jitaḥ sargo, yeṣāṁ sāmye sthitaṁ manaḥ |
nirdoṣaṁ hi samaṁ brahma, tasmād brahmaṇi te sthitāḥ ||
- 20 na prahr̥ṣyet priyaṁ prāpya, nodvijet prāpya cāpriyam |
sthira-buddhir asammūḍho, brahma-vid brahmaṇi sthitaḥ ||
- 21 bāhya-sparśeṣv asaktātmā, vindaty ātmani yat sukham |
sa brahma-yoga-yuktātmā, sukham akṣayam aśnute ||
- 22 ye hi saṁsparśa-jā bhogā, duḥkha-yonaya eva te |
ādy-antavantaḥ kaunteya, na teṣu ramate budhaḥ ||
- 23 śaknotīhaiva yaḥ soḍhum, prāk śārīra-vimokṣanāt |
kāma-krodhodbhavaṁ vegaṁ, sa yuktaḥ sa sukhī naraḥ ||
- 24 yo 'ntaḥ-sukho 'ntar-ārāmas, tathāntar-jyotir eva yaḥ |
sa yogī brahma-nirvāṇaṁ, brahma-bhūto 'dhigacchati ||
- 25 labhante brahma-nirvāṇam, ṛṣayaḥ kṣīṇa-kalmaṣāḥ |
chinna-dvaidhā yatātmānaḥ, sarva-bhūta-hite ratāḥ ||
- 26 kāma-krodha-viyuktānām, yatīnām yata-cetasām |
abhito brahma-nirvāṇaṁ, vartate viditātmanām ||
- 27 sparśān kṛtvā bahir bāhyāś, cakṣuś caivāntare bhruvoḥ |
prāṇāpānu samau kṛtvā, nāsābhyantara-cāriṇau ||
- 28 yatendriya-mano-buddhir, munir mokṣa-parāyaṇaḥ |
vigatecchā-bhaya-krodho, yaḥ sadā mukta eva saḥ ||
- 29 bhoktāraṁ yajña-tapasām, sarva-loka-maheśvaram |
suhṛdaṁ sarva-bhūtānām, jñātvā mām śāntim ṛcchati ||

6

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 1 anāśritaḥ karma-phalaṁ, kāryaṁ karma karoti yaḥ |
sa saṁnyāsī ca yogī ca, na niraṅgir na cākriyaḥ ||
- 2 yaṁ saṁnyāsam iti prāhur, yogaṁ taṁ viddhi pāṇḍava |
na hy asaṁnyasta-saṅkalpo, yogī bhavati kaścana ||
- 3 āruṅkṣor muner yogaṁ, karma kāraṇam ucyate |
yogārūḍhasya tasyaiva, śamaḥ kāraṇam ucyate ||
- 4 yadā hi nendriyārtheṣu, na karmasv anuṣajjate |
sarva-saṅkalpa-saṁnyāsī, yogārūḍhas tadocyate ||

- 5 uddhared ātmanātmānam, nātmānam avasādayet |
 ātmaiva hy ātmano bandhur, ātmaiva ripur ātmanaḥ ||
 6 bandhur ātmātmanas tasya, yenātmaivātmanā jitaḥ |
 anātmanas tu śatrutve, vartetātmaiva śatru-vat ||
 7 jītātmanaḥ praśāntasya, paramātmā samāhitaḥ |
 śītoṣṇa-sukha-duḥkheṣu, tathā mānāpamānayoh ||
 8 jñāna-vijñāna-triptāmā, kūṭa-stho vijitendriyaḥ |
 yukta ity ucyate yogī, sama-loṣṭrāśma-kāñcanaḥ ||
 9 suhr̥ṇ-mitrāry-udāsīna-, madhyastha-dveṣya-bandhuṣu |
 sādhuṣv api ca pāpeṣu, sama-buddhir viśiṣyate ||
 10 yogī yuñjita satatam, ātmānam rahasi sthitaḥ |
 ekākī yata-cittātmā, nirāśir aparigrahaḥ ||
 11 śucau deṣe pratiṣṭhāpya, sthīram āsanam ātmanaḥ |
 nāty-ucchritam nāti-nīcam, cailājina-kuśottaram ||
 12 tattraikāgram manaḥ kṛtvā, yata-cittendriya-kriyaḥ |
 upaviśyāsane yuñjyād, yogam ātma-viśuddhaye ||
 13 samam kāya-śīro-grīvam, dhārayann acalam sthiraḥ |
 samprekṣya nāsikāgram svam, diśaś cānavalokayan ||
 14 praśāntātmā vigata-bhīr, brahmacāri-vrate sthitaḥ |
 manaḥ saṁyamya mac-citto, yukta āśita mat-parah ||
 15 yuñjann evam sadātmānam, yogī niyata-mānasaḥ |
 śāntim nirvāṇa-paramām, mat-saṁsthām adhigacchati ||
 16 nāty-aśnatas tu yogo 'sti, na caikāntam anaśnataḥ |
 na cāti-svapna-śīlasya, jāgrato naiva cārjuna ||
 17 yuktāhāra-vihārasya, yukta-ceṣṭasya karmasu |
 yukta-svapnāvabodhasya, yogo bhavati duḥkha-hā ||
 18 yadā viniyataṁ cittam, ātmany evāvatīṣṭhate |
 niḥspṛhaḥ sarva-kāmebhyo, yukta ity ucyate tadā ||
 19 yathā dīpo nivāta-stho, neṅgate sopamā smṛtā |
 yogino yata-cittasya, yuñjato yogam ātmanaḥ ||
 20 yatroparamate cittam, niruddham yoga-sevayā |
 yatra caivātmanātmānam, paśyann ātmani tuṣyati ||
 21 sukham ātyantikam yat tad, buddhi-grāhyam atīndriyam |
 vetti yatra na caivāyam, sthitaś calati tattvataḥ ||
 22 yaṁ labdhvā cāparam lābham, manyate nādhikam tataḥ |
 yasmin sthito na duḥkhena, guruṇāpi vicālyate ||
 23 taṁ vidyād duḥkha-saṁyoga-, vīyogaṁ yoga-saṁjñitam |
 sa nīcayena yuktavyo, yogo 'nirviṇṇa-cetasā ||
 24 saṅkalpa-prabhavān kāmāns, tyaktvā sarvān aśeṣataḥ |
 manasaivendriya-grāmam, viniyamya samantataḥ ||
 25 śanaiḥ śanair uparamed, buddhyā dhṛti-gṛhītayā |
 ātma-saṁsthām manaḥ kṛtvā, na kiñcid api cintayet ||

- 26 yato yato niścarati, manaś cañcalam asthiram |
tatas tato niyamyaitad, ātmany eva vaśaṁ nayet ||
- 27 praśānta-manasaṁ hy enaṁ, yoginaṁ sukhāṁ uttamam |
upaīti śānta-rajasaṁ, brahma-bhūtaṁ akalmaṣam ||
- 28 yuñjann evaṁ sadātmānaṁ, yogī vigata-kalmaṣaḥ |
sukhena brahma-saṁsparśam, atyantam sukhāṁ āśnute ||
- 29 sarva-bhūta-stham ātmānaṁ, sarva-bhūtāni cātmani |
īkṣate yoga-yuktātmā, sarvatra sama-darśanaḥ ||
- 30 yo mām paśyati sarvatra, sarvaṁ ca mayi paśyati |
tasyāhaṁ na praṇaśyāmi, sa ca me na praṇaśyati ||
- 31 sarva-bhūta-sthitaṁ yo mām, bhajaty ekatvam āsthitaḥ |
sarvathā vartamāno 'pi, sa yogī mayi vartate ||
- 32 ātmaupamyena sarvatra, samam paśyati yo 'rjuna |
sukhaṁ vā yadi vā duḥkhaṁ, sa yogī paramo mataḥ ||

Arjuna uvāca

- 33 yo 'yaṁ yogas tvayā proktaḥ, sāmyena madhusūdana |
etasyāhaṁ na paśyāmi, cañcalatvāt sthitiṁ sthirām ||
- 34 cañcalaṁ hi manaḥ kṛṣṇa, pramāthi balavad dṛḍham |
tasyāhaṁ nigrahaṁ manye, vāyor iva su-duṣkaram ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 35 asaṁśayaṁ mahā-bāho, mano durnigrahaṁ calam |
abhyāseṇa tu kaunteya, vairāgyeṇa ca grhyate ||
- 36 asaṁśyatātmanā yogo, duṣprāpa iti me matiḥ |
vaśyātmanā tu yatatā, śakyo 'vāptum upāyataḥ ||

Arjuna uvāca

- 37 ayatīḥ śraddhayopeto, yogāc calita-mānasaḥ |
aprāpya yoga-saṁsiddhiṁ, kām gatiṁ kṛṣṇa gacchati ||
- 38 kaccin nobhaya-vibhraṣṭaś, chinnābhram iva naśyati |
apraṭiṣṭho mahā-bāho, vimūḍho brahmaṇaḥ pathi ||
- 39 etan me saṁśayaṁ kṛṣṇa, chettum arhasy aśeṣataḥ |
tvad-anyāḥ saṁśayasyāśya, chettā na hy upapadyate ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 40 pārtha naiveha nāmutra, vināśas tasya vidyate |
na hi kalyāṇa-kṛt kaścid, durgatiṁ tāta gacchati ||
- 41 prāpya puṇya-kṛtām lokān, uṣitvā śāśvatīḥ samāḥ |
śucīnām śrīmatām gehe, yoga-bhraṣṭo 'bhijāyate ||

- 42 atha vā yoginām eva, kule bhavati dhīmatām |
 etad dhi durlabhatarām, loke janma yad īdṛśam ||
- 43 tatra taṁ buddhi-saṁyogam, labhate paurva-dehikam |
 yatate ca tato bhūyaḥ, saṁsiddhau kuru-nandana ||
- 44 pūrvābhyāsenā tenaiva, hriyate hy avaśo 'pi saḥ |
 jījñāsur api yogasya, śabda-brahmātivartate ||
- 45 prayatnād yatamānas tu, yogī saṁsuddha-kilbiṣaḥ |
 aneka-janma-saṁsiddhas, tato yāti param gatiṁ ||
- 46 tapasvibhyo 'dhiko yogī, jñānibhyo 'pi mato 'dhikaḥ |
 karmibhyaś cādhiko yogī, tasmād yogī bhavārjuna ||
- 47 yoginām api sarveṣāṁ, mad-gatenāntar-ātmanā |
 śraddhāvān bhajate yo mām, sa me yuktatamo mataḥ ||

7

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 1 mayy āsakta-manāḥ pārtha, yogam yuñjan mad-āśrayaḥ |
 asaṁśayaṁ samagram mām, yathā jñāsyasi tac chṛṇu ||
- 2 jñānam te 'ham sa-vijñānam, idaṁ vaksyāmy aśeṣataḥ |
 yaj jñātvā neha bhūyo 'nyaj, jñātavyam avaśiṣyate ||
- 3 manuṣyāṇāṁ sahasreṣu, kaścid yatati siddhaye |
 yatatām api siddhānām, kaścin mām vetti tattvataḥ ||
- 4 bhūmir āpo 'nalo vāyuḥ, khaṁ mano buddhir eva ca |
 ahaṁkāra itīyaṁ me, bhinnā prakṛtir aṣṭadhā ||
- 5 apareyam itas tv anyāṁ, prakṛtiṁ viddhi me parām |
 jīva-bhūtāṁ mahā-bāho, yayedam dhāryate jagat ||
- 6 etad-yonīni bhūtāni, sarvāṇīty upadhāraya |
 ahaṁ kṛtsnasya jagataḥ, prabhavaḥ pralayas tathā ||
- 7 mattaḥ paratarām nānyat, kiñcid asti dhanañjaya |
 mayi sarvam idaṁ protaṁ, sūtre maṇi-gaṇā iva ||
- 8 raso 'ham apsu kaunteya, prabhāsmi śaśi-sūryayoḥ |
 praṇavaḥ sarva-vedeṣu, śabdaḥ khe pauraṣaṁ nṛṣu ||
- 9 puṇyo gandhaḥ pṛthivyāṁ, ca tejaś cāsmi vibhāvasau |
 jīvanam sarva-bhūteṣu, tapaś cāsmi tapasviṣu ||
- 10 bījaṁ mām sarva-bhūtānām, viddhi pārtha sanātanam |
 buddhir buddhimatām asmi, tejas tejas vinām aham ||
- 11 balaṁ balavatām cāhaṁ, kāma-rāga-vivarjitam |
 dharmāvīruddho bhūteṣu, kāmo 'smi bharatarṣabha ||
- 12 ye caiva sāttvikā bhāvā, rājasās tāmasās ca ye |
 matta eveti tām viddhi, na tv ahaṁ teṣu te mayi ||
- 13 tribhir guṇa-mayair bhāvair, ebhiḥ sarvam idaṁ jagat |
 mohitaṁ nābhijānāti, mām ebhyaḥ param avyayam ||

- 14 daivī hy eṣā guṇa-mayī, mama māyā duratyayā |
mām eva ye prapadyante, māyām etān taranti te ||
- 15 na mām duṣkṛtino mūḍhāḥ, prapadyante narādhamāḥ |
māyāpahr̥ta-jñānā, āsurān bhāvam āśritāḥ ||
- 16 catur-vidhā bhajante mām, janāḥ suṣṛtino 'rjuna |
ārto jijñāsur arthārthī, jñānī ca bharatarṣabha ||
- 17 teṣān jñānī nitya-yukta, eka-bhaktir viśiṣyate |
priyo hi jñānino 'tyartham, aham sa ca mama priyaḥ ||
- 18 udārāḥ sarva evaite, jñānī tv ātmaiva me matam |
āsthitaḥ sa hi yuktātmā, mām evānuttamām gatim ||
- 19 bahūnām janmanām ante, jñānavān mām prapadyate |
vāsudevaḥ sarvam iti, sa mahātmā su-durlabhaḥ ||
- 20 kāmāis tais tair hr̥ta-jñānāḥ, prapadyante 'nya-devatāḥ |
taṁ taṁ niyamam āsthāya, prakṛtyā niyatāḥ svayā ||
- 21 yo yo yām yām tanuṁ bhaktaḥ, śraddhayārcitum icchati |
tasya yasyācalām śraddhām, tām eva vidadhāmy aham ||
- 22 sa tayā śraddhayā yukta, tasyārādhanam ihate |
labhate ca tataḥ kāmān, mayaiva vihitān hi tān ||
- 23 antavat tu phalaṁ teṣān, tad bhavaty alpa-medhasām |
devān deva-yajo yānti, mad-bhaktā yānti mām api ||
- 24 avyaktaṁ vyaktim āpannam, manyante mām abuddhayaḥ |
param bhāvam ajānanto, mamāvyayam anuttamam ||
- 25 nāhaṁ prakāśaḥ sarvasya, yoga-māyā-samāvṛtaḥ |
mūḍho 'yaṁ nābhijānāti, loko mām ajam avyayam ||
- 26 vedāhaṁ samatītāni, vartamānāni cārjuna |
bhaviṣyāṇi ca bhūtāni, mām tu veda na kaścana ||
- 27 icchā-dveṣa-samutthana, dvandva-mohena bhārata |
sarva-bhūtāni sammohaṁ, sarge yānti parantapa ||
- 28 yeṣān tv anta-gataṁ pāpaṁ, janānām puṇya-karmaṇām |
te dvandva-moha-nirmuktā, bhajante mām dṛḍha-vratāḥ ||
- 29 jarā-maraṇa-mokṣāya, mām āśritya yatanti ye |
te brahma tad viduḥ kṛtsnam, adhyātmaṁ karma cākḥilam ||
- 30 sādhibhūtādhidaivam mām, sādhiyajñam ca ye viduḥ |
prayāṇa-kāle 'pi ca mām, te vidur yukta-cetasāḥ ||

8

Arjuna uvāca

- 1 kiṁ tad brahma kim adhyātmaṁ, kiṁ karma puruṣottama |
adhibhūtaṁ ca kiṁ proktam, adhidaivam kim ucyate ||
- 2 adhiyajñaḥ katham ko 'tra, dehe 'smin madhusūdana |
prayāṇa-kāle ca katham, jñeyo 'si niyatātmabhiḥ ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 3 akṣaram brahma paramam, svabhāvo 'dhyātmam ucyate |
bhūta-bhāvodbhava-karo, visargaḥ karma-samjñitaḥ ||
- 4 adhibhūtaṁ kṣaro bhāvaḥ, puruṣaś cādhidaivatam |
adhiyajño 'ham evātra, dehe deha-bhṛtām vara ||
- 5 anta-kāle ca mām eva, smaran muktivā kalevaram |
yaḥ prayāti sa mad-bhāvaṁ, yāti nāsty atra saṁśayaḥ ||
- 6 yaṁ yaṁ vāpi smaran bhāvaṁ, tyajaty ante kalevaram |
taṁ tam evaiti kaunteya, sadā tad-bhāva-bhāviṭaḥ ||
- 7 tasmāt sarveṣu kāleṣu, mām anusmara yudhya ca |
mayy arpita-mano-buddhir, mām evaiśyasy asaṁśayaḥ ||
- 8 abhyāsa-yoga-yuktena, cetasā nānya-gāminā |
paramam puruṣam divyam, yāti pārthānucintayan ||
- 9 kavim purāṇam anuśāsitarāṁ
aṇor aṇīyāṁsam anusmared yaḥ |
sarvasya dhātārāṁ acintya-rūpam
āditya-varṇam tamasam parastāt ||
- 10 prayāṇa-kāle manasācalena
bhaktyā yukto yoga-balena caiva |
bhruvor madhye prāṇam āveśya samyak
sa taṁ param puruṣam upaiti divyam ||
- 11 yad akṣaram veda-vido vadanti
viśanti yad yatayo vīta-rāgaḥ |
yad icchanto brahmacaryam caranti
tat te padam saṅgrahaṇa pravakṣye ||
- 12 sarva-dvārāṇi saṁyamya, mano hṛdī nirudhya ca |
mūrdhny ādhāyātmanaḥ prāṇam, āsthito yoga-dhāraṇam ||
- 13 om ity ekākṣaram brahma, vyāharan mām anusmaran |
yaḥ prayāti tyajan dehaṁ, sa yāti paramām gatim ||
- 14 ananya-cetāḥ satataṁ, yo mām smarati nityaśaḥ |
tasyāhaṁ sulabhaḥ pārtha nitya-yuktasya yoginaḥ ||
- 15 mām upetya punar janma, duḥkhālayam aśāśvatam |
nāpnuvanti mahātmānaḥ, saṁsiddhim paramām gatāḥ ||
- 16 ā-brahma-bhuvanāl lokāḥ, punar āvartino 'rjuna |
mām upetya tu kaunteya, punar janma na vidyate ||
- 17 sahasra-yuga-paryantam, ahar yad brahmaṇo viduḥ |
rātriṁ yuga-sahasrāntām, te 'ho-rātra-vido janāḥ ||
- 18 avyaktād vyaktayaḥ sarvāḥ, prabhavanty ahar-āgame |
rātry-āgame praliyante, tatraivāvyakta-samjñake ||
- 19 bhūta-grāmaḥ sa evāyam, bhūtvā bhūtvā praliyate |
rātry-āgame 'vaśaḥ pārtha, prabhavaty ahar-āgame ||

- 20 paras tasmāt tu bhāvo 'nyo, 'vyakto 'vyaktāt sanātanaḥ |
yaḥ sa sarveṣu bhūteṣu, naśyatsu na vinaśyati ||
- 21 avyakto 'kṣara ity uktas, tam āhuḥ paramām gatim |
yam prāpya na nivartante, tad dhāma paramam mama ||
- 22 puruṣaḥ sa paraḥ pārtha, bhaktyā labhyaḥ tv ananyayā |
yasyāntaḥ-sthāni bhūtāni, yena sarvam idaṁ tatam ||
- 23 yatra kālē tv anāvṛttim, āvṛttim caiva yoginaḥ |
prayātā yānti tam kālān, vakṣyāmi bharataṣabha ||
- 24 agnir jyotir ahaḥ śuklaḥ, ṣaṇ-māsā uttarāyaṇam |
tatra prayātā gacchanti, brahma brahma-vido janāḥ ||
- 25 dhūmo rātris tathā kṛṣṇaḥ, ṣaṇ-māsā dakṣiṇāyaṇam |
tatra cāndramasaṁ jyotir, yogī prāpya nivartate ||
- 26 śukla-kṛṣṇe gatī hy ete, jagataḥ śāśvate mate |
ekayā yāty anāvṛttim, anyayānvartate punaḥ ||
- 27 naite sṛtī pārtha jānan, yogī muhyati kaścana |
tasmāt sarveṣu kālēṣu, yoga-yukto bhavārjuna ||
- 28 vedeṣu yajñēṣu tapaḥsu caiva
dāneṣu yat puṇya-phalaṁ pradīṣṭam |
atyeti tat sarvam idaṁ viditvā
yogī param sthānam upaiti cādyam ||

9

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 1 idaṁ tu te guhyatamaṁ, pravakṣyāmy anasūyave |
jñānaṁ vijñāna-sahitaṁ, yaj jñātvā mokṣyase 'śubhāt ||
- 2 rāja-vidyā rāja-guhyam, pavitraṁ idaṁ uttamam |
pratyakṣāvagamaṁ dharmyam, su-sukhaṁ kartum avyayam ||
- 3 āsraddadhānāḥ puruṣā, dharmasyāśya parantapa |
aprāpya mām nivartante, mṛtyu-saṁsāra-vartmani ||
- 4 mayā tatam idaṁ sarvaṁ, jagad avyakta-mūrtinā |
mat-sthāni sarva-bhūtāni, na cāhaṁ teṣv avasthitaḥ ||
- 5 na ca mat-sthāni bhūtāni, paśya me yogam aiśvaram |
bhūta-bhṛn na ca bhūta-stho, mamātmā bhūta-bhāvanaḥ ||
- 6 yathākāśa-sthito nityaṁ, vāyuḥ sarvatra-go mahān |
tathā sarvāṇi bhūtāni, mat-sthānīty upadhāraya ||
- 7 sarva-bhūtāni kaunteya, prakṛtiṁ yānti māmikām |
kalpa-kṣaye punas tāni, kalpādau viśṛjāmy aham ||
- 8 prakṛtiṁ svām avaṣṭabhya, viśṛjāmi punaḥ punaḥ |
bhūta-grāmam imān kṛtsnam, avaśam prakṛter vaśāt ||

- 9 na ca mām tāni karmāṇi, nibadhnanti dhanañjaya |
udāsīna-vad āsīnam, asaktam teṣu karmasu ||
- 10 mayādhyakṣeṇa prakṛtiḥ, sūyate sa-carācaram |
hetunānena kaunteya, jagad viparivartate ||
- 11 avajānanti mām mūḍhā, mānuṣīm tanum āśritam |
paraṁ bhāvam ajānanto, mama bhūta-maheśvaram ||
- 12 moghāśa mogha-karmāṇo, mogha-jñānā vicetasah |
rākṣasīm āsurīm caiva, prakṛtiṁ mohiniṁ śritāḥ ||
- 13 mahātmānas tu mām pārtha, daivīm prakṛtiṁ āśritāḥ |
bhajanty ananya-manaso, jñātvā bhūtādim avyayam ||
- 14 satatam kīrtayanto mām, yatantaś ca dṛḍha-vratāḥ |
namasyantaś ca mām bhaktyā, nitya-yuktā upāsate ||
- 15 jñāna-yajñena cāpy anye, yajanto mām upāsate |
ekatvena pṛthaktvena, bahudhā viśvato-mukham ||
- 16 aham kratur aham yajñah, svadhāham aham auśadham |
mantra 'ham aham evājyam, aham agnir aham hutam ||
- 17 pitāham asya jagato, mātā dhātā pitāmahaḥ |
vedyam pavitram omkāra, ṛk sāma yajur eva ca ||
- 18 gatir bhartā prabhū sākṣī, nivāsaḥ śaraṇam suhṛt |
prabhavaḥ pralayaḥ sthānam, nidhānam bījam avyayam ||
- 19 tapāmy aham aham varṣam, nigṛhṇāmy utsṛjāmi ca |
amṛtam caiva mṛtyuś ca, sad asac cāham arjuna ||
- 20 trai-vidyā mām soma-pāḥ pūta-pāpā
yajñair iṣtvā svar-gatiṁ prārthayante |
te puṇyam āsādy surendra-lokam
āsnanti divyān divi deva-bhogān ||
- 21 te tam bhuktvā svarga-lokam viśālām
kṣīṇe puṇye martya-lokam viśanti |
evam trayī-dharmam anuprapannā
gatāgataṁ kāma-kāmā labhante ||
- 22 ananyāś cintayanto mām, ye janāḥ paryupāsate |
teṣāṁ nityābhiyuktānām, yoga-kṣemaṁ vahāmy aham ||
- 23 ye 'py anya-devatā-bhaktā, yajante śraddhayānvitāḥ |
te 'pi mām eva kaunteya, yajanty avidhi-pūrvakam ||
- 24 aham hi sarva-yajñānām, bhoktā ca prabhur eva ca |
na tu mām abhijānanti, tattvenātaś cyavanti te ||
- 25 yānti deva-vratā devān, pitṛ yānti pitṛ-vratāḥ |
bhūtāni yānti bhūtejyā, yānti mad-yājino 'pi mām ||
- 26 patraṁ puṣpaṁ phalaṁ toyam, yo me bhaktyā prayacchati |
tad aham bhakty-upahṛtam, āsnāmi prayatātmanah ||
- 27 yat karoṣi yad āsnāsi, yaj juhoṣi dadāsi yat |
yat tapasyasi kaunteya, tat kuruṣva mad-arpaṇam ||

- 28 śubhāśubha-phalair evaṁ, mokṣyase karma-bandhanaiḥ |
 saṁnyāsa-yoga-yuktātmā, vimukto mām upaiśyasi ||
- 29 samo 'haṁ sarva-bhūteṣu, na me dveṣyo 'sti na priyaḥ |
 ye bhajanti tu mām bhaktyā, mayi te teṣu cāpy aham ||
- 30 api cet su-durācāro, bhajate mām ananya-bhāk |
 sādhuḥ eva sa mantavyaḥ, samyag vyavasito hi saḥ ||
- 31 kṣipraṁ bhavati dharmātmā, śāśvac-chāntim nigacchati |
 kaunteya pratijānīhi, na me bhaktaḥ praṇaśyati ||
- 32 mām hi pārtha vyapāśritya, ye 'pi syuḥ pāpa-yonayaḥ |
 striyo vaiśyās tathā śūdrās, te 'pi yānti parām gatim ||
- 33 kim punar brāhmaṇāḥ puṇyā, bhaktā rājarṣayas tathā |
 anityam asukhaṁ lokam, imaṁ prāpya bhajasva mām ||
- 34 man-manā bhava mad-bhakto, mad-yājī mām namaskuru |
 mām evaiśyasi yuktvaivam, ātmānam mat-parāyaṇaḥ ||

10

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 1 bhūya eva mahā-bāho, śṛṇu me paramaṁ vacaḥ |
 yat te 'haṁ prīyamāṇāya, vakṣyāmi hita-kāmyayā ||
- 2 ne me viduḥ sura-gaṇāḥ, prabhavaṁ na maharṣayaḥ |
 aham ādir hi devānām, maharṣiṇām ca sarvaśaḥ ||
- 3 yo mām ajam anādim ca, veti loka-maheśvaram |
 asaṁmūḍhaḥ sa martyeṣu, sarva-pāpaiḥ pramucyate ||
- 4 buddhir jñānam asaṁmohaḥ, kṣamā satyaṁ damaḥ śamaḥ |
 sukhaṁ duḥkhaṁ bhavo 'bhāvo, bhayaṁ cābhayaṁ eva ca ||
- 5 ahimsā samatā tuṣṭis, tapo dānaṁ yaśo 'yaśaḥ |
 bhavanti bhāvā bhūtānām, matta eva pṛthag-vidhāḥ ||
- 6 maharṣayaḥ sapta pūrve, catvāro manavas tathā |
 mad-bhāvā mānasā jātā, yeṣāṁ loka imāḥ prajāḥ ||
- 7 etāṁ vibhūtiṁ yogaṁ ca, mama yo veti tattvataḥ |
 so 'vikampena yogena, yujyate nātra saṁśayaḥ ||
- 8 ahaṁ sarvasya prabhavo, mattaḥ sarvaṁ pravartate |
 iti matvā bhajante mām, budhā bhāva-samanvitāḥ ||
- 9 mac-cittā mad-gata-prāṇā, bodhayantaḥ parasparam |
 kathayantaś ca mām nityaṁ, tuṣyanti ca ramanti ca ||
- 10 teṣāṁ satata-yuktānām, bhajatām prīti-pūrvakam |
 dadāmi buddhi-yogaṁ taṁ, yena mām upayānti te ||
- 11 teṣāṁ evānukampārtham, aham ajñāna-jaṁ tamaḥ |
 nāśayāmy ātma-bhāva-stho, jñāna-dīpena bhāsvatā ||

Arjuna uvāca

- 12 paraṁ brahma paraṁ dhāma, pavitrarṁ paramarṁ bhavān |
 puruṣarṁ śāśvatarṁ divyam, ādi-devam ajarṁ vibhum ||
- 13 āhus tvām ṛṣayaḥ sarve, devarṣir nāradaś tathā |
 asito devalo vyāsaḥ, svayaṁ caiva bravīṣi me ||
- 14 sarvam etad ṛtaṁ manye, yan mām vadasi keśava |
 na hi te bhagavan vyaktim, vidur devā na dānavāḥ ||
- 15 svayam evātmanātmānam, vettha tvaṁ puruṣottama |
 bhūta-bhāvana bhūteśa, deva-deva jagat-pate ||
- 16 vaktum arhasy aśeṣeṇa, divyā hy ātma-vibhūtayaḥ |
 yābhir vibhūtibhir lokān, imāms tvaṁ vyāpya tiṣṭhasi ||
- 17 katharṁ vidyām aharṁ yogims, tvām sadā paricintayan |
 keṣu keṣu ca bhāveṣu, cintyo 'si bhagavan mayā ||
- 18 vistareṇātmano yogarṁ, vibhūtim ca janārdana |
 bhūyaḥ kathaya tṛptir hi, śṛṇvato nāsti me 'mṛtam ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 19 hanta te kathayiṣyāmi, divyā hy ātma-vibhūtayaḥ |
 prādhānyataḥ kuru-śreṣṭha, nāsty anto vistarasya me ||
- 20 aham ātmā guḍākeśa, sarva-bhūtāśaya-sthitaḥ |
 aham ādiś ca madhyarṁ ca, bhūtānām anta eva ca ||
- 21 ādityānām aharṁ viṣṇur, jyotiṣāṁ ravir amśumān |
 marīcīr marutām asmi, nakṣatrāṇām aharṁ śaśi ||
- 22 vedānām sāmavedo 'smi, devānām asmi vāsavaḥ |
 indriyāṇām manaś cāsmi, bhūtānām asmi cetanā ||
- 23 rudrāṇām śaṅkaraś cāsmi, vittaśo yakṣa-rakṣasām |
 vasūnām pāvakaś cāsmi, meruḥ śikhariṇām aham ||
- 24 purodhasāṁ ca mukhyarṁ mām, viddhi pārtha bṛhaspatim |
 senānīnām aharṁ skandaḥ, sarasām asmi sāgaraḥ ||
- 25 maharṣīṇām bhṛgur aharṁ, girām asmy ekam akṣaram |
 yajñānām japa-yajño 'smi, sthāvarāṇām himālayaḥ ||
- 26 aśvatthaḥ sarva-vṛkṣāṇām, devarṣīṇām ca nāradaḥ |
 gandharvāṇām citrarathaḥ, siddhānām kapilo munir ||
- 27 uccaiḥśravasam aśvānām, viddhi mām amṛtodbhavam |
 airāvatarṁ gajendrāṇām, narāṇām ca narādhipam ||
- 28 āyudhānām aharṁ vajraṁ, dhenūnām asmi kāmadhuk |
 prajānaś cāsmi kandarpaḥ, sarpāṇām asmi vāsukīḥ ||
- 29 anantaś cāsmi nāgānām, varuṇo yādasām aham |
 pitṛṇām aryamā cāsmi, yamaḥ saṁyamātām aham ||
- 30 prahlādaś cāsmi daityānām, kālāḥ kalayatām aham |
 mṛgāṇām ca mṛgendro 'haṁ, vainateyaś ca pakṣiṇām ||

- 31 pavanaḥ pavatām asmi, rāmaḥ śastra-bhṛtām aham |
jhaṣāṇām makaraś cāsmi, srotasām asmi jāhnavī ||
- 32 sargāṇām ādir antaś ca, madhyaṁ caivāham arjuna |
adhyātma-vidyā vidyānām, vādaḥ pravadatām aham ||
- 33 akṣarāṇām a-kāro 'smi, dvandvaḥ sāmāsikasya ca |
aham evākṣayaḥ kālo, dhātāhaṁ viśvato-mukhaḥ ||
- 34 mṛtyuḥ sarva-haraś cāham, udbhavaś ca bhaviṣyatām |
kīrtiḥ śrīr vāk ca nārīṇām, smṛtir medhā dhṛtiḥ kṣamā ||
- 35 bṛhat-sāma tathā sāmnām, gāyatrī chandasām aham |
māsānām mārگا-śīrṣo 'ham, ṛtūnām kusumākaraḥ ||
- 36 dyūtaṁ chlayatām asmi, tejas tejasvinām aham |
jaya 'smi vyavasāyo 'smi, sattvaṁ sattvavatām aham ||
- 37 vṛṣṇīnām vāsudevo 'smi, pāṇḍavānām dhanañjayaḥ |
munīnām apy ahaṁ vyāsaḥ, kavīnām uśanā kaviḥ ||
- 38 daṇḍo damayatām asmi, nītir asmi jigīṣatām |
maunaṁ caivāsmi guhyānām, jñānaṁ jñānavatām aham ||
- 39 yac cāpi sarva-bhūtānām, bījaṁ tad aham arjuna |
na tad asti vinā yat syān, mayā bhūtaṁ carācaram ||
- 40 nānto 'sti mama divyānām, vibhūtīnām parantapa |
eṣa tūddeśataḥ prokto, vibhūter vistaro mayā ||
- 41 yad yad vibhūtimat sattvaṁ, śrīmad ūrjitam eva vā |
tat tad evāvagaccha tvaṁ, mama tejo-'mśa-sambhavam ||
- 42 atha vā bahunaitena, kiṁ jñātena tavārjuna |
viṣṭabhyāham idaṁ kṛtsnam, ekāmśena sthito jagat ||

II

Arjuna uvāca

- 1 mad-anugrahāya paramaṁ, guhyam adhyātma-samjñitam |
yat tvayoktaṁ vacas tena, moho 'yaṁ vigato mama ||
- 2 bhavāpyayau hi bhūtānām, śrutau vistarāśo mayā |
tvattaḥ kamala-patrākṣa, mātmyam api cāvayam ||
- 3 evam etad yathāttha tvam, ātmānaṁ parameśvara |
draṣṭum icchāmi te rūpam, aiśvaraṁ puruṣottama ||
- 4 manyase yadi tac chakyaṁ, mayā draṣṭum iti prabho |
yogeśvara tato me tvaṁ, darśayātmānam avyayam ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 5 paśya me pārtha rūpāṇi, śataśo 'tha sahasraśaḥ |
nānā-vidhāni divyāni, nānā-varṇākṛtīni ca ||

- 6 paśyādityān vasūn rudrān, aśvinau marutas tathā |
bahūny adṛṣṭa-pūrvāṇi, paśyāścaryāṇi bhārata ||
- 7 ihaika-stham jagat kṛtsnam, paśyādya sa-carācaram |
mama dehe guḍākeśa, yac cānyad draṣṭum icchasi ||
- 8 na tu mām śakyase draṣṭum, anenaiva sva-cakṣuṣā |
divyaṁ dadāmi te cakṣuḥ, paśya me yogam aiśvaram ||

Saṁjaya uvāca

- 9 evam uktvā tato rājan, mahā-yogeśvaro hariḥ |
darśayām āsa pārthāya, paramaṁ rūpam aiśvaram ||
- 10 aneka-vaktra-nayanam, anekādbhuta-darśanam |
aneka-divyābharāṇaṁ, divyānekodyatāyudham ||
- 11 divya-mālyāmbara-dharaṁ, divya-gandhānulepanam |
sarvāścarya-mayaṁ devam, anantaṁ viśvato-mukham ||
- 12 divi sūrya-sahasrasya, bhaved yugapad utthitā |
yadi bhāḥ sadṛśī sā syād, bhāsaś tasya mahātmanaḥ ||
- 13 tatraika-stham jagat kṛtsnam, pravibhaktam anekadhā |
apaśyad deva-devasya, śarīre pāṇḍavas tadā ||
- 14 tataḥ sa vismayāviṣṭo, hr̥ṣṭa-romā dhanañjayaḥ |
praṇamya śirasā devaṁ, kṛtāñjalir abhāṣata ||

Arjuna uvāca

- 15 paśyāmi devāṁs tava deva dehe
sarvāṁs tathā bhūta-viśeṣa-saṅghān |
brahmāṇam īśaṁ kamalāsana-stham
ṛṣīṁś ca sarvān uragāṁś ca divyān ||
- 16 aneka-bāhūdara-vaktra-netraṁ
paśyāmi tvā sarvato 'nanta-rūpam |
nāntaṁ na madhyaṁ na punas tavādim
paśyāmi viśveśvara viśva-rūpa ||
- 17 kirīṭīṇaṁ gadīnaṁ cakriṇaṁ ca
tejo-rāśiṁ sarvato dīptimantam |
paśyāmi tvāṁ durnirīkṣyaṁ samantād
dīptānalārka-dyutim aprameyam ||
- 18 tvam akṣaraṁ paramaṁ veditavyaṁ
tvam asya viśvasya paraṁ nidhānam |
tvam avyayaḥ śāśvata-dharma-goptā
sanātanas tvāṁ puruṣo mato me ||
- 19 anādi-madyāntam ananta-vīryam
ananta-bāhuṁ śaśi-sūrya-netram |
paśyāmi tvāṁ dīpta-hutāśa-vaktraṁ
sva-tejasā viśvam idaṁ tapantam ||

- 20 dyāv ā-pṛthivyor idam antaram hi
 vyāptam tvayaikena diśas ca sarvāḥ |
 dṛṣṭvābhutam rūpam idam tavograhā
 loka-trayaṁ pravyathitam mahātman ||
- 21 amī hi tvā sura-saṅghā viśanti
 kecid bhītāḥ prāñjalayo grṇanti |
 svastīty uktvā maharṣi-siddha-saṅghāḥ
 stuvanti tvām stutibhiḥ puṣkalābhiḥ ||
- 22 rudrādityā vasavo ye ca sādhyā
 viśve 'svinau marutaś coṣmapāś ca |
 gandharva-yakṣāsura-siddha-saṅghā
 vīkṣante tvā vismitās caiva sarve ||
- 23 rūpam mahat te bahu-vaktra-netraṁ
 mahā-bāho bahu-bāhūru-pādam |
 bahūdaram bahu-damṣṭrā-karālāṁ
 dṛṣṭvā lokāḥ pravyathitās tathāham ||
- 24 nabhaḥ-sprṣam dīptam aneka-varṇam
 vyāptānam dīpta-viśāla-netram |
 dṛṣṭvā hi tvām pravyathitāntar-ātmā
 dhṛtim na vindāmi śamaṁ ca viṣṇo ||
- 25 damṣṭrā-karālāni ca te mukhāni
 dṛṣṭvaiva kālānala-sannibhāni |
 diśo na jāne na labhe ca śarma
 prasīda deveśa jagan-nivāsa ||
- 26 amī ca tvām dhṛtarāṣṭrasya putrāḥ
 sarve sahaivāvani-pāla-saṅghaiḥ |
 bhīṣmo droṇaḥ sūta-putras tathāsau
 sahāsmadīyair api yodha-mukhyaiḥ ||
- 27 vaktrāṇi te tvaramāṇā viśanti
 damṣṭrā-karālāni bhayānakāni |
 kecid vilagnā daśanāntareṣu
 sandṛśyante cūrṇitair uttamāṅgaiḥ ||
- 28 yathā nadīnām bahavo 'mbu-vegāḥ
 samudram evābhimukhā dravanti |
 tathā tavāmī nara-loka-vīrā
 viśanti vaktrāṇy abhivijjvalanti ||
- 29 yathā pradīptam jvalanam pataṅgā
 viśanti nāśāya samṛddha-vegāḥ |
 tathaiva nāśāya viśanti lokās
 tavāpi vaktrāṇi samṛddha-vegāḥ ||
- 30 lehiyase grasamānaḥ samantāl
 lokān samagrān vadanair jvaladbhiḥ |
 tejobhir āpūrya jagat samagram
 bhāsas tavogrāḥ pratapanti viṣṇo ||

- 31 ākhyāhi me ko bhavān ugra-rūpo
 namo 'stu te deva-vara prasīda |
 vijñātum icchāmi bhavantam ādyaṁ
 na hi prajānāmi tava pravṛttim ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 32 kālo 'smi loka-kṣaya-kṛt pravṛddho
 lokān samāhartum iha pravṛttaḥ |
 ṛte 'pi tvām na bhaviṣyanti sarve
 ye 'vasthitāḥ pratyānīkeṣu yodhāḥ ||
 33 tasmāt tvam uttiṣṭha yaśo labhasva
 jītvā śātrūn bhuṅkṣva rājyaṁ samṛddham |
 mayaivaite nihatāḥ pūrvam eva
 nimitta-mātraṁ bhava savya-sācin ||
 34 droṇaṁ ca bhīmaṁ ca jayadrathaṁ ca
 karṇaṁ tathānyaṁ api yodha-vīraṁ |
 mayā hatāns tvaṁ jahi mā vyathiṣṭhā
 yudhyasva jetāsi raṇe sapatnān ||

Saṁjaya uvāca

- 35 etac chrutvā vacanaṁ keśavasya
 kṛtāñjalir vepamānaḥ kirīṭi |
 namaskṛtvā bhūya evāha kṛṣṇaṁ
 sa-gadgadaṁ bhīta-bhītaḥ praṇamya ||

Arjuna uvāca

- 36 sthāne hṛṣīkeśa tava prakīrtiā
 jagat prahr̥ṣyaty anurajyate ca |
 rakṣāmsi bhītāni diśo dravanti
 sarve namasyanti ca siddha-saṅghāḥ ||
 37 kasmāc ca te na nameran mahātman
 garīyase brahmaṇo 'py ādi-kartre |
 ananta deveśa jagan-nivāsa
 tvam akṣaraṁ sad-asat tat paraṁ yat ||
 38 tvam ādi-devaḥ puruṣaḥ purāṇas
 tvam asya viśvasya paraṁ nidhānam |
 vettāsi vedyāṁ ca paraṁ ca dhāma
 tvayā tataṁ viśvam ananta-rūpa ||
 39 vāyur yamo 'gnir varuṇaḥ śāśāṅkaḥ
 prajāpatis tvaṁ prapitāmahaś ca |
 namo namas te 'stu sahasra-kṛtvāḥ
 punaś ca bhūyo 'pi namo namas te ||

- 40 namaḥ purastād atha pṛṣṭhatas te
 namo 'stu te sarvata eva sarva |
 ananta-vīryāmita-vikramas tvam
 sarvaṁ samāpnoṣi tato 'si sarvaḥ ||
- 41 sakheti matvā prasabhaṁ yad uktam
 he kṛṣṇa he yādava he sakheti |
 ajānatā mahimānaṁ tavedaṁ
 mayā pramādāt prañayena vāpi ||
- 42 yac cāvahāsārtham asat-kṛto 'si
 vihāra-śayyāsana-bhojaneṣu |
 eko 'tha vāpy acyuta tat-samakṣaṁ
 tat kṣāmaye tvām aham aprameyam ||
- 43 pitāsi lokasya carācarasya
 tvam asya pūjyaś ca gurur garīyān |
 na tvat-samo 'sty abhyadhikaḥ kuto 'nyo
 loka-traye 'py apratīma-prabhāva ||
- 44 tasmāt praṇamya praṇidhāya kāyaṁ
 prasādaye tvām aham īśam īḍyam |
 piteva putrasya sakheva sakhyuḥ
 priyaḥ priyāyārhasi deva soḍhum ||
- 45 adṛṣṭa-pūrvam hr̥ṣito 'smi dṛṣṭvā
 bhayena ca pravyathitaṁ mano me |
 tad eva me darśaya deva-rūpaṁ
 prasīda deveśa jagan-nivāsa ||
- 46 kirīṭinaṁ gadīnaṁ cakra-hastam
 icchāmi tvām draṣṭum ahaṁ tathaiva |
 tenaiva rūpeṇa catur-bhujena
 sahasra-bāho bhava viśva-mūrte ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 47 mayā prasannena tavārjunedaṁ
 rūpaṁ paraṁ darśitam ātma-yogāt |
 tejo-mayaṁ viśvam anantam ādyaṁ
 yaṁ me tvad anyena na dṛṣṭa-pūrvam ||
- 48 na veda-yajñādhyayanair na dānair
 na ca kriyābhir na tapobhir ugraiḥ |
 evaṁ-rūpaḥ śakya ahaṁ nṛ-loke
 draṣṭuṁ tvad anyena kuru-pravīra ||
- 49 mā te vyathā mā ca vimūḍha-bhāvo
 dṛṣṭvā rūpaṁ ghoram īdṛṇ mamedam |
 vyapeta-bhīḥ prīta-manāḥ punas tvam
 tad eva me rūpaṁ idaṁ prapaśya ||

Saṁjaya uvāca

- 50 ity arjunam vāsudevas tathoktvā
svakam rūpam darśayām āsa bhūyaḥ |
āśvāsayām āsa ca bhūtam enam
bhūtvā punaḥ saumya-vapur mahātmā ||

Arjuna uvāca

- 51 dṛṣṭvedaṁ mānuṣam rūpam, tava saumyam janārdana |
idānīm asmi saṁvṛttaḥ, sa-cetāḥ prakṛtiṁ gataḥ ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 52 su-durdarśam idaṁ rūpam, dṛṣṭavān asi yaṁ mama |
devā apy asya rūpasya, nityam darśana-kāṅkṣiṇaḥ ||
53 nāhaṁ vedair na tapasā, na dānena na cejyayā |
śakya evaṁ-vidho draṣṭum, dṛṣṭavān asi mām yathā ||
54 bhaktyā tv ananyayā śakya, ahaṁ evaṁ-vidho 'rjuna |
jñātum draṣṭum ca tattvena, praveṣṭum ca parantapa ||
55 mat-karma-kṛṇ mat-paramo, mad-bhaktaḥ saṅga-varjitaḥ |
nirvairāḥ sarva-bhūteṣu, yaḥ sa mām eti paṇḍava ||

12

Arjuna uvāca

- 1 evaṁ satata-yuktā ye, bhaktās tvām paryupāsate |
ye cāpy akṣaram avyaktaṁ, teṣāṁ ke yoga-vittamāḥ ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 2 mayy āveśya mano ye mām, nitya-yuktā upāsate |
śraddhayaḥ parayopetās, te me yuktatamā matāḥ ||
3 ye tv akṣaram anirdeśyam, avyaktaṁ paryupāsate |
sarvatra-gaṁ acintyam ca, kūṭa-stham acalaṁ dhruvam ||
4 sanniyamyendriya-grāmaṁ, sarvatra sama-buddhayaḥ |
te prāpnuvanti mām eva, sarva-bhūta-hite ratāḥ ||
5 kleśo 'dhikataras teṣāṁ, avyaktāsakta-cetasām |
avyaktā hi gatir duḥkham, dehavadbhīr avāpyate ||
6 ye tu sarvāṇi karmāṇi, mayi saṁnyasya mat-parāḥ |
ananyenaiva yogena, mām dhyāyanta upāsate ||
7 teṣāṁ ahaṁ samuddhartā, mṛtyu-saṁsāra-sāgarāt |
bhavāmi na cirāt pārtha, mayy āveśita-cetasām ||
8 mayy eva mana ādhatsva, mayi buddhiṁ niveśaya |
nivasīṣyasi mayy eva, ata ūrdhvaṁ na saṁśayaḥ ||

- 9 atha cittam samādhātum, na śaknoṣi mayi sthiram |
 abhyāsa-yogena tato, mām icchāptum dhanañjaya ||
- 10 abhyāse 'py asamartho 'si, mat-karma-paramo bhava |
 mad-artham api karmāṇi, kurvan siddhim avāpsyasi ||
- 11 athaitad apy aśakto 'si, kartum mad-yogam āśritaḥ |
 sarva-karma-phala-tyāgaṁ, tataḥ kuru yatātmavān ||
- 12 śreyo hi jñānam abhyāsāj, jñānād dhyānam viśiṣyate |
 dhyānāt karma-phala-tyāgas, tyāgac chāntir anantaram ||
- 13 adveṣṭā sarva-bhūtānām, maitraḥ karuṇa eva ca |
 nirmamo nirahaṅkāraḥ, sama-duḥkha-sukhaḥ kṣamī ||
- 14 santuṣṭaḥ satataṁ yogī, yatātmā dṛḍha-niścayaḥ |
 mayy arpita-mano-budhir, yo mad-bhaktaḥ sa me priyaḥ ||
- 15 yasmān nodvijate loko, lokān nodvijate ca yaḥ |
 harṣāmarṣa-bhayodvegair, mukto yaḥ sa ca me priyaḥ ||
- 16 anapekṣaḥ śucir dakṣa, udāsīno gata-vyathaḥ |
 sarvārambha-parityāgī, yo mad-bhaktaḥ sa me priyaḥ ||
- 17 yo na hṛṣyati na dveṣṭi, na śocati na kāṅkṣati |
 śubhāśubha-parityāgī, bhaktimān yaḥ sa me priyaḥ ||
- 18 samaḥ śatrau ca mitre ca, tathā mānāpamānayoḥ |
 śītoṣṇa-sukha-duḥkheṣu, samaḥ saṅga-vivarjitaḥ ||
- 19 tulya-nindā-stutir maunī, santuṣṭo yena kenacit |
 aniketaḥ sthira-matir, bhaktimān me priyo naraḥ ||
- 20 ye tu dharmyāmṛtam idaṁ, yathoktaṁ paryupāsate |
 śraddadhānā mat-paramā, bhaktās te 'tīva me priyaḥ ||

13

Arjuna uvāca

prakṛtiṁ puruṣaṁ caiva, kṣetraṁ kṣetra-jñam eva ca |
 etad veditum icchāmi, jñānaṁ jñeyam ca keśava ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 1 idaṁ śarīraṁ kaunteya, kṣetraṁ ity abhidhīyate |
 etad yo veti taṁ prāhuḥ, kṣetra-jña iti tad-vidaḥ ||
- 2 kṣetra-jñam cāpi mām viddhi, sarva-kṣetreṣu bhārata |
 kṣetra-kṣetraññayor jñānaṁ, yat taj jñānaṁ mataṁ mama ||
- 3 tat kṣetraṁ yac ca yādṛk ca, yad-vikāri yataś ca yat |
 sa ca yo yat-prabhāvaś ca, tat samāseṇa me śṛṇu ||
- 4 ṛṣibhir bahudhā gītaṁ, chandobhir vividhaiḥ pṛthak |
 brahma-sūtra-padais caiva, hetumadbhir viniścitaib ||
- 5 mahā-bhūtāny ahaṅkāro, buddhir avyaktam eva ca |
 indriyāṇi daśaikaṁ ca, pañca cendriya-gocarāḥ ||

- 6 icchā dveṣaḥ sukhaṁ duḥkhaṁ, saṅghātaś cetanā dhṛtiḥ |
etat kṣetraṁ samāśena, sa-vikāram udāhṛtam ||
- 7 amānitvam adambhitvam, ahiṁsā kṣāntir ājavam |
ācāryopāśanam śaucam, sthairyam ātma-vinigrahaḥ ||
- 8 indriyārtheṣu vairāgyam, anahaṅkāra eva ca |
janma-mṛtyu-jarā-vyādhi-, duḥkha-doṣānudarśanam ||
- 9 asaktir anabhiṣvaṅgaḥ, putra-dāra-grhādiṣu |
nityam ca sama-cittatvam, iṣṭāniṣṭopapattiṣu ||
- 10 mayi cānanya-yogena, bhaktir avyabhicāriṇī |
vivikta-deśa-sevitvam, aratīr jana-saṁsadi ||
- 11 adhyātma-jñāna-nityatvaṁ, tattva-jñānārtha-darśanam |
etaḥ jñānam iti proktam, ajñānam yad ato 'nyathā ||
- 12 jñeyam yat tat pravakṣyāmi, yaj jñātvāmṛtam āśnute |
anādi mat-param brahma, na sat tan nāsad ucyate ||
- 13 sarvataḥ pāṇi-pādaṁ tat, sarvato 'kṣi-śiro-mukham |
sarvataḥ śrutimal loke, sarvam āvṛtya tiṣṭhati ||
- 14 sarvendriya-guṇābhāsaṁ, sarvendriya-vivarjitam |
asaktam sarva-bhṛc caiva, nirguṇam guṇa-bhoktṛ ca ||
- 15 bahir antaś ca bhūtānām, acaram caram eva ca |
sūkṣmatvāt tad avijñeyam, dūra-stham cāntike ca tat ||
- 16 avibhaktaṁ ca bhūteṣu, vibhaktaṁ iva ca sthitam |
bhūta-bhartṛ ca taj jñeyam, grasiṣṇu prabhaviṣṇu ca ||
- 17 jyotiṣām api taj jyotiś, tamaśaḥ param ucyate |
jñānam jñeyam jñāna-gamyam, hr̥di sarvasya viṣṭhitam ||
- 18 iti kṣetraṁ tathā jñānam, jñeyam coktaṁ samāsataḥ |
mad-bhakta etad vijñāya, mad-bhāvāyopapadyate ||
- 19 prakṛtiṁ puruṣam caiva, viddhy anādī ubhāv api |
vikārāmś ca guṇāmś caiva, viddhi prakṛti-sambhavan ||
- 20 kārya-kāraṇa-kartṛtve, hetuḥ prakṛtir ucyate |
puruṣaḥ sukha-duḥkhānām, bhoktṛtve hetur ucyate ||
- 21 puruṣaḥ prakṛti-stho hi, bhukte prakṛti-jān guṇān |
kāraṇam guṇa-saṅgo 'sya, sad-asad-yoni-janmasu ||
- 22 upadraṣṭānumantā ca, bhartā bhoktā maheśvaraḥ |
paramātmēti cāpy ukto, dehe 'smin puruṣaḥ paraḥ ||
- 23 ya evam vetti puruṣam, prakṛtiṁ ca guṇaiḥ saha |
sarvathā vartamāno 'pi, na sa bhūyo 'bhijāyate ||
- 24 dhyānenātmani paśyanti, kecid ātmānam ātmanā |
anye sāṅkhyena yogena, karma-yogena cāpare ||
- 25 anye tv evam ajānantaḥ, śrutvānyebhya upāśate |
te 'pi cātitaranty eva, mṛtyuṁ śruti-parāyaṇāḥ ||
- 26 yāvat sañjāyate kiñcit, sattvaṁ sthāvara-jaṅgamam |
kṣetra-kṣetrajña-saṁyogāt, tad viddhi bharatarābha ||

- 27 samañ sarveṣu bhūteṣu, tiṣṭhantañ parameśvaram |
vinaśyatsv avinaśyantañ, yaḥ paśyati sa paśyati ||
- 28 samañ paśyan hi sarvatra, samavasthitañ īśvaram |
na hinasty ātmanātmānañ, tato yāti parāñ gatim ||
- 29 prakṛtyaiva ca karmāṇi, kriyamāṇāni sarvaśaḥ |
yaḥ paśyati tathātmānam, akartārañ sa paśyati ||
- 30 yadā bhūta-prthag-bhāvam, eka-stham anupaśyati |
tata eva ca vistārañ, brahma sampadyate tadā ||
- 31 anādītvān nirguṇatvāt, paramātmāyam avyayaḥ |
śārīra-stho 'pi kaunteya, na karoti na līpyate ||
- 32 yathā sarva-gatañ saukṣmyād, ākāśañ nopalipyate |
sarvatrāvasthito dehe, tathātmā nopalipyate ||
- 33 yathā prakāśayaty ekaḥ, kṛtsnañ lokam imañ raviḥ |
kṣetrañ kṣetrī tathā kṛtsnañ, prakāśayati bhārata ||
- 34 kṣetra-kṣetrajñayor evam, antarañ jñāna-cakṣuṣā |
bhūta-prakṛti-mokṣaṃ ca, ye vidur yānti te param ||

I4

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 1 parañ bhūyaḥ pravakṣyāmi, jñānānāñ jñānam uttamam |
yaj jñātvā munayaḥ sarve, parāñ siddhim ito gatāḥ ||
- 2 idañ jñānam upāśritya, mama sādharmaḥ āgatāḥ |
sarge 'pi nopajāyante, pralaye na vyathanti ca ||
- 3 mama yonir mahad brahma, tasmīn garbhañ dadhāmy aham |
sambhavaḥ sarva-bhūtānāñ, tato bhavati bhārata ||
- 4 sarva-yoniṣu kaunteya, mūrtayaḥ sambhavanti yāḥ |
tāsāñ brahma mahad yonir, ahañ bīja-pradaḥ pitā ||
- 5 sattvañ rajas tama iti, guṇāḥ prakṛti-sambhavaḥ |
nibadhnanti mahā-bāho, dehe dehinam avyayam ||
- 6 tatra sattvañ nirmalatvāt, prakāśakam anāmayam |
sukha-saṅgena badhnāti, jñāna-saṅgena cānagha ||
- 7 rajo rāgātmakañ viddhi, tṛṣṇā-saṅga-samudbhavam |
tan nibadhnāti kaunteya, karma-saṅgena dehinam ||
- 8 tamas tv ajñāna-jañ viddhi, mohanañ sarva-dehinām |
pramādālasya-nidrābhis, tan nibadhnāti bhārata ||
- 9 sattvañ sukhe sañjayati, rajaḥ karmaṇi bhārata |
jñānam āvṛtya tu tamaḥ, pramāde sañjayaty uta ||
- 10 rajas tamaś cābhibhūya, sattvañ bhavati bhārata |
rajaḥ sattvañ tamaś caiva, tamaḥ sattvañ rajas tathā ||
- 11 sarva-dvāreṣu dehe 'smīn, prakāśa upajāyate |
jñānañ yadā tadā vidyād, vivṛddhañ sattvam ity uta ||

- 12 lobhaḥ pravṛttir ārambhaḥ, karmaṇām aśamaḥ spṛhā |
 rajasy etāni jāyante, vivṛddhe bharatarṣabha ||
- 13 aprakāśo 'pravṛttis ca, pramādo moha eva ca |
 tamasy etāni jāyante, vivṛddhe kuru-nandana ||
- 14 yadā sattve pravṛddhe tu, pralayaṁ yāti deha-bhṛt |
 tadottama-vidāṁ lokān, amalān pratipadyate ||
- 15 rajasi pralayaṁ gatvā, karma-saṁgiṣu jāyate |
 tathā pralīnas tamasi, mūḍha-yoniṣu jāyate ||
- 16 karmaṇaḥ sukṛtasyāhuḥ, sāttvikaṁ nirmalaṁ phalam |
 rajasas tu phalaṁ duḥkham, ajñānaṁ tamasaḥ phalam ||
- 17 sattvāt sañjāyate jñānaṁ, rajaso lobha eva ca |
 pramāda-mohau tamaso, bhavato 'jñānam eva ca ||
- 18 ūrdhvaṁ gacchanti sattva-sthā, madhye tiṣṭhanti rājasāḥ |
 jaghanya-guṇa-vṛtta-sthā, adho gacchanti tāmasāḥ ||
- 19 nānyaṁ guṇebhyaḥ kartāraṁ, yadā draṣṭānupaśyati |
 guṇebhyaḥ ca paraṁ vetti, mad-bhāvaṁ so 'dhigacchati ||
- 20 guṇān etān atīya trīn, dehī deha-samudbhavān |
 janma-mṛtyu-jarā-duḥkhair, vimukto 'mṛtam aśnute ||

Arjuna uvāca

- 21 kair liṅgais trīn guṇān etān, atīto bhavati prabho |
 kim ācāraḥ katham caitāms, trīn guṇān ativartate ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 22 prakāśaṁ ca pravṛttiṁ ca, moham eva ca pāṇḍava |
 na dveṣṭi sampravṛttāni, na niṣṛttāni kāṅkṣati ||
- 23 udāsīna-vad āsīno, guṇair yo na vicālyate |
 guṇā vartanta ity eva, yo 'vatiṣṭhati neṅgate ||
- 24 sama-duḥkha-sukhaḥ sva-sthaḥ, sama-loṣṭāśma-kañcanaḥ |
 tulya-priyāpriyo dhīras, tulya-nindātma-saṁstutiḥ ||
- 25 mātānāmanāyos tulyas, tulyo mitrāri-pakṣayoh |
 sarvārambha-parityāgī, guṇātītaḥ sa ucyate ||
- 26 mām ca yo 'vyabhicāreṇa, bhakti-yogena sevate |
 sa guṇān samatīyaitān, brahma-bhūyāya kalpate ||
- 27 brahmaṇo hi pratiṣṭhāham, amṛtasyāvyaayasa ca |
 śāśvatasya ca dharmasya, sukhasyaikāntikasya ca ||

I5

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- I ūrdhva-mūlam adhaḥ-śākham, aśvatthaṁ prāhur avyayam |
 chandāmsi yasya parṇāni, yas taṁ veda sa veda-vit ||

- 2 adhaś cordhvaṁ prasṛtās tasya śākhā
guṇa-pravṛddhā viśaya-pravālāḥ |
adhaś ca mūlāny anusantatāni
karmānubandhīni manuṣya-loke ||
- 3 na rūpam asyeha tathopalabhyate
nānto na cādir na ca sampratiṣṭhā |
aśvattham enaṁ su-virūḍha-mūlam
asaṅga-śastreṇa dṛḍhena chittvā ||
- 4 tataḥ padaṁ tat parimārgitavyaṁ
yasmīn gatā na nivartanti bhūyaḥ |
tam eva cādyāṁ puruṣaṁ prapadye
yataḥ pravṛttiḥ prasṛtā purāṇī ||
- 5 nirmāna-mohā jīta-saṅga-doṣā
adhyātma-nityā vinivṛtta-kāmāḥ |
dvandvair vimuktāḥ sukha-duḥkha-saṁjñair
gacchanty amūḍhāḥ padam avyayaṁ tat ||
- 6 na tad bhāsayate sūryo, na śāsāṅko na pāvakaḥ |
yad gatvā na nivartante, tad dhāma paramaṁ mama ||
- 7 mamaivārśo jīva-loke, jīva-bhūtaḥ sanātanaḥ |
manaḥ-ṣaṣṭhānīndriyāṇi, prakṛti-sthāni karṣati ||
- 8 śarīraṁ yad avāpnoti, yac cāpy utkrāmatīśvaraḥ |
gr̥hītvaitāni saṁyāti, vāyur gandhān ivāśayāt ||
- 9 śrotraṁ cakṣuḥ sparśanaṁ ca, rasanāṁ ghrāṇameva ca |
adhiṣṭhāya manaś cāyaṁ, viśayān upasevate ||
- 10 utkrāmantaṁ sthitaṁ vāpi, bhuñjānaṁ vā guṇānvitam |
vimūḍhā nānupaśyanti, paśyanti jñāna-cakṣuṣaḥ ||
- 11 yatanto yoginaś cainaṁ, paśyanty ātmāny avasthitaṁ |
yatanto 'py akṛtātmāno, nainaṁ paśyanty acetasaḥ ||
- 12 yad āditya-gataṁ tejo, jagad bhāsayate 'khilam |
yac candramasī yac cāgnau, tat tejo viddhi māmakam ||
- 13 gām āviśya ca bhūtāni, dhārayāmy aham ojasā |
puṣṇāmi cauṣadhīḥ sarvāḥ, somo bhūtvā rasātmakaḥ ||
- 14 ahaṁ vaiśvānaro bhūtvā, prāṇināṁ deham āśritaḥ |
prāṇāpāna-samāyuktaḥ, pacāmy annaṁ catur-vidham ||
- 15 sarvasya cāhaṁ hṛdi sanniviṣṭo
mattaḥ smṛtir jñānam apohanaṁ ca |
vedaś ca sarvair aham eva vedyo
vedānta-kṛd veda-vid eva cāham ||
- 16 dvāv imau puruṣau loke, kṣaraś cākṣara eva ca |
kṣaraḥ sarvāṇi bhūtāni, kūṭa-stho 'kṣara ucyate ||
- 17 uttamaḥ puruṣas tv anyāḥ, paramātmety udāhṛtaḥ |
yo loka-trayaṁ āviśya, bibharty avyaya īśvaraḥ ||

- 18 yasmāt kṣaram atīto 'ham, akṣarād api cottamaḥ |
ato 'smi loke vede ca, prathitaḥ puruṣottamaḥ ||
- 19 yo mām evam asammūḍho, jñāti puruṣottamam |
sa sarva-vid bhajati mām, sarva-bhāvena bhārata ||
- 20 iti guhyatamaṁ śāstram, idam uktam mayānagha |
etad buddhvā buddhimān syāt, kṛta-kṛtyaś ca bhārata ||

16

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 1 abhayaṁ sattva-saṁśuddhir, jñāna-yoga-vyavasthitiḥ |
dānaṁ damaś ca yajñāś ca, svādhyāyas tapa ārjavam ||
- 2 ahimsā satyam akrodhas, tyāgaḥ śāntir apaisunam |
dayā bhūteṣv aloluptvaṁ, mārdaṁ hrīr acāpalam ||
- 3 tejaḥ kṣamā dhṛtiḥ śaucam, adroho nāti-mānitā |
bhavanti sampadaṁ daivīm, abhijātasya bhārata ||
- 4 dambho darpo 'timānaś ca, krodhaḥ pārūṣyam eva ca |
ajñānaṁ cābhijātasya pārtha sampadam āsurīm ||
- 5 daivī sampad vimokṣāya, nibandhāyāsurī matā |
mā śucaḥ sampadam daivīm, abhijāto 'si pāṇḍava ||
- 6 dvau bhūta-sargau loke 'smīn, daiva āsura eva ca |
daivo vistaraśaḥ prokta, āsuram pārtha me śṛṇu ||
- 7 pravṛttim ca nivṛttim ca, janā na vidur āsurāḥ |
na śaucam nāpi cācāro, na satyaṁ teṣu vidyate ||
- 8 asatyam apratiṣṭhaṁ te, jagad āhur anīśvaram |
aparaspara-sambhūtaṁ, kim anyat kāma-haitukam ||
- 9 etān dṛṣṭim avaṣṭabhya, naṣṭātmāno 'lpa-buddhayaḥ |
prabhavanty ugra-karmāṇaḥ, kṣayāya jagato 'hitāḥ ||
- 10 kāmam āśritya duṣpūram, dambha māna-madānvitāḥ |
mohād gṛhītvāsad-grāhān, pravartante 'śuci-vratāḥ ||
- 11 cintām aparimeyāṁ ca, pralayāntām upāśritāḥ |
kāmapabhoga-paramā, etāvad iti niścītāḥ ||
- 12 āśa-pāśa-śatair baddhāḥ, kāma-krodha-parāyaṇāḥ |
ihante kāma-bhogārtham, anyāyenārtha-sañcayān ||
- 13 idam adya mayā labdham, idam prāpsyē manoratham |
idam astīdam api me, bhaviṣyati punar dhanam ||
- 14 asau mayā hataḥ śatrur, haniṣyē cāparān api |
īśvaro 'ham ahaṁ bhogī, siddho 'haṁ balavān sukhī ||
- 15 ādhyo 'bhijanavān asmi, ko 'nyo 'sti sadṛśo mayā |
yakṣye dāsyāmi modīṣya, ity ajñāna-vimohitāḥ ||
- 16 aneka-citta-vibhrāntā, moha-jāla-samāvr̥tāḥ |
prasaktāḥ kāma-bhogeṣu, patanti narake 'śucau ||

- 17 ātma-sambhāvitāḥ stadbhā, dhana-māna-madānvitāḥ |
 yajante nāma-yajñais te, dambhenāvidhi-pūrvakam ||
- 18 ahaṅkāraṁ balaṁ darpaṁ, kāmaṁ krodhaṁ ca saṁśritāḥ |
 mām ātma-para-deheṣu, pradviṣanto 'bhyasūyakāḥ ||
- 19 tān ahaṁ dviṣataḥ krūrān, saṁsāreṣu narādhamān |
 kṣipāmy ajasram aśubhān, āsurīṣv eva yoniṣu ||
- 20 āsurīm yonim āpannā, mūḍhā janmani janmani |
 mām aprāpyaiva kaunteya, tato yānty adhamām gatim ||
- 21 tri-vidhaṁ narakasyedaṁ, dvāraṁ nāśanam ātmanaḥ |
 kāmaḥ krodhas tathā lobhas, tasmād etat trayam tyajet ||
- 22 etair vimuktaḥ kaunteya, tamo-dvārais tribhir naraḥ |
 ācaraty ātmanaḥ śreyas, tato yāti parām gatim ||
- 23 yaḥ śāstra-vidhim utsṛjya, vartate kāma-kārataḥ |
 na sa siddhim avāpnoti, na sukhaṁ na parām gatim ||
- 24 tasmāc chāstraṁ pramāṇam te, kāryākārya-vyavasthitau |
 jñātvā śāstra-vidhānoktaṁ, karma kartum ihārhasi ||

I7

Arjuna uvāca

- 1 ye śāstra-vidhim utsṛjya, yajante śraddhayānvitāḥ |
 teṣāṁ niṣṭhā tu kā kṛṣṇa, sattvam āho rajas tamaḥ ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 2 tri-vidhā bhavati śraddhā, dehinām sā svabhāva-jā |
 sāttvikī rājasī caiva, tāmasī ceti tām śṛṇu ||
- 3 sattvānurūpā sarvasya, śraddhā bhavati bhārata |
 śraddhā-mayo 'yaṁ puruṣo, yo yac-chraddhaḥ sa eva saḥ ||
- 4 yajante sāttvikā devān, yakṣa-rakṣāṁsī rājasāḥ |
 pretān bhūta-gaṇāṁś cānye, yajante tāmasā janāḥ ||
- 5 aśāstra-vihitaṁ ghoram, tapyante ye tapo janāḥ |
 dambhāhaṅkāra-saṁyuktāḥ, kāma-rāga-balānvitāḥ ||
- 6 karṣayantaḥ śarīra-sthaṁ, bhūta-grāmam acetasaḥ |
 mām caivāntaḥ śarīra-sthaṁ, tān viddhy āsura-niścayān ||
- 7 āhāras tv api sarvasya, tri-vidho bhavati priyaḥ |
 yajñas tapas tathā dānam, teṣāṁ bhedaṁ imaṁ śṛṇu ||
- 8 āyuh-sattva-balārogya-, sukha-prīti-vivardhanāḥ |
 rasyāḥ snigdhaḥ sthirā hṛdyā, āhārāḥ sāttvika-priyāḥ ||
- 9 kaṭv-amlā-lavaṇāty-uṣṇa-, tīkṣṇa-rūkṣa-vidāhinaḥ |
 āhārā rājasasyeṣṭā, duḥkha-śokāmaya-pradāḥ ||
- 10 yāta-yāmaṁ gata-rasaṁ, pūti paryuṣitaṁ ca yat |
 ucchiṣṭam api cāmedhyaṁ, bhojanaṁ tāmasa-priyam ||

- 11 aphalākāṅkṣibhir yajño, vidhi-dṛṣṭo ya ijjate |
 yaṣṭavyam eveti manaḥ, samādhāya sa sātṭvikah ||
 12 abhisandhāya tu phalaṁ, dambhārtham api caiva yat |
 ijjate bharata-śreṣṭha, taṁ yajñaṁ viddhi rājasam ||
 13 vidhi-hīnam aśṛṣṭānnaṁ, mantra-hīnam adakṣiṇam |
 śraddhā-virahitaṁ yajñaṁ, tāmasaṁ paricakṣate ||
 14 deva-dvija-guru-prājña-, pūjanaṁ śaucam ārjavam |
 brahmacaryam ahimsā ca, śarīraṁ tapa ucyate ||
 15 anudvega-karaṁ vākyam, satyaṁ priya-hitaṁ ca yat |
 svādhyāyābhyasanaṁ caiva, vāñ-mayaṁ tapa ucyate ||
 16 manaḥ-prasādaḥ saumyatvaṁ, maunam ātma-vinigrahaḥ |
 bhāva-saṁsuddhir ity etat, tapo mānasam ucyate ||
 17 śraddhayā parayā taptaṁ, tapas tat tri-vidhaṁ naraiḥ |
 aphalākāṅkṣibhir yuktaiḥ, sātṭvikaṁ paricakṣate ||
 18 satkāra-māna-pūjārthaṁ, tapo dambhena caiva yat |
 kriyate tad iha proktaṁ, rājasam calam adhruvam ||
 19 mūḍhā-grāheṇātmano yat, pīḍayā kriyate tapaḥ |
 parasyotsādanārthaṁ vā, tat tāmasam udāhṛtam ||
 20 dātavyam iti yad dānaṁ, dīyate 'nupakārine |
 deśe kāle ca pātre ca, tad dānaṁ sātṭvikaṁ smṛtam ||
 21 yat tu pratyupakārārthaṁ, phalam uddīśya vā punaḥ |
 dīyate ca parikliṣṭaṁ, tad dānaṁ rājasam smṛtam ||
 22 adeśa-kāle yad dānam, apātrebhyaś ca dīyate |
 asat-kṛtam avajñātaṁ, tat tāmasam udāhṛtam ||
 23 om tat sad iti nirdeśo, brahmaṇas tri-vidhaḥ smṛtaḥ |
 brāhmaṇas tena vedāś ca, yajñāś ca vihitaḥ purā ||
 24 tasmād om ity udāhṛtya, yajña-dāna-tapaḥ-kriyāḥ |
 pravartante vidhānuktāḥ, satataṁ brahma-vādinām ||
 25 tad ity anabhisandhāya, phalaṁ yajña-tapaḥ-kriyāḥ |
 dāna-kriyāś ca vividhāḥ, kriyante mokṣa-kāṅkṣibhiḥ ||
 26 sad-bhāve sādhu-bhāve ca, sad ity etat prayujyate |
 praśaste karmaṇi tathā, sac-chabdaḥ pārtha yujyate ||
 27 yajñe tapasi dāne ca, sthitiḥ sad iti cocyate |
 karma caiva tad-arthīyaṁ, sad ity evābhidhiyate ||
 28 aśraddhayā hutaṁ dattaṁ, tapas taptaṁ kṛtaṁ ca yat |
 asad ity ucyate pārtha, na ca tat pretya no iha ||

18

Arjuna uvāca

- I sarīnyāsasya mahā-bāho, tattvam icchāmi veditum |
 tyāgasya ca hr̥ṣīkeśa, pr̥thak keśi-niṣūdana ||

Śrī-Bhagavān uvāca

- 2 kāmānām karmaṇām nyāsam, saṁnyāsam kavayo viduḥ |
sarva-karma-phala-tyāgam, prāhus tyāgam vicakṣaṇāḥ ||
- 3 tyājyaṁ doṣa-vad ity eke, karma prāhur maṇiṣiṇaḥ |
yajña-dāna-tapaḥ-karma, na tyājyam iti cāpare ||
- 4 niścayaṁ śṛṇu me tatra, tyāge bhārata-sattama |
tyāgo hi puruṣa-vyāghra, tri-vidhaḥ samprakīrtitaḥ ||
- 5 yajña-dāna-tapaḥ-karma, na tyājyaṁ kāryam eva tat |
yajño dānaṁ tapaś caiva, pāvanāni maṇiṣiṇām ||
- 6 etāny api tu karmāṇi, saṅgaṁ tyaktvā phalāni ca |
kartavyānīti me pārtha, niścitaṁ matam uttamam ||
- 7 niyatasya tu saṁnyāsaḥ, karmaṇo nopapadyate |
mohāt tasya parityāgas, tāmasaḥ parikīrtitaḥ ||
- 8 duḥkham ity eva yat karma, kāya-kleśa-bhayāt tyajet |
sa kṛtvā rājasam tyāgam, naiva tyāga-phalaṁ labhet ||
- 9 kāryam ity eva yat karma, niyataṁ kriyate 'rjuna |
saṅgaṁ tyaktvā phalaṁ caiva, sa tyāgaḥ sāttviko mataḥ ||
- 10 na dveṣṭy akuśalaṁ karma, kuśale nānuṣajjate |
tyāgī sattva-samāviṣṭo, medhāvī chinna-saṁśayaḥ ||
- 11 na hi deha-bhṛtā śakyaṁ, tyaktuṁ karmāṇy aśeṣataḥ |
yas tu karma-phala-tyāgī, sa tyāgīty abhidhīyate ||
- 12 amiṣṭam iṣṭam miśraṁ ca, tri-vidhaṁ karmaṇaḥ phalam |
bhavaty atyāginām pretya, na tu saṁnyāsinām kvacit ||
- 13 pañcāitāni mahā-bāho, kāraṇāni nibodha me |
sāṅkhye kṛtānte proktāni, siddhaye sarva-karmaṇām ||
- 14 adhiṣṭhānaṁ tathā kartā, karaṇaṁ ca pṛthag-vidham |
vividhāś ca pṛthak ceṣṭā, daivaṁ caivātra pañcamam ||
- 15 śarīra-vān-manobhir yat, karma prārabhate naraḥ |
nyāyāṁ vā viparītaṁ vā, pañcaite tasya hetavaḥ ||
- 16 tatraivaṁ sati kartāram, ātmānaṁ kevalaṁ tu yaḥ |
paśyaty akṛta-buddhitvān, na sa paśyati durmatīḥ ||
- 17 yasya nāhaṅkṛto bhāvo, buddhir yasya na lipyate |
hatvāpi sa imāṇī lokān, na hanti na nibadhyate ||
- 18 jñānaṁ jñeyam pari-jñātā, tri-vidhā karma-codanā |
karaṇaṁ karma kartetī, tri-vidhaḥ karma-saṅgrahaḥ ||
- 19 jñānaṁ karma ca kartā ca, tridhaiva guṇa-bhedataḥ |
procyate guṇa-saṅkhyāne, yathāvac chṛṇu tāny api ||
- 20 sarva-bhūteṣu yenaikaṁ, bhāvam avyayam iṣṭate |
avibhaktaṁ vibhakteṣu, taj jñānaṁ viddhi sāttvikam ||
- 21 pṛthaktvena tu taj jñānaṁ, nānā-bhāvān pṛthag-vidhān |
vetti sarveṣu bhūteṣu, taj jñānaṁ viddhi rājasam ||
- 22 yat tu kṛtsna-vad ekasmin, kārye saktam ahaitukam |
atattvārtha-vad alpaṁ ca, tat tāmasam udāhṛtam ||

- 23 niyataṁ saṅga-rahitam, arāga-dveṣataḥ kṛtam |
aphala-prepsunā karma, yat tat sātṭvikam ucyate ||
- 24 yat tu kāmepsunā karma, sāhaṅkāreṇa vā punaḥ |
kriyate bahulāyāsaṁ, tad rājasam udāhṛtam ||
- 25 anubandham kṣayaṁ hiṁsām, anapekṣya ca pauraṣam |
mohād ārabhyate karma, yat tat tāmasam ucyate ||
- 26 mukta-saṅgo 'nahaṁ-vādī, dhṛty-utsāha-samanvitaḥ |
siddhy-asiddhyor nirvikāraḥ, kartā sātṭvika ucyate ||
- 27 rāgī karma-phala-prepsur, lubdho hiṁsātmako 'śuciḥ |
harṣa-śokānvitaḥ kartā, rājasah parikīrtitaḥ ||
- 28 ayuktaḥ prākṛtaḥ stabdhaḥ, śaṭho naikṛtiko 'lasaḥ |
viṣādī dīrgha-sūtrī ca, kartā tāmasa ucyate ||
- 29 buddher bhedaṁ dhṛteś caiva, guṇatas tri-vidham śṛṇu |
procyamānam aśeṣeṇa, pṛthaktvena dhanañjaya ||
- 30 pravṛttim ca nivṛttim ca, kāryākārye bhayaḥbhaye |
bandhaṁ mokṣaṁ ca yā vetti, buddhiḥ sā pārtha sātṭvikī ||
- 31 yayā dharmam adharmaṁ ca, kāryaṁ cākāryam eva ca |
ayathāvāt prajānāti, buddhiḥ sā pārtha rājasī ||
- 32 adharmaṁ dharmam iti yā, manyate tamasāvṛtā |
sarvārthān viparītānś ca, buddhiḥ sā pārtha tāmasī ||
- 33 dhṛtyā yayā dhārayate, manaḥ-prāṇendriya-kriyāḥ |
yogenāvyaabhicāriṇyā, dhṛtiḥ sā pārtha sātṭvikī ||
- 34 yayā tu dharma-kāmārthān, dhṛtyā dhārayate 'rjuna |
prasaṅgena phalākāṅkṣī, dhṛtiḥ sā pārtha rājasī ||
- 35 yayā svapnaṁ bhayaṁ śokaṁ, viṣādaṁ madam eva ca |
na vimuñcati durmedhā, dhṛtiḥ sā pārtha tāmasī ||
- 36 sukhaṁ tv idānīm tri-vidhaṁ, śṛṇu me bharatarṣabha |
abhyāsād ramate yatra, duḥkhāntaṁ ca nigacchati ||
- 37 yat tad agre viṣam iva, pariṇāme 'mṛtopamam |
tat sukhaṁ sātṭvikam proktam, ātma-buddhi-prasāda-jam ||
- 38 viṣayendriya-saṁyogād, yat tad agre 'mṛtopamam |
pariṇāme viṣam iva, tat sukhaṁ rājasam smṛtam ||
- 39 yad agre cānubandhe ca, sukhaṁ mohanam ātmanaḥ |
nidrālasya-pramādottham, tat tāmasam udāhṛtam ||
- 40 na tad asti pṛthivyām vā, divi deveṣu vā punaḥ |
sattvaṁ prakṛti-jair muktaṁ, yad ebhiḥ syāt tribhir guṇaiḥ ||
- 41 brāhmaṇa-kṣatriya-viśāṁ, śūdrāṇāṁ ca parantapa |
karmāṇi pravibhaktāni, svabhāva-prabhavair guṇaiḥ ||
- 42 śamo damas tapaḥ śaucaṁ, kṣāntir ārjavam eva ca |
jñānaṁ vijñānam āstikyam, brahma-karma svabhāva-jam ||
- 43 śauryaṁ tejo dhṛtir dākṣyaṁ, yuddhe cāpy apalāyanam |
dānam īśvara-bhāvaś ca, kṣātra-karma svabhāva-jam ||

- 44 kṛṣi-go-rakṣya-vāṇijyaṁ, vaiśya-karma svabhāva-jam |
paricaryātmakaṁ karma, śūdrasyāpi svabhāva-jam ||
- 45 sve sve karmaṇy abhirataḥ, saṁsiddhiṁ labhate ṇarah |
sva-karma-nirataḥ siddhiṁ, yathā vindati tac chr̥ṇu ||
- 46 yataḥ pravṛttir bhūtānāṁ, yena sarvaṁ idaṁ tatam |
sva-karmaṇā tam abhyarcya, siddhiṁ vindati mānavaḥ ||
- 47 śreyān sva-dharmo viguṇaḥ, para-dharmāt sv-anuṣṭhitāt |
svabhāva-niyataṁ karma, kurvan nāpnoti kilbiṣam ||
- 48 saha-jam karma kaunteya, sa-doṣam api na tyajet |
sarvārambhā hi doṣeṇa, dhūmenāgnir ivāvṛtāḥ ||
- 49 asakta-buddhiḥ sarvatra, jītātmā vigata-spr̥haḥ |
naiṣkarmya-siddhiṁ paramāṁ, saṁnyāsenādhigacchati ||
- 50 siddhiṁ prāpto yathā brahma, tathāpnoti nibodha me |
samāsenaiva kaunteya, niṣṭhā jñānasya yā parā ||
- 51 buddhyā viśuddhayā yukto, dhr̥tyātmānaṁ niyamy ca |
śabdādīn viśayāṁs tyaktvā, rāga-dveṣau vyudasya ca ||
- 52 vivikta-sevī laghv-āśī, yata-vāk-kāya-mānasaḥ |
dhyāna-yoga-paro nityaṁ, vairāgyaṁ samupāśritaḥ ||
- 53 ahaṅkāraṁ balaṁ darpaṁ, kāmaṁ krodhaṁ parigrahaṁ |
vimucya nirmamaḥ śānto, brahma-bhūyāya kalpate ||
- 54 brahma-bhūtaḥ prasannātmā, na śocati na kāṅkṣati |
samaḥ sarveṣu bhūteṣu, mad-bhaktiṁ labhate parām ||
- 55 bhaktyā mām abhijānāti, yāvān yaś cāsmi tattvataḥ |
tato mām tattvato jñātvā, viśate tad-anantaram ||
- 56 sarva-karmāṇy api sadā, kurvāṇo mad-vyapāśrayaḥ |
mat-prasādād avāpnoti, śāśvataṁ padam avyayam ||
- 57 cetasā sarva-karmāṇi, mayi saṁnyasya mat-paraḥ |
buddhi-yogam upāśritya, mac-cittaḥ satataṁ bhava ||
- 58 mac-cittaḥ sarva-durgāṇi, mat-prasādāt tariṣyasi |
atha cet tvam ahaṅkāraṁ, na śroṣyasi vinaṅkṣasi ||
- 59 yad ahaṅkāraṁ āśritya, na yotsya iti manyase |
mithyaiṣa vyavasāyas te, prakṛtis tvām niyokṣyati ||
- 60 svabhāva-jena kaunteya, nibaddhaḥ svena karmaṇā |
kartuṁ necchasi yan mohāt, kariṣyasi avaśo 'pi tat ||
- 61 īśvaraḥ sarva-bhūtānāṁ, hṛd-deśe 'rjuna tiṣṭhati |
bhrāmayan sarva-bhūtāni, yantrārūḍhāni māyayā ||
- 62 tam eva śaraṇaṁ gaccha, sarva-bhāvena bhārata |
tat-prasādāt parām śāntiṁ, sthānaṁ prāpsyasi śāśvataṁ ||
- 63 iti te jñānam ākhyātaṁ, guhyād guhyataraṁ mayā |
vimṛśyaitad aśeṣeṇa, yathecchasi tathā kuru ||
- 64 sarva-guhyatamaṁ bhūyaḥ, śṛṇu me paramaṁ vacaḥ |
iṣṭo 'si me dṛḍham iti, tato vakṣyāmi te hitam ||

- 65 man-manā bhava mad-bhakto, mad-yājī māṁ namaskuru |
mām evaiśyasi satyaṁ te, pratijāne priyo 'si me ||
- 66 sarva-dharmān parityajya, mām ekaṁ śaraṇaṁ vraja |
ahaṁ tvā sarva-pāpebhyo, mokṣayiṣyāmi mā śucaḥ ||
- 67 idaṁ te nātapaskāya, nābhaktāya kadācana |
na cāśuśrūṣave vācyaṁ, na ca mām yo 'bhyasūyati ||
- 68 ya idaṁ paramaṁ guhyaṁ, mad-bhakteṣv abhidhāsyati |
bhaktiṁ mayi parāṁ kṛtvā, mām evaiśyaty asaṁśayaḥ ||
- 69 na ca tasmān manuṣyeṣu, kaścin me priya-kṛttamaḥ |
bhavitā na ca me tasmād, anyaḥ priyataro bhuvi ||
- 70 adhyeṣyate ca ya imaṁ, dharmyaṁ saṁvādam āvayoḥ |
jñāna-yajñena tenāham, iṣṭaḥ syām iti me matiḥ ||
- 71 śraddhāvān anasūyaś ca, śṛṇuyād api yo naraḥ |
so 'pi muktaḥ śubhāṁl lokān, prāpnuyāt puṇya-karmaṇām ||
- 72 kaccid etad chrutaṁ pārtha, tvayaikāgreṇa cetasā |
kaccid ajñāna-sammohaḥ, praṇaṣṭas te dhanañjaya ||

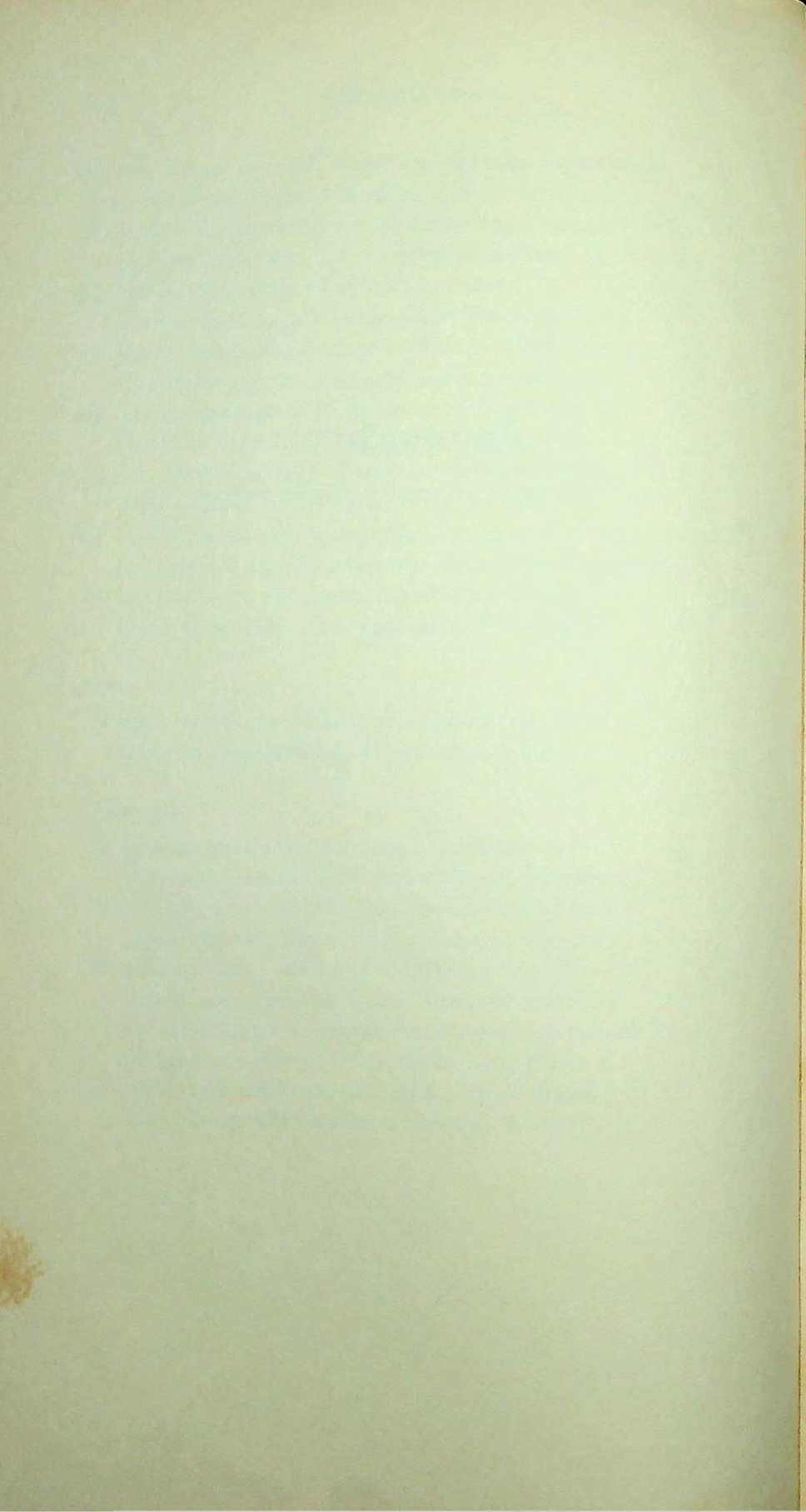
Arjuna uvāca

- 73 naṣṭo mohaḥ smṛtir labdhā, tvat-prasādān mayācyuta |
sthito 'smi gata-sandehaḥ, kariṣye vacanaṁ tava ||

Saṁjaya uvāca

- 74 ity ahaṁ vāsudevasya, pārthasya ca mahātmanaḥ |
saṁvādam imam aśrauṣam, adbhutaṁ roma-harṣaṇam ||
- 75 vyāsa-prasādāc chrutavān, etad guhyam ahaṁ param |
yogaṁ yogeśvarāt kṛṣṇāt, sāksāt kathayataḥ svayam ||
- 76 rājan saṁsmṛtya saṁsmṛtya, saṁvādam imam adbhutam |
keśavārjunayoḥ puṇyaṁ, hṛṣyāmi ca muhur muhuh ||
- 77 tac ca saṁsmṛtya saṁsmṛtya, rūpam aty-adbhutaṁ hareḥ |
vismayo me mahān rājan, hṛṣyāmi ca punaḥ punaḥ ||
- 78 yatra yogeśvaraḥ kṛṣṇo, yatra pārtho dhanur-dharaḥ |
tatra śrīr vijayo bhūtir, dhruvā nītir matir mama ||

Appendices



Pronunciation of Sanskrit

Sanskrit words and names in the translated verses are given in a phonetic spelling utilizing a macron for alternate pronunciations of the vowels *a*, *i*, and *u* (see the pronunciation table below for the distinct sounds these six vowels make). The standardized full transliteration system for the Sanskrit alphabet is utilized for Sanskrit words in the notes and other parts of this book. Below are the vowels and consonants that require clarification. Transliterated consonants not listed below are pronounced as in English.

Vowels

a	like <i>a</i> in <i>about</i>
ā	like <i>a</i> in <i>yacht</i>
ai	like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> (<i>ai</i> represents a single transliterated vowel)
au	like <i>ow</i> in <i>cow</i> (<i>au</i> represents a single transliterated vowel)
e	like <i>e</i> in <i>prey</i>
i	like <i>i</i> in <i>bit</i>
ī	like <i>i</i> in <i>magazine</i>
ṛ	like <i>lree</i> (this vowel is rarely found; it is pronounced by combining the English <i>l</i> and <i>r</i> with an <i>ee</i> sound following)
o	like <i>o</i> in <i>home</i>
ṛ	like <i>ri</i> in <i>rich</i>
ṝ	like <i>rea</i> in <i>reach</i> (this vowel is rarely found)
u	like <i>u</i> in <i>put</i>
ū	like <i>u</i> in <i>rude</i>

Consonants

c	like <i>ch</i> in <i>chart</i> (never pronounced like the English <i>k</i> or <i>s</i>)
d	like <i>d</i> in <i>lude</i>
ḍ	like <i>d</i> in <i>red</i>

- g like *g* in *gate* (the soft *g* as pronounced in the word *germane* is found only in the Sanskrit letter *j*)
- h like *h* in *hot* (standing alone or followed by a vowel, without following a consonant)
- _+h any consonant followed by *h* is merely aspirated, like the subtle aspirated breath sound naturally occurring in the word *pot* (whereas aspiration is naturally absent from *dot*); thus *ph* sounds like the letter in the word *loophole* (never an *f* sound as in *pharmacy*); and *th* sounds like the *t* in the word *torn* (never the *th* sound as in *thorn*)
- ḥ is the silent consonant often found at the end of words; when the word is at the end of a sentence, the short form of the vowel of the last syllable is duplicated: for example, *rāmaḥ* sounds like *rāmaha*, and *śaktiḥ* sounds like *śaktihee* (underscored letters indicate duplicated syllable)
- j like *j* in *joy*
- ṁ like *n* in the French word *bon*
- n like *n* in *soon*
- ṇ like *n* in *song*
- ñ like *n* in *staunch*
- ṣ like *n* in *sand*
- ph like *p* in *pan* (with aspirated breath; it never makes the sound of *f* as in English, for example, the *ph* in the word *phase*)
- ṛ (is a vowel; see *ṛ* in the section above entitled "Vowels")
- s like *s* in *suit*
- ś like *sh* in *shoot* (this sibilant and the following are commonly pronounced by English speakers without any discernable distinction)
- ṣ like *sh* in *shout*
- t like *t* in *tool* (with tip of tongue near the place where the teeth meet the roof of the mouth)
- ṭ like *t* in *lute* (with tip of tongue toward the middle of the roof of the mouth)

In most compound consonants, each consonant retains its original sound in combination with the others. However, the combination *jñ* as found in the word *jñāna* is often pronounced like the *gy* in the English compound *dog-yard*.

On This Translation

Every verse of the Bhagavad Gītā is a meditation. Each verse is translated so as to bring out its meditative richness, as well as its place within the continuum of verses. I have attempted to make this English translation a “reincarnation” of the mood and feeling of the original Sanskrit verse. My goal is for the reader to receive a powerful experience of the original, to be able to hear something of the poetic form and qualities of the Sanskrit verse in the English rendering.

My approach to translation, aided by the inclusion of supplementary notes, is meant to give the reader an immediate grasp of the ideas of the Gītā. In the notes, readers will find the meanings of untranslated Sanskrit words retained in the translation and further explanation of names and ideas found in the verses. The reader will seldom need to leave the page to consult any other part of the book for better understanding, even during a first reading of the translation, although a comprehensive index has been provided. With the new reader of the text in mind, as well as spiritual aspirants and students or scholars of religion, I have presented the Bhagavad Gītā in a translation that is very faithful to the original text and reflects some of the literary qualities of the original, yet which can be easily read and grasped.

My approach to translating this famous work can be explained in contrast with the two other most common approaches. Other translations often either *free* the original text, in what I call “free prose” style, or *constrict* the original Sanskrit verse, in what I call “constricted quatrain” verse. The result is too often a translation that either ignores the poetic qualities of the original by treating verses as if they were loosely assembled ideas, or one that loses important senses of the original in fitting the translation into a verse form that is necessarily constricting. The free prose approach loosely embodies, at best, only a small sense of the rhythms and ordering of meanings and ideas as they present themselves, giving the text a loose and random form very different from that of the original. On the other hand, the quatrain verse approach attempts to force the English translation to be as concise as the original

inflected words of the Sanskrit. This approach proves ineffective precisely because Sanskrit is a highly inflected language that requires more breathing room when reincarnated in English.

The poetics and ideas of each verse demand a unique treatment when translated into English—a very specific type of lineation that is sensitive to the subtleties of phrasing and cadence in the original Sanskrit verse. My approach could be described as “dedicated free verse translation,” which preserves as much of the poetic sense as possible, while incorporating the full meaning of the original. This approach seeks to reap the advantages of the other two approaches yet avoid their shortcomings, thus attempting to reincarnate something of the power and spirit of the original verse. Here, “free verse” is not as “free” as we might indicate in the Western poetic sense of the term. Rather, verse lines in the English are strictly and carefully “dedicated,” or tied to the verse’s original rhythms of meaning and epiphanic qualities. The ordering of ideas and words in the original is retained as much as is possible without sacrificing their meaning in English. This approach gives the English reader a much fuller sense of the actual meaning of the verse. For example, the original Sanskrit in the English transliteration of the first verse of the text appears in the following form:

dhṛtarāṣṭra uvāca
dharma-kṣetre kuru-kṣetre, samavetā yuyutsavaḥ |
māmakāḥ pāṇḍavās caiva, kim akurvata sañjaya ||

This verse in dedicated free verse translation is presented below, juxtaposed to the corresponding transliterated words of the verse:

Dhritarāshtra said:	<i>dhṛtarāṣṭra uvāca</i>
On the field of dharma,	<i>dharma-kṣetre</i>
on the field of Kuru,	<i>kuru-kṣetre</i>
assembled together	<i>samavetā</i>
desiring to fight,	<i>yuyutsavaḥ</i>
Were my armies	<i>māmakāḥ</i>
and indeed those	<i>pāṇḍavās</i>
of the sons of Pāndu—	<i>caiva</i>
how did they act, O Sanjaya?	<i>kim akurvata sañjaya</i>

Note that the translation is dedicated to the original ordering of the words in the transliteration. One can also observe that it takes more English words to translate the Sanskrit words. This first verse of the *Gītā* is the most common verse form found in the work, known as *anuṣṭubh*, with eight syllables per quarter line. The two leading lines mirror the structure of the original. Under the leading lines, indented lines generally present the meanings that appear in the first and second halves of the verses, whenever possible, in the same order in which they appear in the original. The leading lines and respective indented lines are carefully crafted to capture the feeling and phrasing of the Sanskrit verse and to “trans-create” an overall sense of the original poetic form.

Additionally, I have retained a few key Sanskrit words, some of which have made their way into the English lexicon (e.g., *yoga*, *dharma*), in what is meant to be a literal but poetically sensitive English translation, as these untranslated words carry a certain lexical power and richness all their own that is too difficult to convey in English. Their usage allows me to avoid either protracted or reductive glosses of such significant words within the verses themselves. Note that the word *yoga* is retained in the translation of the word’s past participle form of *yukta*, which derives from the verbal root *yuj*, consistently translated as “absorbed in yoga.” The word *yoga* is often translated as “discipline” and the verbal form as “disciplined” or “engaged,” which loses the sense that *yoga* is actively experienced. I engage the word *absorbed* to intimate the ultimate act in *yoga*, which is *samādhi*, a state of total *absorption* in the object of meditation.

In this translation, personal names are either given in the original Sanskrit, with the meaning provided in a note, or are translated within the verse. The various names for Arjuna and Krishna reveal intriguing aspects of their identities, as well as contributing added meaning or even irony to the verses. For example, Arjuna addresses Krishna as *Madhusūdana*, “slayer of the Madhu demon,” when expressing his dismay over the prospect of slaying others: “I do not wish to slay them—even those who are about to slay, O *Madhusūdana*” (BG I.35). To illuminate the fullness of the original, these special names are not simply replaced with antecedent primary names, as is often done; instead they are preserved.

Pronouns are not replaced by personal names as is often done. I believe the Gītā's poetry and expression are very deliberate, conscious, and erudite, and the ordering and presentation of the original words must be respected and preserved as much as possible. For easier reading, the Sanskrit names as well as all Sanskrit words are spelled phonetically, and only a few diacritics are utilized (see "Pronunciation of Sanskrit"). Furthermore, most of the pronouns in the text, though technically masculine in the original (or, in some verses, unspecified but implied third-person masculine), have been changed to gender-free language. The following verse demonstrates this:

One who sees me everywhere
and sees all things in me,
To such a person I am never lost
nor is such a person ever lost to me.
(BG 6.30)

Note how I have avoided the gender specificity of *he* by replacing it with words such as *one* and *such a person*. I translate verses in this gender-neutral way in order to preserve the universality that is subtly present in the masculine pronouns of the Sanskrit but lacking in the English.

As a translator, I have not hesitated to repeat words or meanings that are repeated in the original verse. In Sanskrit, repetition is a powerful means of inducing a meditative-like state in the reader. Repetition conveys the depth and pursuit of a vision, but most translations simply avoid this repetitive element. In this translation synonyms are not sought for words that are repeated in the Sanskrit, or even for words that are repeated by virtue of being derivative forms, either from a common verbal root or a noun stem. Instead, I use the same or a similar English word to render the Sanskrit word or its derivative that is repeated in the original:

One should raise
the self by the self;
one should not
degrade the self.

Indeed, the self alone
 is the self's friend;
 the self alone
 is the self's enemy.

(BG 6.5)

In this verse, the word *self* is used to translate the important Sanskrit word *ātman*, which appears in this verse seven times, more than any other word in any verse. This word is translated throughout as "self." Because in Sanskrit the term can mean "soul," "body," "mind," or "heart," I have selected a word that embraces all these meanings. It has been the tendency of translators to abandon these repetitions so as to reflect specific shades of meaning, make philosophical sense, or avoid repetition. However, one hears and feels the power of the repetition of such a monumental word in the original language. I believe my choice of translation both satisfies the requirements of meaning and retains the power of repetition.

Even in instances in which there is great temptation to translate differently two words with the same noun stem or words related to the same verbal root, Krishna's play on words would be lost if I chose to ignore their close relationship. In the verse quoted above, BG 6.6, the word *śatru*, "enemy," occurs twice. First the abstract form of *śatru-tva* is found, translated in the verse as "enmity," and then the adverbial comparative form of *śatru-vat*, translated as "like an enemy." Again, in BG 4.42, Krishna tells Arjuna to "ascend to yoga," using the verb *ātīṣṭha*, and then immediately tells him to "stand up," using the same verb but with a different prefix, *uttiṣṭha*. Therefore my translation is: "rise in yoga!/Rise up, O Bhārata!" By retaining the word *rise* in both imperative statements, while providing different prepositions to express the force of the different prefixes, we can respect the original effect of the repetition.

Words with a negative prefix in the Sanskrit are not translated into English as if they were a positive form; rather, such words reflect the absence of the word's positive noun stem. For example, the word *sukha* is "happiness," and its negative *a-sukha* is "unhappiness" or "without happiness." This negative form of the word is often translated, however, as "misery" or "suffering," meanings more suitable for the positive word *duḥkha*. Another example would be *a-siddha*, the negation of *siddha*, "success." I translate *asiddha* as

“without success,” rather than the often used translation of “failure.” Again, when a reader hears the word *a-jñāna*, he or she does not hear “ignorance,” as it is often translated, but rather “without knowledge.” When translators employ antonyms to translate negatives, a very different sense is conveyed.

Wherever possible I have used English cognates for Sanskrit words. Thus the word *sama*, often translated as “equal” or “impartial,” I translate as “same.” The word’s abstract forms, *samatva* and *samatā*, retain the cognate sense of *sama* in the translation of “sameness” rather than the more removed senses of “equanimity” or “equality” so often used.

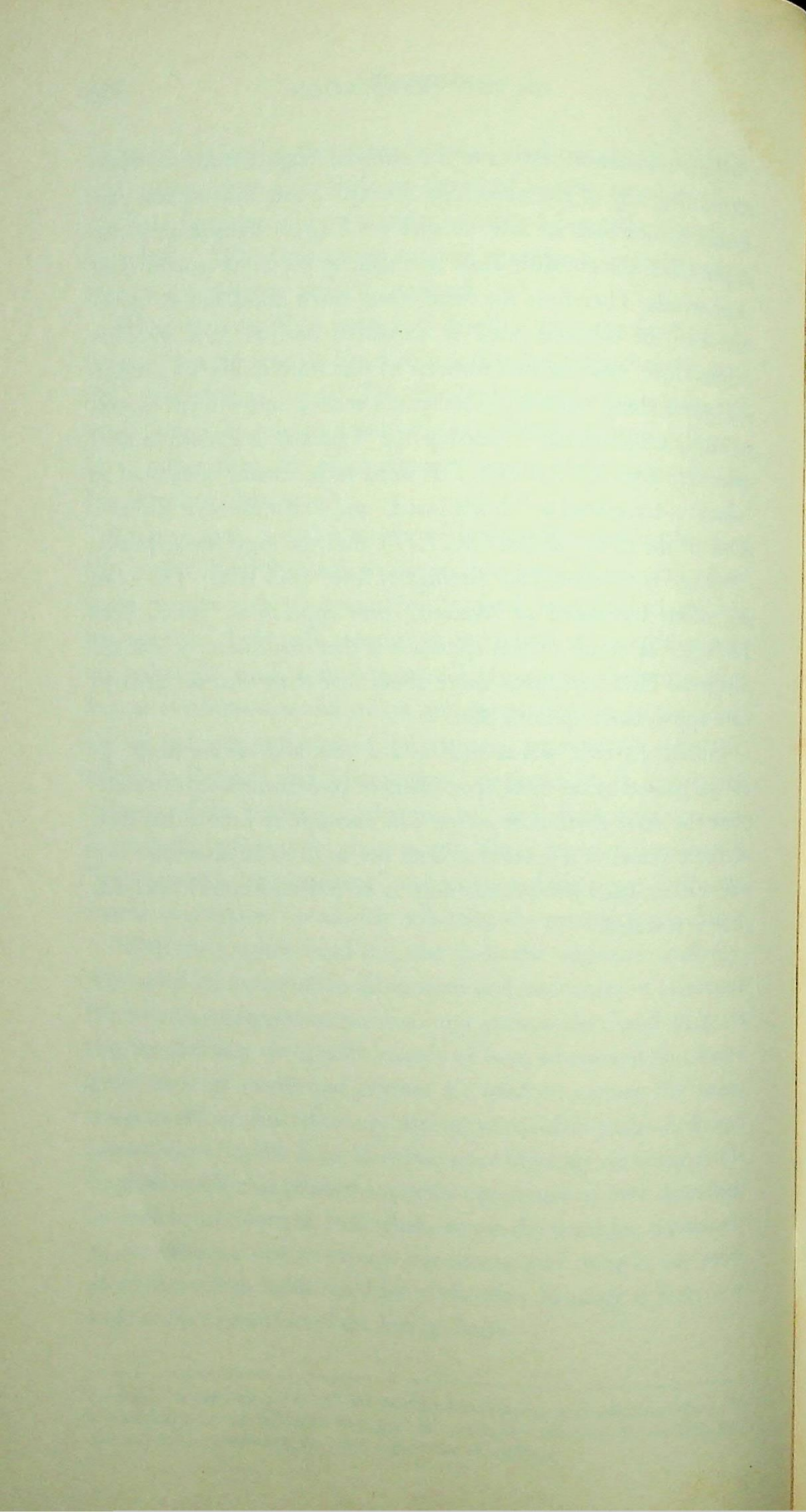
Because some Sanskrit words are laden with meaning, it often takes several English words to convey their sense. Frequently translators provide a simple translation for such words, which reduces the power of the word’s presence or presents a meaning that does not reflect the word’s complete sense. For example, the two cosmological words *prabhava* and *pralaya*, antonyms referring to the manifesting and unmanifesting of the universe, are typically translated simply as “origin” and “dissolution,” respectively. To convey the richness of the language in the original, and characterize cosmologically the referents for these words, I have translated *prabhava* as “the coming forth into being” and *pralaya* as “the going forth into cosmic absorption,” accurately reflecting the purāṇic cosmology.¹

With the English word *love*, one finds the opposite challenge. The word *love* incorporates all varieties and intensities of affection, tenderness, endearment, passion, and compassion, and only its context indicates the specific nuance of love, whereas in Sanskrit a great array of words and phrases are used to convey the many nuances of love. Therefore any attempt to translate such words and phrases into English is problematic, since there are no comparable English words that relate the specific experience of love described by such Sanskrit terms. In English, we use the word *love* constantly as the ultimate way to express our hearts, and there is no other word that can be substituted for it; therefore its usage is indispensable in the expression of the human heart.

¹ See BG 7.6 and 9.18; in BG 10.8, the word *prabhava* is presented without *pralaya*, but is juxtaposed in the next line with the verb *pravartate*, meaning “is set forth into motion,” further continuing the cosmological idea of *prabhava*.

This translation resorts to the ultimate English word *love* when translating any of the numerous Sanskrit words that express particular dimensions of love, so that the English translation is not deprived of the absolute sense intended by the more specific Sanskrit words. Therefore, the word *bhakta*, often translated as “devotee” or “the devoted one,” is translated here as “one who has offered love” (see the first instance of this word in BG 4.3), utilizing *offered* along with *love*. The word’s related verbal form *bhajāmi*, typically translated as “I worship” or “I honor,” is translated as “I offer my love” (BG 4.11). The word *priya*, usually translated as “dear,” is translated as “dearly loved,” and in the Sanskrit carries a sense of the purity of love (BG 7.17). And the word *bhāva*, literally “feeling,” is translated as “feelings of love” (BG 10.8). The word *iṣṭa*, often translated as “desired,” here appears as “loved” (BG 18.64). The result of this approach is that one discovers that the Bhagavad Gītā says much more about love than what we perhaps have appreciated up until now.

Finally, particle words such as *and*, *even*, and *but* are never ignored, passed off as mere verse fillers or convenient words to complete the verse rhythm or meter. The assumption here is that each of these verses is a jewel that does not need to be altered in any way; rather, each jewel needs only to be polished until its natural glow is revealed.



Select Bibliography

Source for the Sanskrit Text

The Bhagavadgītā, critically edited by Shripad Krishna Belvalkar et al. Poona: Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute, 1968.

Works on or Related to the Bhagavad Gītā

Minor, Robert N. *Bhagavad-Gītā: An Exegetical Commentary*. New Delhi: Heritage Publishers, 1991.

_____, ed. *Modern Indian Interpreters of the Bhagavadgita*. Albany: State University of New York, 1986.

Rosen, Steven J., ed. *Holy War: Violence and the Bhagavad Gita*. Hampton, VA: Deepak Heritage Books, 2002.

Schweig, Graham M. *Dance of Divine Love: India's Classic Sacred Love Story: The Rāsa Līlā of Krishna from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2005.

_____. "The Essential Meaning of the Bhagavad-gītā According to Caitanyite Vaishnavism." *Journal of Vaishnava Studies* 9, no. 2 (Spring 2001): 227–39.

Sharma, Arvind. *The Hindu Gita: Ancient and Classical Interpretations of the 'Bhagavadgita'*. La Salle, IL: Open Court Publishing, 1986.

Sharpe, Eric J. *The Universal Gītā: Western Images of the Bhagavad Gītā*. La Salle, IL: Open Court Publishing, 1985.

Translations of the Bhagavad Gītā

Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda, A. C., trans. and comm. *Bhagavad-gītā As It Is*. 2nd ed. Los Angeles: Bhaktivedanta Book Trust, 1989.

Edgerton, Franklin, trans. *The Bhagavad Gītā*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1944.

Patton, Laurie, trans. *The Bhagavad Gītā*. Harmondsworth, UK: Penguin Press, 2007.

Van Buitenen, J. A. B., trans. and ed. *The Bhagavadgītā in the Mahābhārata, A Bilingual Edition*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1981.

Zaehner, R. C., ed. *The Bhagavad-Gītā*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1969.

Word References for the Bhagavad Gītā

- Apte, Vaman Shivaram. *The Practical Sanskrit-English Dictionary* (Revised and Enlarged Reprint Edition). Kyoto: Rinsen Book Company, [1957] 1978.
- Macdonell, Arthur Anthony. *A Practical Sanskrit Dictionary* (with transliteration, accentuation, and etymological analysis). New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal Publishers Pvt. Ltd., 1996.
- Monier-Williams, Monier. *A Sanskrit-English Dictionary*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, [1899] 1974.
- Schweig, Graham M. *Bhagavad Gītā Concordance: Comprehensive Word Reference with Sanskrit and English Indexes*. New York: Columbia University Press, forthcoming.

Index to Verses and Text

Note: Index items are listed by page (e.g., 4 and 4n) and by chapter and verse numbers (e.g., 18.14). For a comprehensive Sanskrit word reference and English index to this text, readers are invited to consult *Bhagavad Gītā Concordance*, also produced by the author.

Achyuta [Krishna], 1.21, 18.73

action

in accordance with dharma, 2.33

in accordance with one's nature,
3.33, 18.47, 18.48, 18.60, 263-264,
274, 275

agents of, 18.14, 18.18, 18.19, 18.26,
18.27, 18.28

agreeable *vs.* disagreeable, 18.10

as ancient seekers performed, 4.15

of Arjuna, 1.46

and Ashwattha tree, 15.2

attachment to, 3.25, 3.26, 3.29, 14.7,
14.9, 14.15, 18.22

avoidance of, 3.4

and being, 8.3

birth as fruit of, 2.43

and body, 5.11, 18.15

bondage of, 2.39, 3.9, 5.3, 5.12, 9.28

and Brahman, 3.15, 4.24, 5.10

of breath, 5.27

causes of, 18.13-18.15, 274

claim to, 2.47

as creative force, 8.3

detachment from, 6.4

and dharma, 18.47

discernment as better than, 3.1

and divine forces, 18.14

emulation of, 3.21, 3.23

factors constituting, 18.18, 18.19

fault in, 18.3, 18.47, 18.48

and fear of suffering, 18.8

forced performance of, 3.5

freedom from, 3.4

freedom from effects of, 3.31

and freedom from misfortune, 4.16

freedom of, 276

with full-heartedness, 11

and greatest secret, 15.20

and inaction, 3.8, 4.18

and knowledge, 3.33, 4.19, 4.37, 5.8,
7.29, 18.18, 18.19

and Krishna, 3.22, 3.23, 3.24, 3.30,
4.9, 4.14, 9.9, 9.27, 11.55, 12.6,

12.10, 18.56, 18.73, 265

of life-breath, 4.27

lone, 5.8

from love, 10, 237n

and master, 5.13, 5.14

and Māyā, 18.61

means of, 5.14, 18.14, 18.18

and mind, 5.11, 5.13

movements of, 18.14

nature of, 4.16, 4.17, 8.1

as not binding, 4.14, 4.41

object, means, and cause of, 13.20

perfection through, 3.20

performance of all, 4.18

and person, 13.20

physical basis of, 18.14

prescribed, 3.8, 6.1, 16.24, 18.7, 18.9

and primordial nature, 13.20, 13.29

purity of, 18.71

and 'qualities', 3.27, 3.28, 3.29, 14.19,
14.22, 18.19, 18.41-18.48, 274

and *rajas*, 14.12, 18.24, 18.27

relinquishment of, 18.3, 18.11

and renunciation, 3.30, 4.41, 5.2,

5.13, 6.1, 12.6, 18.7, 18.57

with restraint, 12.11

sacred, 6.46

and sacrifice, 3.14, 4.12, 4.23, 4.32

as same in happiness and suffering,

2.38

and SAT, 17.26

and *sattva*, 18.23, 18.26

and self, 2.43

self as creator of, 3.27

self as not creator of, 13.29

and selfishness, 3.18

and senses, 4.27, 5.11

senses of, 3.6, 3.7

and social orders, 4.13

source of, 18.46

as standard, 3.21

and success, 4.12

and Supreme Self, 13.31

and *tamas*, 18.22, 18.25, 18.28

theme of, 9-10, 21n

and transcendence, 274

- action (*continued*)
 unfit, 4.17
 and the ungodly, 16.7, 16.9, 16.18
 as untainted, 5.7
 virtuous, 14.16
 without attachment, 3.19, 3.25
 without passion or repulsion, 18.23
 without selfish desire, 4.19
 for world welfare, 3.20
 and yoga, 2.48, 2.49, 2.50, 3.3,
 3.7, 4.41, 5.1, 5.2, 6.3, 13.24,
 246, 248
See also inaction/actionlessness
- Ādityas, 10.21, 11.6, 11.22
- affection, 13.9
- aggression, 18.27, 18.53
- aging, 7.29, 14.20
- agitation, 5.23, 16.2
- Agni, 11.39
- abhāṅkāra*. *See* 'I am acting', notion of
 air, 7.4
- Airāvata, 10.27
- all-pervading, the, 12.3
- Ananta, 10.29
- ancestors/forefathers, 1.42, 9.25, 10.29,
 11.22
- anger, 2.56, 2.62, 2.63, 3.37, 4.10, 5.23,
 5.26, 5.28, 16.2, 16.21, 18.53
- animals, 10.30
- anxiety, 12.15, 12.16, 16.11.
See also depression; despair;
 despondency
- apartness, 14.23, 18.52
- aphoristic phrases, 13.4
- aquatics, 10.29
- Arjuna, 1.4, 1.15, 1.20, 2.2, 18.76,
 256-259
 and action in accordance with his
 nature, 264
 addressed, 6.32, 7.16, 8.16, 9.19,
 10.32, 10.39, 11.54
 as devotee, 256, 257
 epithets of, 12
 as friend, 256, 257
 as general, 256, 257
 informing of, 273
 as instrument, 11.33
 and Krishna, 6, 10, 11, 13-14, 25n,
 255, 256-257, 259-260, 267-270
 as leader, 7
 outer and inner conflict of, 6-10
 speaks, 2.21, 2.54, 3.1, 3.36, 4.4, 5.1,
 6.33, 6.37, 8.1, 10.12, 11.1, 11.36,
 12.1, 13.0, 17.1, 18.1, 18.73, 275
 as student, 13-14, 258
 torment of, 259
- arms, 11.16, 11.19, 11.23, 11.46
- arranger of everything, 8.9
- arrogance, 16.4, 16.10, 16.18
- Aryaman, 10.29
- asat*, 17.28
- ascetics, 4.28, 6.46, 8.11, 245
- Ashvins, 11.6, 11.22
- Ashwattha tree, 10.26, 15.1-15.3
- Asita Devala, 10.13
- Asuras, 11.22
- ātman*, 42n, 333. *See also* Self; self
 attachment
 to action, 3.25, 3.26, 3.29, 14.7, 14.9,
 14.15, 18.22
 action without, 3.19, 3.25
 and Brahman, 13.14
 conquest of faults of, 15.5
 and discernment, 18.49
 freedom from, 3.9, 4.23, 12.18, 18.23,
 18.26
 to happiness, 14.6, 14.9
 to home, 12.19
 and inaction, 2.47
 to knowledge, 14.6
 to Krishna, 7.1
 lack of, 3.28, 5.21, 6.4, 9.9, 11.55,
 12.16, 13.9, 15.3, 264
 to negligence, 14.9
 to 'qualities', 13.21
 and *rajas*, 14.7
 relinquishment of, 2.48, 4.20, 5.10,
 5.11, 18.6, 18.9
 to sense objects, 2.62
 of thought, 12.5
 and yoga of action, 3.7
- attraction, 2.64, 18.51
- austerity, 8.28, 16.1
 and *asat*, 17.28
 of body, 17.14
 and Brahmins, 18.42
 and Krishna, 5.29, 7.9, 11.48, 11.53
 of mind, 17.16
 as not to be relinquished, 18.3, 18.5,
 18.6
 and OM, 17.24
 and purification, 4.10
 and purity, 18.5
 and *rajas*, 17.18
 and sacrifice, 4.28
 and *sattva*, 17.17
 of speech, 17.15
 steadfastness in, 17.27
 and *tamas*, 17.19
 and TAT, 17.25
 three types of, 17.7
 of the ungodly, 17.5
- Balarāma, 148n
- beauty, 10.34, 10.41, 278
- becoming, principle of, 7.30, 8.4

- beginning
 of Ashwattha tree, 15.3
 of being as unmanifest, 2.28
 Krishna as, 10.2, 10.20, 10.32
 Krishna as lacking, 10.3, 11.16, 11.19
 person as lacking, 13.19
 primordial nature as lacking, 13.19
 Supreme Self as lacking, 13.31
- being
 and action, 8.3
 as arising from Krishna, 10.4
 and becoming, 8.4
 beginnings of as unmanifest, 2.28
 cessation of, 10.4
 coming forth into, 7.6, 8.19, 33.4
 and cosmic absorption, 7.6
 emanation of, 13.30
 emerging states of, 8.3
 interims of as manifest, 2.28
 and Krishna, 7.6
 Krishna as, 9.19
 Krishna as causing, 9.5
 Krishna as coming forth into, 10.8
 and memory, 8.6
 as part of Krishna, 15.7
 perception of one, 18.20
 permanence of, 2.16
 rising into, 10.34
 and self, 41n
 state of intrinsic, 8.3
 states of, 7.13, 10.17, 13.30, 18.21
See also existence
- beings
 absorption of, 13.16
 becoming of, 11.2
 and Brahman, 13.15, 13.16
 conditions of, 10.5
 from cosmic embryo, 14.3
 cosmic womb for, 7.6
 disdain for, 12.13
 and Krishna, 7.5
 Krishna as abiding in, 6.31, 10.20
 Krishna as beginning, middle, and
 end of, 10.20
 Krishna as origin of, 9.13
 Krishna as seed of all, 7.10
 Krishna as sending forth, 9.7, 9.8
 Krishna as source of, 10.15
 Krishna as thought of, 10.22
 and Krishna's primordial nature, 9.7
 passion of, 11.2
 perfected, 10.26, 11.21, 11.22, 11.36
 as perishable, 15.16
 release of, 13.34
 as resting on Krishna, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6
 sameness in, 6.32
 Self as present in all, 6.29
 sending forth of, 13.16
 and states of being, 18.21
 as sustained, 13.16
 welfare of all, 12.4
- Beloved Lord [Krishna], 12
 addressed, 10.13
 as manifestation of divinity, 278
 speaks, 2.2, 2.11, 2.55, 3.3, 4.1, 4.5,
 6.1, 6.35, 7.1, 8.3, 9.1, 10.1, 10.19,
 11.32, 11.47, 11.52, 13.1, 14.1,
 15.1, 16.1, 17.1, 18.2
- beneficent persons, 7.16
- Best Among Men [Arjuna], 2.15
- Best of the Bharatas [Arjuna], 7.11, 7.16,
 13.26, 14.12, 18.4
- Best of the Embodied [Arjuna], 8.4
- Best of the Kurus [Arjuna], 4.31, 10.19
- Best of the Twice-Born [Drona], 1.7
- bewilderment
 and action in accordance with
 nature, 18.60
 and anger, 2.63
 at birth, 7.27
 and Brahman, 2.72, 5.20
 and desire, 7.27
 and deviation from yoga, 6.38
 and dharma, 2.7
 and discernment, 2.52
 as dispelled, 11.1
 of duality, 7.27, 7.28
 and hatred, 7.27
 jungle of, 2.52
 and knowledge, 3.32, 5.15, 5.20,
 7.25, 10.3, 18.72
 and Krishna, 3.2, 7.25, 9.11, 10.3
 lack of, 15.5, 15.19
 of maleficients, 7.15
 and memory, 2.63
 on path of Brahman, 6.38
 of primordial nature, 9.12
 and 'qualities', 7.13, 14.22, 15.10
 and relinquishment, 18.7
 and self as creator of action, 3.27
 from selfish desire, 3.40
 and sense objects, 3.6
 and *tamas*, 14.8, 14.13, 14.15, 14.17,
 17.19, 18.7, 18.25, 18.39
 of the ungodly, 16.10, 16.15, 16.16,
 16.20
- Bhagavad*, meaning of, 3-4
- Bhagavān, 251, 260, 278
- Bhagavat, 251, 272
- bhakta, 253, 266, 335. *See also* love
- bhakti, 10n, 70n, 111n, 125n, 246, 251,
 266, 275, 277. *See also* love
- Bharata, 7
- Bhārata [Arjuna], 2.14, 2.18, 2.28, 2.30,
 3.25, 7.27, 11.6, 13.2, 13.33, 14.3,
 15.19, 15.20, 16.3, 18.62

- Bhārata (descendant of King Bharata), 12
- Bhārata [Dhritarāshtra], 1.24, 2.10
- Bhrigu, 10.25
- birth/rebirth
- among bewildered persons, 14.15
 - among those attached to action, 14.15
 - and attachment to 'qualities', 13.21
 - bewilderment at, 7.27
 - from celestial world, 9.21
 - cycle of, 16.19, 250
 - and death, 2.27
 - and discernment, 6.43
 - divine, 16.3
 - into family of yogis, 6.42
 - and the field, 13.26
 - freedom from, 14.20
 - freedom from cycle of, 2.51, 264
 - as fruit of action, 2.43
 - and highest heaven, 86n
 - into home of the pure, 6.41
 - and the knower of the field, 13.26
 - and knowledge, 13.23
 - and Krishna, 4.4, 4.5, 4.6, 4.9, 7.19, 8.15, 8.16, 10.3, 10.12
 - overcoming of, 86n
 - repetition and nonrepetition of, 8.23
 - and seers, 14.2
 - and self, 2.20, 2.26
 - and the ungodly, 16.4, 16.15
- blame, 12.19, 14.24. *See also* fault
- Blameless One [Arjuna], 3.3, 14.6
- blindness, 6, 10
- bliss, 18.74, 18.76, 18.77
- boat, in analogy, 4.36
- body
- acquisition of, 15.8
 - and action, 5.11, 18.15
 - alignment of, 6.13
 - austerity of, 17.14
 - control of, 18.52
 - departure from, 15.8, 15.10
 - and the embodied, 2.13, 2.18, 14.5
 - emergence from, 14.20
 - false identification with, 55n
 - as field, 13.1
 - as garment, 2.22
 - gates of, 8.12, 14.11, 84n
 - and highest Person, 13.22
 - of Krishna, 11.7, 11.13, 11.15
 - Krishna within, 8.4, 17.6
 - maintenance of, 4.21
 - and 'principle of sacrifice', 8.2, 8.4
 - and relinquishment, 4.9, 18.11
 - relinquishment of, 5.23, 8.5, 8.6, 8.13
 - remaining within, 15.10
 - and self, 2.20
 - and soul, 85n
 - and stages of childhood, youth, and old age, 2.13
 - subsistence of, 3.8
 - Supreme Self in, 13.31, 13.32
 - torment to, 17.6
 - of the ungodly, 16.18
- bondage, 2.39, 3.9, 5.3, 5.12, 9.28, 18.30
- Brahmā, 8.16, 8.17, 8.18, 11.15, 11.37, 56n, 142n, 147n, 162n
- Brahman, 5.21, 122n, 142n
- and action, 3.15
 - action offered to, 5.10
 - actions of, 4.24
 - aphoristic phrases concerning, 13.4
 - attainment of, 4.24, 13.30, 18.50, 275
 - characteristics of, 13.12-13.17
 - contact with, 6.28
 - as cosmic womb, 14.4
 - and discernment, 5.20
 - establishment in, 5.20
 - feminine energy of, 2.72
 - fire of, 4.24, 4.25
 - as flawless, 5.19
 - as inner world of Krishna, 249
 - knowledge concerning, 7.29, 8.24, 13.15, 13.17
 - Krishna as, 10.12
 - Krishna as foundation of, 14.27
 - as Krishna's womb, 14.3
 - as manifestation of divinity, 278
 - meditation on, 4.24
 - nature of, 8.1
 - as neither existent nor nonexistent, 13.12
 - Nirvāna of, 2.72, 5.24, 5.25, 5.26
 - as offering, 4.24
 - and OM, 17.24
 - and OM TAT SAT, 17.23
 - path of, 6.38
 - realization of, 237n
 - and ritual, 4.24
 - and sacrifice, 3.15, 4.25, 4.31, 4.32
 - and sameness, 5.19
 - sound of, 6.44, 8.13, 50n
 - as supreme indestructible, 8.3
 - as supreme spirit, 48n
 - and transcendence, 249
 - unity with, 5.24, 6.27, 14.26, 18.53, 18.54
 - and yoga, 5.6
- Brahmins, 2.46, 5.18, 9.33, 17.23, 18.41, 18.42, 23n, 56n
- breath, 4.27, 4.29, 4.30, 5.27, 8.10, 8.12, 10.9, 15.14, 18.33
- Brihatsāma, 10.35
- brilliance, of Krishna, 7.9, 11.12, 11.17
- brothers, 1.26

- brothers-in-law, 1.34
- buddhi*. *See* discernment
- butter, 9.16
- calmness, 2.64, 2.65, 6.3, 10.4, 18.42
- capability, 12.16
- capacity, 18.25
- celestial beings, 2.8, 10.2, 11.21, 152n, 157n
- celestial realm, 2.2, 9.20, 9.24
- celestial world, 2.32, 2.37, 9.21
- Chaitanya school of Vaishnavism, 4n
- chaos, 3.24
- charity, 10.5, 11.48
- Chastiser of the Enemy [Arjuna], 4.33
- chastity, 6.14, 8.11, 17.14
- cheaters, 10.36
- Christianity, 31n
- circumstance, desirable and undesirable, 13.9
- Citraratha, 10.26
- city of nine gates, in analogy, 5.13, 85n, 121n
- cleansing/cleanliness, 4.30, 6.11.
 - See also* uncleanness
- cloud, in analogy, 6.38
- club, 11.17, 11.46
- cold, 2.14, 6.7, 12.18
- commerce, 18.44
- companions, 1.26
- compassion, 12.13, 16.2
- conceit, 16.17
- conflict, 1.47, 5.25, 249, 273
- confusion, 11.49, 18.39, 18.73
- Conqueror of Wealth [Arjuna], 2.48, 4.41, 7.7, 9.9, 10.37, 11.14, 12.9, 18.29, 18.72
- consciousness, 10, 58n, 175n, 245, 246, 264. *See also* meditation; thought
- constancy, 10.34, 12.3, 13.6, 13.13
- contentment, 10.5
- cosmic absorption, 7.6, 14.2, 14.14, 14.15, 334
- cosmic cycles, 15.4
- cosmic embryo, 14.3
- cosmic time, 11.25
- cosmic womb, 7.6, 14.4
- courage, 10.36
- cows, 5.18, 10.28, 18.44
- craving, 6.10
- creation, 5.19, 10.32, 14.2, 266-267
- creator, 4.13, 9.17, 10.33, 11.37
- crown, 11.17, 11.46
- cruelty, 16.9, 16.19
- day, 8.17, 8.18, 8.19, 8.24
- death, 13.25, 86n
 - and birth, 2.27
 - cycle of, 12.7, 16.19, 264
 - and dharma, 3.35
 - final, 16.11
 - and highest heaven, 86n
 - infamy as worse than, 2.34
 - Krishna as, 10.29, 10.34
 - path of recurring, 9.3
 - release from, 7.29
 - and self, 2.20, 2.26
 - See also* passing on; perishing
- deceit, 13.7, 16.4, 16.10, 16.17, 17.5, 17.12, 18.28
- deerskin, 6.11
- deities, 4.12, 7.20. *See also* divinities
- delight, 5.25, 12.4
- delusion, 3.29
- demigods. *See* deities/divinities
- demon/demonic, 9.12, 10.14, 11.36, 17.4. *See also* ungodly
- denunciation, 18.28
- departed beings, 17.4
- depression, 18.35. *See also* anxiety; despair; despondency
- Descendant of Kuru [Arjuna], 2.41
- Descendant of Vrishni [Krishna], 1.41
- desire
 - abandonment of, 2.71
 - action without, 4.19
 - from agitation, 5.23
 - and anger, 2.62
 - and attachment, 2.62
 - and bewilderment, 7.27
 - departure of, 5.28
 - destruction of, 3.43
 - and dharma, 7.11
 - as enemy, 3.37
 - and faith, 7.22
 - and the field, 13.6
 - freedom from, 2.56, 16.2, 18.52, 18.53
 - for fruits of action, 17.25, 18.23, 18.27, 18.34
 - for fruits of sacrifice, 17.11, 17.12
 - and knowledge, 3.39, 3.40, 7.20
 - and Krishna, 7.11, 10.28
 - lack of, 3.30, 4.21, 6.18, 12.17, 15.5, 18.49, 18.54
 - and lack of attainment, 16.23
 - for liberation, 17.25
 - one unmoved by, 2.70
 - for 'qualities', 14.22
 - and *rajas*, 14.12, 18.24, 18.34
 - relinquishment of, 2.55, 6.24, 16.21
 - and renunciation, 5.3, 18.2
 - and return to world, 9.21
- Daityas, 10.30
- darkness, 8.26, 10.11
- dawn, 152n

- desire (*continued*)
 and sacred cow, 3.10
 and sacrifice, 3.12
 for selfish gain, 2.5
 separation from, 5.26
 and those bound by action, 5.12
 of the ungodly, 16.8, 16.10, 16.11,
 16.12, 16.13, 16.16, 16.18, 16.21,
 17.5
 despair, 7, 1.28, 18.66, 247, 257, 260,
 262, 277. *See also* anxiety;
 depression; despondency
 despondency, 18.28, 247. *See also*
 anxiety; depression; despair
 destination, supreme, 6.45
 destiny, 6.40, 116n, 250
 Destroyer of the Enemy [Arjuna], 9.3
 destruction, 3.24, 6.40, 11.29, 11.32,
 16.9
 detachment. *See* attachment
 determination, 6.23, 18.29, 18.33, 18.34,
 18.35
 determinism, 250
 devotion, to Krishna, 9.14, 11.55, 12.6,
 12.10, 12.20, 18.57, 266. *See also*
 love
 Dhananjaya [Arjuna], 1.15, 18.30, 18.31
 dharma
 abandonment of, 2.33
 and action, 18.47
 action in accordance with, 2.33
 and action in accordance with one's
 nature, 275
 bewilderment concerning, 2.7
 defined, 21n
 and degradation of women, 1.41
 and desire, 7.11
 destroyers of, 9
 and discernment, 2.40
 essence of, 12.20
 of the family, 1.40, 1.43, 1.44
 field of, 8, 1.1
 and greatest secret, 9.2, 9.3
 and innate nature, 250
 and Krishna, 4.7, 7.11, 9.31, 11.18,
 14.27, 273
 life of, 9
 of lineages, 1.43
 and love, 9.31, 275
 opposition to, 4.7
 own *vs.* another's, 3.35, 18.47
 performance of one's, 263-264
 and *rajas*, 18.31, 18.34
 relinquishment of forms of, 18.66,
 277-278
 study of, 18.70
 and *tamas*, 18.32
 of Vedas, 9.21
 of warrior, 2.31
 Dhritarāshtra, 6, 8, 9, 10, 12, 1.1, 2.10,
 241n, 253
 sons of, 1.19, 1.20, 1.23, 1.36, 1.46,
 2.6, 11.26
dhyāna. *See* meditation
 dialogue, 10, 11, 12, 13, 254, 255
 digestive fire, 15.14
 disc, 11.17, 11.46
 discernment
 and action, 3.1, 3.26
 of action, 4.18
 and attachment, 3.26, 18.49
 and bewilderment, 2.52
 and Brahman, 5.20
 and calm thought, 2.65
 control of, 5.28
 faculty of, 3.42, 3.43, 7.4, 13.5
 and feminine energy, 56n
 as focused on the Supreme, 5.17
 of greatest secret, 15.20
 happiness through, 6.21
 inactive, 18.16
 and Krishna, 7.10, 8.7, 10.4, 10.10,
 12.14
 lack of, 7.24
 loss of, 2.63
 and meditation, 2.44, 2.53
 purity of, 18.51
 and 'qualities', 18.29
 quiet through, 6.25
 and *rajas*, 18.31
 and rebirth, 6.43
 and resolution, 2.41, 2.44
 sameness of, 6.9, 12.4
 and *sattva*, 18.30, 18.37
 and scripture, 2.52, 2.53
 and selfish desire, 3.40
 and *tamas*, 18.32
 types of, 18.29, 18.30, 18.31, 18.32
 unchanging, 2.53
 uncontaminated, 18.17
 and the ungodly, 16.9
 and yoga, 2.39, 2.66
 yoga of, 2.49, 2.50, 2.51, 10.10, 18.57,
 246, 264, 265
 See also knowledge; mind; thought
 discipline, 4.26, 4.27
 discrimination, person of, 2.60
 disdain, 12.13
 disengagement, 18.30
 dishonor, 6.7, 12.18, 14.25
 disinterest, 6.9
 dispassion, 6.35, 13.8, 18.52
 disquietude, 14.12
 distress, 7.16
 disturbance, 12.15, 14.23
 divine feminine power, 247
 divine power, 246
 divine realm, 18.40

- divinities
 and elements, 125n
 and knowledge concerning Krishna, 10.14
 Krishna as beginning of, 10.2
 Krishna as Vāsava among, 10.22
 and Krishna's form, 11.52
 pleasures of, 9.20
 and 'principle of divinity', 116n
 and 'qualities', 18.40
 respect for, 17.14
 and sacrifice, 3.11, 3.12, 4.25, 7.23
 service to, 9.25
 as superior beings, 60n
 as worshipped by yogis, 4.25
See also deities
- Divinity, Krishna as original, 10.12
- Divinity, supreme, 60n
- Divinity of Divinities, 10.15
- divinity/the divine
 attainment of, 245
 attributes of, 16.1–16.6
 as cause of action, 18.14
 forgetfulness of, 247
 heart offered to, 275
 of Krishna, 260–261, 266–267
 manifestations of, 11, 90n, 114n, 128n, 246, 278
 as object of love, 252
 principle of, 7.30, 8.1, 8.4
 and soul, 11, 246, 263, 278
 and yoga, 3, 245, 246, 248, 249, 278
 and Yoga-Māyā, 247
- dog, 5.18
- donation, monetary, 17.13
- doubt, 4.40, 4.41, 4.42, 6.39, 18.68, 18.73
- Drona/Dronāchārya, 1.25, 2.4, 11.26, 11.34, 22n, 23n, 255
- duality, 2.45, 4.22, 5.3, 7.27, 7.28, 15.5, 92n
- duḥkha*. *See* suffering
- Duryodhana, 7, 1.2, 1.11, 27n, 255
- dwelling, 10.12, 12.8
- earth, 6.8, 7.4, 14.24
- earthly kingdom, 2.8
- ego-centeredness, 64n, 249
- elation, 12.15
- elements, gross, 13.5
- elephants, 5.18, 10.27
- emanation, 13.30
- embodied, the, 2.13, 2.18, 2.30, 2.59, 3.40, 5.13, 12.5, 14.5, 14.14, 14.20, 17.2
- embryo, in analogy, 3.38
- empathy, 83n
- enemy, 6.9, 12.18, 333
- engagement, 18.30
- enlightened, the, 10.8, 10.9
- enmity, 11.55
- envy, 3.31, 3.32, 4.22, 9.1, 16.3, 18.67, 18.71
- eternal dwelling, 18.56
- eternality, 7.10, 8.20, 15.7
- ethics/morality, 8, 10.38, 273
- everpresence/everpresent, 2.17, 2.21, 2.24, 18.20
 Krishna as, 4.6, 4.13, 7.13, 7.24, 7.25, 9.13, 9.18, 11.2, 11.4, 14.27
 self as, 2.21, 2.24, 42n
 Supreme Self as, 13.31
- everything
 arranger of, 8.9
 and Brahman, 3.15, 13.13, 13.14
 coming forth of, 10.8
 completion of, 11.40
 and death, 10.34
 Vāsudeva as, 7.19
- evil acts, 4.8. *See also* action; misdeeds/wrongdoing
- exalted form, of Krishna, 11.23
- exalted one, and knowledge of Krishna, 7.18, 7.19
- exalted seers, 10.2, 10.6, 10.25
- Exalted Self, 11.50
- exalted self, of Pārtha, 18.74
- exalted supreme Lord, 5.29, 10.3, 11.9, 13.22
- excellence, 10.41
- excess, 6.16, 16.4
- exertion, 14.12
- existence
 and Brahman, 56n
 eternal, 2.12
 and Krishna, 2.12, 10.39, 10.41, 11.37
 Krishna as continuance of, 9.18
 Krishna as unmanifest, 7.24
 and Nirvana, 56n
 power in, 10.41
 pure, 2.45, 16.1, 112n
 and 'qualities', 18.40
 and self, 16.21
 of self, 41n
 ungodly, 7.15
See also being
- Extraordinary Self [Krishna], 11.37
- eyebrows, 5.27, 8.10
- eyes, 11.8, 11.10, 11.16, 11.23, 11.24, 13.13
- faces, 10.33, 11.11, 13.13
- faith, 3.31, 4.39, 4.40, 6.37, 6.47, 7.21, 7.22, 9.23, 12.2, 12.20, 17.1–17.3, 17.13, 17.17, 17.28, 18.42, 18.71
- fame, 10.5, 10.34
- family, 1.38, 1.40, 1.42, 1.43, 1.44, 6.9
- fate, 116n

- Father of the World, 11.43
 fathers, 1.26, 1.34, 11.44. *See also*
 ancestors/forefathers;
 grandfathers
 fathers-in-law, 1.27, 1.34
 fault, 3.13, 4.21, 15.5, 18.3, 18.47, 18.48.
 See also blame
 Faultless One [Arjuna], 15.20
 fear, 2.56, 4.10, 5.28, 6.14, 10.4, 11.45,
 11.49, 11.50, 12.15, 16.1, 18.8,
 18.30, 18.35
 feet, 11.23, 13.13
 feminine attributes, 10.34
 feminine energy, 2.72
 field, the, 13.0, 13.1, 13.2, 13.3, 13.6,
 13.18, 13.33, 13.34
 Fighter of the Enemy [Arjuna], 11.54
 fire
 in analogy, 3.38, 3.39, 4.19, 4.37,
 18.48
 of Brahman, 4.24
 brilliance of, 7.9, 11.17
 digestive, 15.14
 effects of, 2.23
 as element, 7.4, 8.24
 and illumination, 15.6
 and Krishna, 11.19, 11.25
 Krishna as, 9.16, 10.23
 and moths, 11.29
 sacred, 6.1
 of senses, 4.26
 splendor of, 15.12
 and Vasus, 15.2n
 of yoga, 4.27
 fire sacrifice, 78n
 fish, 10.31
 flowers, 10.35
 food/eating, 3.14, 4.30, 6.16, 6.17, 9.27,
 15.14, 17.7-17.10, 18.52
 forbearance, 10.4, 10.34
 forefathers. *See* ancestors/forefathers
 foresight, 13.8
 fortune, 2.32, 18.78
 fragrance, 7.9
 freedom
 from action, 3.4
 of action, 276
 from anger, 4.10, 16.2
 from anxiety, 12.15, 12.16
 from attachment, 3.9, 4.22, 12.18,
 18.23, 18.26
 from birth, 14.20, 264
 from bondage of action, 5.3, 9.28
 from death, 264
 from desire, 2.56, 16.2, 18.52, 18.53
 desire for, 17.25
 from effects of action, 3.31
 from elation, 12.15
 from enmity, 11.55
 from envy, 16.3
 from fear, 4.10, 12.15
 as goal, 5.28
 from happiness and suffering, 15.5
 from impatience, 12.15
 and Krishna's love call, 10
 from life, 125n
 from longing, 16.2
 from misfortune, 4.16, 10.3, 18.66
 from passion, 4.10, 8.11
 perception of, 18.30
 and sacrifice, 4.32
 from suffering, 14.20
 through divine attributes, 16.5
 free will, 92n
 friend(s), 1.27, 1.38, 4.3, 6.9, 7, 8, 11.41,
 11.44, 12.13, 12.18, 14.25, 90n,
 256, 257
 fruits of action
 and action, 5.14
 claim to, 2.47
 as desirable, undesirable, and mixed,
 18.12
 desire for, 17.25, 18.23, 18.27, 18.34
 devotion to as miserly, 2.49
 freedom from, 9.28
 and Krishna, 4.14
 motivation by, 2.49
 nondependence on, 6.1
 offered to Krishna, 264-265
 relinquishment of, 2.51, 4.20, 5.12,
 12.11, 12.12, 18.2, 18.6, 18.9,
 18.11, 18.12, 274
 renunciation of, 264
 as untainted, 14.16
 full-heartedness, 10, 11, 278
 gambling, 10.36
 Gandharvas, 10.26, 11.22
 Ganges, 10.31
 garlands, 11.11
 garment(s), 11.11
 in analogy, 2.22
 Garuda, 10.30
 gates, of body, 5.13, 14.11, 85n, 121n
 Gāyatrī, 10.35
 Gitā, meaning of, 4
 Gitopanishad, 14
 giving, 8.28, 16.1
 and Krishna's form, 11.48, 11.53
 as not to be relinquished, 18.3, 18.5,
 18.6
 and OM, 17.24
 and purity, 18.5
 and *rajas*, 17.21
 and reciprocity, 17.20
 and *sattva*, 17.20

- and *tamas*, 17.22
 three types of, 17.7
 and the ungodly, 16.15
 glory, 11.33
 God. *See* Bhagavān; Brahman; Divinity;
 Krishna; Person; Purushottama;
 Self; Universal form
 Goddesses, presiding, 10.34. *See also*
 women
 godless, the, 9.12
 gods. *See* deities; divinities
 gold, 6.8, 14.24
 Govinda [Krishna], 12, 1.32, 2.9
 grandfathers, 1.26, 1.34.
 See also fathers
 grandsons, 1.26, 1.34
 Great-Grandfather [Brahmā], 11.39
 greed, 1.45, 14.12, 14.17, 16.21, 18.27
 grief, 2.11, 2.25, 2.27, 2.30, 3.30
 Gudākesha [Arjuna], 1.24, 2.9, 10.20,
 11.7
guṇa(s). *See* 'qualities'
 guru(s), 2.5, 11.43, 13.7, 17.14, 253,
 254, 257
 happiness [*sukha*], 1.36, 1.45, 247
 in absorption in yoga, 5.23
 action in, 2.38
 attachment to, 14.6, 14.9
 and Brahman, 6.28
 and ethical treatment of relatives,
 1.37
 as extraordinary, 14.27
 and the field, 13.6
 freedom from, 2.56, 15.5
 and Krishna, 10.4, 14.27
 lack of attainment of, 16.23
 and peace, 2.66
 and *rajas*, 18.38
 and *sattva*, 18.37
 in self, 5.21
 and self-conquest, 6.7
 and senses, 2.14, 6.21
 and suffering, 2.15, 2.38, 6.32, 12.13,
 12.18, 14.24
 and *tamas*, 18.39
 through discernment, 6.21
 as translation of *sukha*, 333
 types of, 18.36, 18.37, 18.38, 18.39
 and the ungodly, 16.14
 as within, 5.24
 Hari [Krishna], 11.9, 18.77
 harm, 18.25
 hatred, 5.3, 6.9, 7.27, 16.19
 head, 8.12, 13.13
 hearing, 2.52, 4.26, 13.13, 15.9
 heart(s)
 Brahman as seated within, 13.17
 hermitage within, 278
 innermost world of, 11, 275
 Krishna within, 10.11, 10.20, 15.15,
 18.61, 261
 mind stopped within, 8.12
 offered to Krishna, 269
 offered to the divinity, 275
 offering of, 125n
 vision of supreme Lord within,
 237n
 vision of supreme Self within, 237n
 and yoga, 249, 252, 273, 278
 heat, 2.14, 6.7, 12.18
 heavenly bodies, 10.21
 hermitage, 278
 heroes, 11.28, 18.43
 Hero of the Kurus [Arjuna], 11.48
 highest heaven, 86n
 Himalayas, 10.25
 Hinduism, 4
 honesty, 13.7
 honor, 6.7, 12.18, 14.25, 266
 hope, 16.12
 horses, 10.27
 Hrishikesha [Krishna], 1.15, 1.21, 1.24,
 2.9, 2.10, 11.36, 18.1
 humility, 16.2, 258
 hymns, 12, 10.35, 13.4, 15.1
 'I am acting', notion of, 2.71, 7.4, 12.13,
 13.5, 13.8, 16.18, 17.5, 18.24,
 18.53, 18.58, 18.59
 'I have acted', notion of, 18.17
 identity, mistaken, 55n
 Ikshvāku, 4.1
 illumination, 14.22
 illusion, 4.35, 7.14, 7.15, 10.4
 immortality, 2.15, 4.31, 9.19, 10.18,
 13.12, 14.20, 14.27, 18.37, 18.38
 immovable, the, 12.3
 impartiality, 12.16
 impatience, 12.15
 imperishable, the, 3.15, 8.11, 12.1, 12.3,
 15.16, 15.18
 impermanence, 2.14, 2.16
 impurity, 3.16, 6.27, 6.28, 6.45, 16.10,
 16.19, 17.10. *See also* purity; taint
 inaction/actionlessness, 2.47, 3.8, 4.16,
 4.18, 14.13, 16.7, 18.49, 275.
 See also action
 inauspiciousness, 9.1
 inconceivable, the, 12.3
 indestructible, the, 8.21, 11.18, 11.37
 Indra, 144n
 injunction, 9.23, 16.23, 16.24, 17.1,
 17.11, 17.24. *See also* prescribed
 actions
 injustice, 16.12

- intelligence, 7.23, 10.34. *See also*
discernment; knowledge;
mind; thought
- Jahnu, 10.31
- Janaka, King, 3.20
- Janārdana [Krishna], 1.36, 1.39, 1.44,
3.1, 10.18, 11.51
- Jayadratha, 11.34
- jñāna*. *See* knowledge
- jungle, of bewilderment, 2.52
- kāma*. *See* desire
- Kandarpa, 10.28, 14.5n
- Kapila, 10.26
- karma, 21n. *See also* action
- Karna, 1.8, 11.34, 15.8n
- Kaunteya [Arjuna], 2.14, 2.37, 2.60, 3.39,
5.22, 6.35, 8.6, 8.16, 9.10, 9.23
- Kauravas, 9
- Keshava [Krishna], 1.31, 3.1, 10.13,
11.35, 18.76
- king, 9.33
in analogy, 12.7n
- knower, of the field, 13.0, 13.1, 13.2,
13.3, 13.26, 13.34
- knowledge, 3.29, 6.21
absence of, 5.15, 5.16, 13.11, 14.8,
14.16, 14.17, 16.4, 18.72
and action, 3.33, 4.19, 4.37, 5.8, 7.29,
18.18, 18.19, 26.5
and affliction, 4.36
attachment to, 14.6
and bewilderment, 3.32, 5.15, 5.20,
7.25, 10.3
as boat, 4.36
of Brahman, 7.29, 8.24, 13.15, 13.17
and Brahmins, 18.42
contentment in, 6.8
culmination of, 18.50
as darkness, 10.11
description of, 13.0, 13.18
and desire, 7.20
destruction of, 3.41
and doubt, 4.41, 4.42
establishment in, 2.54, 2.55, 2.57,
2.58, 2.61, 2.68
and faith, 4.39
as fire, 4.37
of the highest, 14.14
and illusion, 4.35
and immortality, 13.12
and Krishna, 7.16, 7.17, 7.18, 10.32,
11.38, 13.18
from Krishna, 10.4, 10.14, 15.15
of Krishna, 7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 7.19, 7.24,
7.26, 8.2, 9.13, 10.3, 10.14, 10.15,
11.2, 11.18, 26.6, 27.4
- Krishna as, 10.38
lack of, 2.42, 3.25, 4.40, 9.12, 13.25,
16.15
lamp of, 10.11
and meditation, 12.12
and misdeeds, 5.17
of nature, 13.23
necessity of, 10.42
object of, 13.0, 13.11, 13.18
of one thing as the whole, 18.22
and peace, 4.39
and practice, 12.12
of 'principle of self', 10.32, 13.11
and purification, 4.10, 4.38
purpose of, 13.17
of 'qualities', 13.23, 15.10
realized, 3.41, 6.8, 7.2, 9.1, 18.42
and rebirth, 13.23
respect for, 17.14
and sacrifice, 4.28, 4.33, 4.34, 8.28,
9.15, 18.70
and *sattva*, 14.6, 14.11, 14.17, 18.20
of secrets, 9.1, 9.2, 18.63
and self, 2.29, 4.38, 5.16, 5.26, 7.16,
7.17
and self-discipline, 4.27
and selfish desire, 3.39, 3.40
and senses, 2.67, 2.68
of separateness, 18.21
and *tamas*, 14.8
and thought, 4.23
of two paths, 8.27
ultimate, 14.1, 14.2
and the ungodly, 16.7, 16.15
and value of Vedas, 2.46
and yoga, 4.42
yoga of, 3.3, 16.1, 24.6, 24.8
and yogis, 6.46
See also discernment; enlightened,
the; intelligence
- Krishna
abidance in, 7.18
as abiding in all, 6.31, 10.20
absorption in, 13.10
and action, 3.22, 3.23, 3.24, 3.30, 4.9,
4.14, 9.9, 9.27, 11.55, 12.6, 12.10,
18.56, 18.73, 26.5
affectionate words of, 27.1-27.2
as Agni, 11.39
as Airāvata, 10.27
all beings within, 4.35
aloofness of, 9.9
as Ananta, 10.29
and Arjuna, 6, 10, 11, 13-14, 25n,
25.5, 25.6-25.7, 25.9-26.0, 26.7-27.0
arms of, 11.16, 11.19, 11.23, 11.46
as arranger of everything, 8.9
as Aryaman, 10.29

- as Ashwattha, 10.26
- attainment of, 8.14, 12.4, 12.9, 16.20
- and austerity, 5.29, 7.9, 11.48, 11.53
- as author of Vedānta, 15.15
- as beginning, 10.2
- as beginning, middle, and end, 10.20, 10.32
- as beginningless, 10.3
- and being, 7.6, 9.5, 9.19, 10.4, 15.7
- being of, 14.19
- and beings, 7.5, 9.13
- bellies of, 11.23
- as Beloved Lord, 3
- and bewilderment, 3.2, 7.25, 9.11, 10.3
- as beyond, 11.37
- as Bhagavān, 260
- as Bhagavat, 272
- as Bhrigu, 10.25
- and birth, 4.4, 4.5, 4.6, 4.9, 7.19, 8.15, 8.16, 10.3, 10.12
- within body, 17.6
- body of, 11.7, 11.13, 11.15
- and Brahmā, 11.37
- and Brahman, 10.12, 14.3, 14.27, 249
- as Brihatsāma, 10.35
- brilliance of, 7.9, 11.12, 11.17
- as butter, 9.16
- and calmness, 10.4
- and celestial beings, 11.21
- characteristics of, 259–272
- as charioteer, 259–260
- and charity, 10.5
- as Citraratha, 10.26
- club of, 11.17, 11.46
- as coming forth into being, 9.18, 10.2, 10.8
- coming to, 4.9, 4.10, 6.47, 7.23; 8.5, 8.7, 8.15, 8.16, 9.25, 9.28, 9.34, 10.10, 11.55, 13.18, 18.55, 18.65, 18.66, 18.68, 249, 265, 266, 273
- compassion of, 270–271
- as completing all, 11.40
- as Conqueror of Wealth, 10.37
- as containing all, 261
- and contentment, 10.5
- as continuance of existence, 9.18
- as cosmic Person, 11.38
- as cosmic receptacle, 9.18
- as courage, 10.36
- as creator, 4.13, 9.17, 11.37
- crown of, 11.17, 11.46
- darkness dispelled by, 10.11
- and death, 12.7
- as death, 10.29, 10.34
- declarations of, 266–267
- dependence on, 7.1
- and desire, 7.11, 10.28
- destruction by, 11.32
- devotion to, 9.14, 11.55, 12.6, 12.10, 12.20, 18.57, 266
- and dharma, 4.7, 7.11, 9.31, 11.18, 14.27, 273
- as digestive fire, 15.14
- and discernment, 7.10, 8.7, 10.4, 10.10, 12.14
- disc of, 11.17, 11.46
- divinity of, 5, 260–261, 266–267
- as Divinity of Divinities, 10.15
- domain of, 8.21
- and doubt, 6.39
- as dwelling, 9.18, 10.12, 15.6
- as dwelling in beings, 9.29, 12.8, 261
- edifying words of, 263–265
- emulation of, 3.23
- as end of all, 261
- entry into, 12.7, 12.8
- envy of, 18.67
- epithets of, 12
- as eternal, 7.10
- as eternal divine Person, 10.12
- as eternal Person, 11.18
- as everpresent, 4.6, 4.13, 7.13, 7.24, 7.25, 9.13, 9.18, 11.2, 11.4, 14.27
- as Everything, 7.19, 11.40
- exhortations of, 265–266
- and existence, 2.12, 7.24, 9.18, 10.39, 10.41
- as existent and nonexistent, 11.37
- expressions of, 261–272
- as Extraordinary Self, 11.37
- eyes of, 11.16, 11.19, 11.23, 11.24
- as facing every direction, 10.33, 11.11
- and fame, 10.5, 11.36
- as father, 9.17, 11.44, 14.4
- as Father of the World, 11.43
- and fear, 10.4
- feet of, 11.23
- and feminine attributes, 10.34
- and fire, 11.19, 11.25
- as fire, 9.16, 10.23
- as flower season, 10.35
- flute of, 5–6
- followers of, 3.31
- and forbearance, 10.4
- forgiveness of, 11.42
- form(s) of, 5, 9.4, 9.11, 9.15, 11.3, 11.5, 11.9–11.13, 11.16, 11.20, 11.23, 11.31, 11.38, 11.45, 11.46, 11.47, 11.48, 11.49, 11.50, 11.51, 11.52, 11.53, 11.54, 248, 267–270
- and fortune, 18.78
- as fragrance, 7.9
- as friend, 11.41, 11.44
- as gambling, 10.36
- as Ganges, 10.31

Krishna (*continued*)

- as Garuda, 10.30
- as Gāyatri, 10.35
- giving as offerings to, 9.27
- as goal, 7.18, 9.18, 9.32, 9.34
- as going forth into cosmic absorption, 9.18
- grace of, 11.1, 11.44, 11.45, 18.56, 18.58, 18.62, 18.73
- as grandfather of universe, 9.17
- as guru, 11.43, 257
- and happiness, 10.4, 14.27
- as Hari, 11.9
- as healing herb, 9.16
- as heart, 5.29, 9.18
- heart of, 6
- heart offered to, 269
- in hearts, 10.11, 10.20, 15.15, 18.61
- highest being of, 7.24
- as highest domain, 11.38
- honor for, 9.14, 266
- human form of, 9.11
- and illusion, 10.4
- as immortal, 10.18, 14.27
- impartiality of, 271
- inclusiveness of, 270-271
- as incomparable, 7.24
- as indestructible, 11.18, 11.37
- and infamy, 10.5
- inner world of, 273
- as Kapila, 10.26
- as king of animals, 10.30
- as knower, 11.38
- as knower of the field, 13.2
- and knowledge, 7.16, 7.17, 7.18, 10.4, 10.14, 10.32, 10.38, 11.38, 13.18, 15.15
- knowledge of, 7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 7.19, 7.24, 7.26, 8.2, 9.13, 10.3, 10.14, 10.15, 11.2, 11.18, 265, 266, 274
- as Kuvera, 10.23
- as lacking beginning, middle, and end, 11.16, 11.19
- as letter A, 10.33
- life-breath offered to, 10.9
- as life in all, 7.9
- as light, 11.17
- likeness with, 14.2
- longing of, 6
- as Lord, 9.18
- as Lord of Beings, 10.15
- as Lord of sacrifice, 9.24
- as Lord of universe, 10.3
- love call of, 5-6, 10, 249, 250, 251, 260, 261, 266, 272-273
- love for, 7.17, 11.44, 12.1, 18.54, 264-265, 277
- love of, 4.11, 7.17, 9.29, 12.14, 12.15, 12.16, 12.17, 12.19, 12.20, 18.64, 18.65, 18.69, 261, 265, 266, 270-272, 276-277
- love offered to, 4.3, 6.47, 7.23, 7.28, 9.13, 9.14, 9.23, 9.26, 9.29, 9.30, 9.31, 9.33, 9.34, 10.8, 11.54, 11.55, 12.1, 12.14, 12.16, 12.20, 13.18, 15.19, 18.65, 18.68, 249, 252, 266
- love song of, 272-279
- loving state of being of, 4.10
- Magnificent Self of, 11.50
- as manifest, 4.8
- manifestations from, 14.3
- manifestations of, 4, 5, 4.6, 7.24, 11.46, 11.47, 199n, 248, 249, 253, 259, 266, 267, 268, 270, 271
- as mantra, 9.16
- as Mārgashirsha, 10.35
- as Marichi, 10.21
- as Master of the Universe, 10.15
- and Māyā, 4.6, 7.14, 7.15, 18.61
- and meditation, 260
- meditation on, 2.61, 9.22, 10.17, 12.6, 52n, 266
- and memory, 8.5, 8.7, 8.13, 8.14, 10.34, 15.15, 266
- as Meru, 10.23
- as Mighty Self, 11.20
- and mind, 7.1, 8.7, 9.13, 9.34, 10.22, 11.49, 12.2, 12.8, 12.14, 18.65, 266
- as mind, 10.22
- mind of, 10.6
- as moon, 10.21, 11.39, 15.13
- as moral conduct, 10.38
- as mortality and immortality, 9.19
- as mother of universe, 9.17
- and motion, 10.8
- mouths of, 11.19, 11.23, 11.24, 11.25, 11.27, 11.28, 11.29, 11.30
- and moving and nonmoving, 10.39, 11.43
- as Nārada, 10.26
- nature of, 7.4, 7.5
- and Nirvāna, 6.15
- and nonbeing, 9.19
- as non-creator, 4.13
- and nonviolence, 10.5
- as nourisher, 15.13
- obedience to, 11.35, 11.39, 11.40, 11.44
- as oblation, 9.16
- as ocean, 10.24
- as offering, 9.16
- offering to, 7.19, 9.26, 9.27, 265
- oneness of, 9.15
- as One of Incomparable Being, 11.43
- as One of Unlimited Form, 11.38
- as original, 11.47
- as original Divinity, 10.12, 11.38
- as Original One, 11.21

- and passion, 7.11
- path of, 4.11
- paths to, 270-271
- and peace, 5.29, 18.62
- perception of, 11.17
- as pervasive, 9.4, 10.12, 10.16, 11.16, 11.20, 11.38, 11.47
- philosophical words of, 262-263
- as power, 7.11
- power of, 9.5, 10.7, 10.16, 10.19, 10.40, 11.40, 259, 267
- as Prahlaḍa, 10.30
- praise for, 9.14, 11.21, 266
- as Prajāpati, 11.39
- as prayer, 10.25
- as presiding over own nature, 4.6
- primordial nature of, 7.4, 9.7, 9.8
- as principal one, 10.24
- as 'principle of becoming', 7.30
- as 'principle of divinity', 7.30
- as 'principle of sacrifice', 7.30, 8.4
- and 'principle of self', 10.32
- as procreating force, 10.28
- prosperity from, 9.22
- as protective, 10.27
- protective words of, 261-262
- as prowess, 7.8
- prowess of, 11.19, 11.40
- and purification, 10.12, 10.31
- as Puruṣa, 249, 261, 278
- as radiance, 7.8
- and rain, 9.19
- and *rajas*, 7.12
- as Rāma, 10.31
- recognition of, 7.13, 7.25, 9.24, 18.55
- refuge in, 4.10, 7.29, 18.56, 266, 277, 278
- reliance on, 12.11
- and renunciation, 3.30, 12.6, 18.57, 266
- as resolve, 10.36
- as resting place, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6, 11.18, 11.38
- restraint as arising from, 10.4
- revelation of, 7.25, 267-270
- reverence for, 18.65, 266
- as rising into being, 10.34
- as ritual, 9.16
- roles of, 5
- as sacred utterance, 7.8, 10.25
- and sacrifice, 5.29, 9.16, 9.20, 9.23, 9.24, 9.25, 9.27, 9.34, 10.25, 11.48, 11.53, 18.65, 266
- as Sāma, 10.22
- and sameness, 9.29, 10.5
- and *sattva*, 7.12
- and secrets, 10.38, 15.20, 18.75, 272-279
- security from, 9.22
- as seed, 7.10, 9.18, 10.39
- seed of, 14.4
- as seen everywhere, 6.30
- and seers, 10.6
- and self, 7.14, 7.15, 7.16, 7.17, 7.18, 7.19, 11.24
- Self of, 4.6, 4.7, 9.5, 10.11, 10.15, 10.16, 10.18, 10.19, 10.20, 11.2, 11.3, 11.12, 11.47, 11.50
- as sending forth beings, 9.7, 9.8
- and senses, 10.22, 15.7
- separateness of, 9.15
- service to, 14.26
- as Shankara [Shiva], 10.23
- as shark, 10.31
- as shelter, 9.18, 9.32, 18.62, 18.66
- sight of, 4.35, 5.18, 6.29, 6.30, 11.3-11.8, 11.54, 266
- as silence of secrets, 10.38
- as Skanda, 10.24
- as smaller than atom, 8.9
- and social orders, 4.13
- and soul, 259
- as sound, 7.8
- as source, 10.15
- speaks, 1.25, 2.55, 3.3, 3.37, 4.1, 5.2, 6.1, 6.35, 7.1, 9.1, 10.1, 10.19, 11.32, 11.47, 11.52, 13.1, 14.1, 17.1, 18.2, 275
- splendor of, 7.10, 10.36, 10.41, 11.19, 11.30, 11.47, 15.12, 267
- suffering as arising from, 10.4
- as sun, 10.21
- as superior, 7.7
- and superlatives, 266-267, 272
- supervision of, 9.10
- as support, 10.42
- as Supreme Lord, 4, 5.29, 11.3, 11.16
- as Supreme Lord of Yoga, 11.4, 11.9, 18.75, 248, 252
- supreme nature of Lordship of, 9.11
- as supreme whole, 251
- as sustainer, 9.18, 15.13
- and taint, 4.14
- and *tamas*, 7.12
- as taming rod, 10.38
- as taste, 7.8
- as teacher, 13-14, 257, 260
- teeth of, 11.23, 11.25, 11.27
- as theorem, 10.32
- thighs of, 11.23
- as thought, 10.22
- thought focused on, 6.14, 10.9, 12.7, 12.9, 18.57, 18.58
- as Thousand-Armed One, 11.46
- as thunderbolt, 10.28
- as time, 10.30, 10.33, 11.32
- and time of passing on, 8.5
- torment to, 17.6

Krishna (*continued*)

traditions focusing on, 4
 and transcendence, 10, 18.58, 259
 and truth, 10.4, 18.55
 as Uccaishravas, 10.27
 as ultimate, 4, 248
 as Ultimate Person, 10.15, 11.3,
 15.18, 15.19, 274
 as unborn, 7.25, 10.3, 10.12
 understanding of, 4.14, 7.6, 9.6, 10.2,
 10.3, 10.41, 13.2
 as unending, 11.47
 as Unfathomable One, 11.42
 and the ungodly, 16.18, 16.20
 as Universal Form, 11.46
 and the universe, 7.7, 11.7, 11.13,
 11.25, 11.30, 11.37, 11.45
 as Unlimited Lord of Divinities, 11.37
 as unmanifest existence become
 manifest, 7.24
 unmanifest form of, 9.4
 as Ushanā, 10.37
 as Varuna, 11.39
 as Vāsava, 10.22
 as Vāsudeva, 10.37
 as Vāyu, 11.39
 and Vedas, 7.8, 9.17, 10.22, 11.48,
 11.53, 15.15, 15.18, 50n
 as victory, 10.36
 as Vishnu, 10.21, 11.30
 as Vishva Rūpa, 267, 269–270
 as Vyāsa, 10.37
 as warmth radiating, 9.19
 as water, 10.31
 as wind, 10.31
 and words, 10.33
 as world-creator, 10.33
 worship of, 9.14, 9.15, 9.22, 12.1,
 12.2, 18.70, 266
 as Yama, 11.39
 and yoga, 7.1, 10.7, 11.4, 11.8, 11.9,
 11.47, 12.6, 12.9, 18.75, 248–249,
 252, 259
 and Yoga-Māyā, 7.25
 as Yogi, 10.17
 yogi living in, 6.31
 Kumāras, 138n
 Kuntī, Queen, 1.16, 257
 Kuru, field of. *See* Kurukshetra (field
 of Kuru)
 Kuru, King, 8
 Kurukshetra (field of Kuru), 8–9, 1.1,
 255
 Kurus, 1.12, 1.25, 22n
 kusha grass, 6.11
 Kuvera, 10.23

Lakshmi Devī, 25n
 lament, 12.17, 18.35, 18.54

lamp, in analogy, 6.19, 10.11
 Leader of the Bharatas, 3.41, 18.36
 lethargy, 14.8, 18.28, 18.39
 letters, of alphabet, 10.33
 life, 7.9, 125n, 263
 life-breath, 4.27, 4.29, 4.30, 8.10, 8.12,
 10.9
 light, 5.24, 8.24, 8.26, 11.17, 14.13, 152n
 lightning, 152n
 lion, 145n
 loathing, 12.17
 Lord of Beings, 10.15
 Lord of Created Beings, 3.10
 loss, 18.25
 lost, state of being, 1.40, 2.63, 3.32,
 6.30, 9.31, 16.9, 18.58, 92n
 lotus, in analogy, 5.10
 lotus seat, 11.15
 love
 action from, 237n
 and bhakti, 251
 and dharma, 275
 and equality, 14.24
 feelings of, 10.8, 10.9
 freedom through, 125n
 and free will, 250
 as Gītā's main teaching, 10
 for Krishna, 11.44, 18.54, 264–265,
 277
 Krishna's call of, 5–6, 10, 249, 250,
 251, 260, 261, 266, 272–273
 offered to Krishna, 4.3, 6.47, 7.21,
 7.23, 7.28, 9.13, 9.23, 9.29, 9.30,
 9.31, 9.33, 9.34, 10.8, 11.55, 12.1,
 12.14, 12.16, 12.20, 13.18, 15.19,
 18.65, 249, 252, 266
 offered to other deities, 9.23
 offering of, 7.17, 8.10, 8.22, 9.14,
 9.26, 9.29, 11.54, 12.17, 12.19,
 13.11, 14.26, 18.54, 18.55, 18.67,
 18.68
 of Krishna, 4.11, 7.17, 9.29, 12.14,
 12.15, 12.16, 12.17, 12.19, 12.20,
 18.64, 18.65, 18.69, 249, 261, 265,
 266, 270–272
 secret of, 274
 for soul, 275
 supreme divinity as object of, 252
 and Supreme Person, 8.22
 for supreme Self, 275
 at time of passing on, 8.10
 translation of words for, 334–335
 and yoga, 13.10, 14.26, 246, 248, 278
 luminaries, 10.21, 13.17
 luminosity, 8.9

Mādhava [Krishna], 1.14, 1.37
 Madhusūdana [Krishna], 1.35, 2.1, 2.4,
 6.33, 8.2

- madness, 18.35
 Mahābhārata, 5
 Majestic One [Krishna], 14.21
 manifestation(s), 3.14
 and Brahmā's day, 8.18
 of divinity, 11, 90n, 114n, 128n, 246, 278
 of faith, 17.3
 and interims of being, 2.28
 from Krishna, 14.3
 of Krishna, 4, 5, 4.6, 4.8, 7.24, 11.46, 11.47, 199n, 248, 249, 253, 259, 266, 267, 268, 270, 271
 of 'qualities', 13.19
 of universe, 334
 and yoga, 278
 See also unmanifest, the
 mantra, 9.16, 17.13, 105n
 Manu, 4.1, 10.6
 Mārgashīrsha, 10.35
 Marīchi, 10.21
 Maruts, 10.21, 11.6, 11.22
 master, 5.13, 5.14
 matter, 2.14, 3.42
 Māyā, 4.6, 7.14, 7.15, 18.61, 71n, 247.
 See also Yoga-Māyā
 meaning, 8
 mediators, 6.9
 meditation, 54n
 as better than knowledge, 12.12
 on Brahman, 4.24
 description of one in, 2.54
 and discernment, 2.53
 on Krishna, 2.61, 9.22, 10.17, 12.6, 52n, 260, 266
 and night, 2.69
 and peace, 2.66
 perfect, 2.44, 2.53, 4.24, 47n
 from relinquishment, 12.12
 and Self, 13.24
 and yoga, 2.66, 18.52, 47n, 54n, 245, 246, 248
 See also consciousness; mind; thought
 memory
 and bewilderment, 2.63
 of form of Hari, 18.77
 of Keshava and Arjuna, 18.76
 and Krishna, 8.5, 8.7, 8.13, 8.14, 10.34, 15.15, 266
 restoration of, 18.73
 of state of being, 8.6
 of supreme divine Person, 8.9
 merit, 8.28
 Meru, 10.23
 Mighty Self [Krishna], 11.20
 mind, 7.4
 and action, 5.11, 5.13
 austerity of, 17.16
 control of, 5.28, 6.14, 6.26, 6.34, 6.35, 18.52
 and determination, 18.33
 deviated from yoga, 6.37
 and discernment, 3.42
 distress of, 11.45
 as enemy, 6.5, 6.6
 focus of, 6.12
 as friend, 6.5, 6.6
 and Krishna, 7.1, 8.7, 9.13, 9.34, 10.22, 11.49, 12.2, 12.8, 12.14, 18.65, 266
 of Krishna, 10.6
 Krishna as, 10.22
 and renunciation, 5.13
 and sameness, 13.9
 and self, 6.25
 and selfish desire, 2.55, 3.40
 and sense objects, 3.6, 15.9
 and senses, 2.60, 2.67, 3.7, 6.24, 15.7
 steady, 12.19
 stopping of within heart, 8.12
 as subdued, 6.15
 as undisturbed, 8.10
 as unsteady, 6.26, 6.34, 6.35
 weak, 18.16
 See also discernment; intelligence; meditation
 mindless ones, 17.6
 'mine', sense of, 2.71, 3.30, 12.13, 18.53
 mirror, in analogy, 3.38
 misdeeds/wrongdoing, 1.39, 3.6, 3.36, 5.15, 5.17, 5.25, 7.15, 7.28, 9.30
 misfortune, 1.36, 1.45, 2.33, 2.38, 4.16, 5.10, 10.3, 18.66
 monkey, banner of, 1.20
 months, 10.35
 moon, 7.8, 8.24, 8.25, 10.21, 11.19, 11.39, 15.6, 15.12, 15.13
 moths, in analogy, 11.29
 motion, 5.14, 6.13, 10.8, 13.15
 mountains, 10.23
 mouths, 11.10, 11.16, 11.19, 11.23, 11.24, 11.25, 11.27, 11.28, 11.29, 11.30
 moving and nonmoving, the, 9.10, 10.39, 11.7, 11.43
 Nāgas, 10.29
 Nārada, 10.13, 10.26
 narrative, 254
 nature
 action in accordance with, 3.33, 18.47, 18.48, 18.60, 263-264, 274, 275
 innate, 250
 of Krishna, 7.4, 7.5
 and person, 13.0, 13.20, 13.21
 worldly, 7.20

- nature, divine, 9.13
 nature, primordial
 and action, 13.20, 13.29
 bewilderment of, 9.12
 force of, 18.59
 knowledge of, 13.0, 13.23
 of Krishna, 7.4, 9.7, 9.8
 and the moving and nonmoving, 9.10
 and 'qualities', 3.5, 3.27, 3.29, 13.19, 274
 release of beings from, 13.34
 and senses, 15.7
 negligence, 14.8, 14.9, 14.13, 14.17
 night, 2.69, 8.17, 8.18, 8.19
 Nirvāṇa, 2.72, 5.24, 5.25, 5.26, 6.15
 nonbeing, 2.16, 9.19
 nonviolence, 10.5, 13.7, 16.2, 17.14

 oblation, 9.16
 observer, 13.22
 ocean, 10.24
 in analogy, 2.70
 offering, and sacrifice, 9.16, 17.13. *See also under love*
 ointments, 11.11
 OM, 8.13, 9.17, 17.23, 17.24, 61n, 144n, 155n
 Omnipresent, 5.15
 oneness, abidance in, 6.31
 One of Incomparable Being, 11.43
 One of Unlimited Form, 11.38
 One with Lotus-like Eyes, 11.2
 opacity, of world, 58n
 Original One, 11.31
 ornaments, 11.10

 Pāṇḍava [Arjuna], 4.35, 11.13
 Pāṇḍavas, 9, 1.2, 1.3, 10.37, 21n
 Pāṇḍu, 7, 8, 9, 1.1
 Pārtha (son of Prithā), 12
 passage, from world, 8.26
 passed on, those who have, 2.11, 7.26, 8.13, 8.23, 8.24, 8.27, 17.28
 passing on
 of beings, 11.2
 time of, 7.30, 8.2, 8.5, 8.6, 8.10
 See also death; perishing
 passion, 2.56, 4.10, 6.27, 7.11, 8.11, 14.7, 17.5, 18.23, 18.27
 patience, 12.13, 13.7, 16.3, 18.42
 peace, 1.46, 16.2, 18.53
 attainment of, 5.12, 6.15, 15.5
 and desire, 2.70, 2.71
 and happiness, 2.66
 and knowledge, 4.39
 and Krishna, 5.29
 and meditation, 2.66
 from relinquishment, 12.12
 and self-conquest, 6.7
 through Krishna, 18.62
 and yogis, 6.27
 perception, 2.29, 9.2, 15.3, 18.16, 18.20
 perfected beings, 10.26, 16.14
 perfection, 14.1
 of actionlessness, 18.49
 attainment of, 12.10, 18.50, 245
 and knowledge of Krishna, 7.3
 Krishna's words on, 263
 lack of attainment of, 16.23
 and rebirth, 6.43
 and renunciation, 3.4, 18.49
 supreme, 8.15
 through action, 3.20
 through practice, 18.45
 and the ungodly, 16.14
 and yoga, 4.38, 6.37, 245, 246
 perfumes, 11.11
 perishable, the, 15.16, 15.18
 perishing, 6.38, 8.20, 13.27. *See also death; passing on*
 permanence, 2.16
 Person
 cosmic, 11.38
 eternal, 10.12, 11.18
 highest, 13.22, 13.23
 macrocosmic, 118n
 original, 15.4
 supreme divine, 8.8, 8.9, 8.10
 Ultimate, 8.1, 8.4, 10.15, 11.3, 15.17, 15.18, 15.19, 116n, 246, 274, 278
 person, 13.0, 13.19, 13.20, 13.21, 17.3
 piety, 9.21
 pleasant/unpleasant, the, 2.57, 5.20, 12.17
 pleasure, 2.5, 2.43, 2.44, 3.12, 5.22, 5.24, 9.20
 poets, 10.37
 poison, 18.37, 18.38
 possessiveness, 4.21, 6.10, 18.53, 55n
 power, 7.11, 10.41
 of the knower, 13.3
 of Krishna, 9.5, 10.7, 10.16, 10.19, 10.40, 11.40, 259, 267
 and the ungodly, 16.14, 16.18, 17.5
 worldly, 2.43, 2.44
 and yoga, 247
 Prahlaḍa, 10.30
 praise, 12.19, 14.24, 258, 266
 Prajāpati, 11.39
prakṛti. *See* nature, primordial
prāṇa. *See* life-breath
 prayer, 11.14, 11.35, 258
 prescribed actions, 3.8, 6.1, 16.24, 17.24, 18.7, 18.9. *See also injunction*

- pride, 13.7, 15.5, 16.3, 16.4, 16.10,
 16.17, 18.53
 priests, 10.24, 10.35, 274
 principal one, 10.24
 'principle of becoming', 7.30, 8.4
 'principle of divinity', 7.30, 8.1, 8.4,
 116n
 'principle of sacrifice', 7.30, 8.2, 8.4
 'principle of self', 3.30, 7.29, 8.1, 8.3,
 10.32, 11.1, 13.11, 15.5, 261
 procrastination, 18.28
 prowess, 7.8, 18.43
 purification
 and austerity, 4.10
 and greatest secret, 9.2
 and knowledge, 4.10, 4.38
 and Krishna, 10.12, 10.31
 of self, 6.12
 from vice, 9.20
 and yoga, 5.7, 6.12
 purity
 of action, 18.71
 and austerity, 17.14, 17.16, 18.5
 and birth, 13.21
 and Brahmins, 18.42
 and divine birth, 16.1, 16.3
 and giving, 18.5
 and the highest, 14.14
 and love of Krishna, 12.16
 and mind, 17.16
 and rebirth, 6.41
 and relinquishment, 5.11
 and sacrifice, 18.5
 through sacrifice, 4.30
 and the ungodly, 16.7
 See also impurity
 Puru, 25n
 Purusha, 249, 261, 278. *See also*
 Person/person
 Purushottama, 249, 278. *See also*
 Person, Ultimate
 'qualities' [*guṇas*], 2.45, 105n
 and action, 3.5, 3.27, 3.28, 3.29,
 14.19, 14.22, 18.19, 18.41-18.48,
 274
 and Ashwattha tree, 15.2
 attachment to, 13.21
 and bewilderment, 7.13, 14.22, 15.10
 and Brahman, 13.14
 delusion by, 3.29
 and deterministic universe, 250
 and discernment, 18.29
 distribution of, 3.28
 and divinities, 18.40
 knowledge of, 13.23, 15.10
 manifestations of, 13.19
 perception of, 14.19
 and person, 13.21
 and primordial nature, 13.19
 and social orders, 4.13
 and Supreme Self, 13.31
 transcendence of, 14.20-14.26
 See also *rajas*; *sattva*; *tamas*
 quiet, 6.14
 radiance, 7.8
 rain, 3.14, 9.19
rajas, 58n
 and action, 14.7, 14.9, 14.12,
 18.24, 18.27
 anger from, 3.37
 and austerity, 17.18
 and cosmic absorption, 14.15
 and desire, 18.34
 and determination, 18.34
 and deterministic universe, 250
 and dharma, 18.31, 18.34
 and discernment, 18.31
 domination by, 14.10, 14.12
 and faith, 17.1, 17.2
 and food, 17.9
 fruit of, 14.16
 and giving, 17.21
 and greed, 14.17
 and happiness, 18.38
 and knowledge of separateness,
 18.21
 and Krishna, 7.12
 and passion, 14.7
 as quality, 14.5
 and relinquishment, 18.8
 and remaining in the middle, 14.18
 and sacrifice, 17.4, 17.12
 and selfish desire, 18.24
 and wealth, 18.34
 Rakshasas, 10.23
 Rāma, 10.31
 Rāmānuja, 277
 rapture, 254
 Rāsa Līlā, 6
 recipient, beloved, 5.29, 9.24, 13.22
 reciprocity, 17.20
 rejoicing, 16.15
 relatives, 7, 8, 1.26, 1.27, 1.31, 1.34,
 1.37, 256
 release, 7.29
 relinquishment [*tyāga*], 16.2
 of action, 18.3, 18.11
 of all undertakings, 12.16
 of anger, 16.21
 of attachment, 2.48, 4.20, 5.10, 5.11,
 18.6, 18.9
 and bewilderment, 18.7
 and body, 4.9, 5.23, 8.5, 8.6, 8.13,
 18.11
 of desire, 2.55, 16.21
 of forms of dharma, 18.66, 277-278

- relinquishment [*tyāga*] (*continued*)
 of fruits of action, 2.51, 4.20, 5.12,
 12.11, 12.12, 18.2, 18.6, 18.9,
 18.11, 18.12, 274
 of greed, 16.21
 of lives and wealth in battle, 1.33
 meditation from, 12.12
 nature of, 18.1
 peace from, 12.12
 of the pleasant and unpleasant, 12.17
 and *rajas*, 18.8
 and *sattva*, 18.9, 18.10
 of selfish desire, 6.24
 of sense objects, 18.51
 and *tamas*, 18.7
 three types of, 18.4
 of undertakings, 14.25
 relishing, 12.17
 renunciation [*saṁnyāsa*]
 and action, 5.1, 5.2
 of action, 3.30, 4.41, 5.1, 5.2, 5.13,
 12.6, 18.7, 18.57
 of fruits of action, 6.1, 264
 and hate and desire, 5.3
 for Krishna, 266
 nature of, 18.1
 and perfection, 3.4, 18.49
 of prescribed action, 18.7
 of selfish motive, 6.2, 6.4
 of selfishness, 18.2, 274
 transcendence through, 275
 and yoga, 5.6, 6.2, 6.4, 9.28, 246
 repetition, 18.36
 repression, 3.33
 repulsion, 2.64, 18.23, 18.51
 reputation, 2.33, 2.34, 2.35, 2.36
 resolve, 10.36, 12.14, 16.10, 258-259
 resting place, 11.18
 restraint, 10.4, 12.11, 16.1, 18.42
 reverence, 18.65, 266
 Rig Veda, 9.17
 ritual, 1.42, 2.43, 4.24, 6.1, 9.16, 105n
 rivers, in analogy, 11.28
 Rudras, 10.23, 11.6, 11.22
 rulers, 10.27, 18.41, 18.43, 274

 sacred cow, 3.10
 sacrifice, 3.9, 3.10, 16.1
 and action, 3.14, 4.12, 4.23, 4.32
 of austerities, 4.28
 and Brahman, 3.15, 4.25, 4.31, 4.32
 cleansing through, 4.30
 desire for fruits of, 17.11, 17.12
 and divinities, 3.11, 3.12, 4.25, 7.23
 and faith, 17.1, 17.28
 and freedom, 4.32
 and knowledge, 4.28, 4.33, 4.34,
 8.28, 9.15, 18.70
 and Krishna, 5.29, 9.16, 9.20, 9.23,
 9.24, 9.25, 9.27, 9.34, 10.25, 11.48,
 11.53, 18.65, 266
 of material possessions, 4.28
 as not to be relinquished, 18.3, 18.5,
 18.6
 and OM, 17.23, 17.24
 principle of, 7.30, 8.2, 8.4
 and purity, 18.5
 and rain, 3.14
 and *rajas*, 17.4
 remnants of, 4.31
 and SAT, 17.23
 and *sattva*, 17.4
 for spirits, 9.25
 steadfastness in, 17.27
 for success, 4.12
 and *tamas*, 17.4
 and TAT, 17.23, 17.25
 three types of, 17.7, 17.11-17.13
 by the ungodly, 16.15, 16.17
 Vedic, 105n
 and virtue, 3.13
 of yoga, 4.28
 sacrificial cycle, 3.16
 Sādhya, 11.22
 sage(s), 10, 2.56, 2.69, 5.6, 5.28, 6.3,
 10.26, 10.37
 saintliness, 6.9, 9.33, 10.35
saṁādhi. See meditation
 Sāma [Krishna], 10.22
 Sāma Veda, 9.17, 10.22, 148n
 sameness
 of action, 12.18
 in all beings, 6.32
 and Brahman, 5.19
 of discernment, 6.9
 of earth, stone, and gold, 14.24
 and Krishna, 9.29, 10.5
 of mind, 13.9
 and self absorbed in yoga, 6.29
 in suffering and happiness, 12.13,
 14.24
 of the Supreme, 5.18
 of supreme Lord, 13.27
 toward all, 18.54
 yoga as state of, 6.33
 and yogis, 6.8
saṁnyāsa. See renunciation
 Sanjaya, 9, 11, 1.24, 253-256
 addressed, 1.1
 Dhritarāshtra's dialogue with, 12
 as sage, 10
 speaks, 1.2, 1.24, 2.1, 2.9, 11.9, 11.35,
 11.50, 18.74, 275
 and supreme secret of yoga, 274
 vision of, 10
 and vision of forms of Krishna, 268

- Sāṅkhya, 5.4
 followers of, 3.3, 5.5, 18.13
 philosophy of, 2.39, 48n, 144n
 theory of, 18.19
 yoga of, 13.24
 SAT, 17.23, 17.26, 17.27
 satisfaction, 4.20, 4.22, 12.14, 12.19
sattva, 58n
 and action, 18.23, 18.26
 and agreeable *vs.* disagreeable
 action, 18.10
 and austerity, 17.17
 and cosmic absorption, 14.14
 and determination, 18.33
 and deterministic universe, 250
 and discernment, 18.30, 18.37
 domination by, 14.10, 14.11
 and faith, 17.1, 17.2, 17.3, 17.17
 and food, 17.8
 and giving, 17.20
 and happiness, 14.6, 14.9, 18.37
 as illuminating, 14.6
 and knowledge, 14.6, 14.11, 14.17,
 18.20
 and Krishna, 7.12
 and perception of one being in all
 beings, 18.20
 as quality, 14.5
 and relinquishment, 18.9, 18.10
 and sacrifice, 17.4, 17.11
 as untainted, 14.6
 and upward progress, 14.18
 Scorcher of the Enemy [Arjuna], 2.3,
 7.27, 10.40, 18.41
 scripture, 4.28, 15.20, 16.1, 16.23,
 16.24, 17.1, 17.5, 17.11, 17.13,
 17.24, 78n
 sea, in analogy, 2.67, 11.28
 seasons, 10.35
 seat, establishment of, 6.11, 6.14
 seclusion, 13.10
 secret
 of action in accordance with one's
 nature, 274
 of Divine Love, 274
 greater, 18.63, 274, 275
 greatest, 9.1, 9.2, 15.20, 18.64, 233n,
 274, 275
 of Krishna's love, 276-277
 supreme, 11.1, 18.68, 18.75, 274
 of Supreme Self, 274
 of transcendence, 274, 275
 ultimate, 4.3, 248
 and yogis, 6.10
 seed, 7.10, 9.18, 10.39, 14.4
 seed verse, 9
 seers, 2.16, 4.2, 10.2, 10.6, 10.25, 10.26,
 11.15, 11.21, 13.4, 14.1
 Self
 all beings within, 4.35
 connection to, 46n
 as everpresent, 42n
 as Krishna, 4.6, 4.7, 9.5, 10.11, 10.15,
 10.16, 10.18, 10.19, 10.20, 11.2,
 11.3, 11.12, 11.47, 11.50
 and meditation, 13.24
 as present in all beings, 6.29
 and self, 6.20, 15.11, 46n
 self
 abiding in alone, 6.18
 as absorbed in yoga, 5.21, 6.10, 6.15,
 6.29, 9.28
 and action, 3.27
 and being, 41n
 as beyond discernment, 3.42, 3.43
 and birth, 2.20, 2.21, 2.26
 and body, 2.20
 calmness of, 2.64
 conquest of, 6.6, 6.7, 18.49
 control of, 5.7, 6.36, 12.14, 13.7, 92n
 as creator, 3.27
 and death, 2.20, 2.26
 degradation of, 6.5
 delight in, 3.17
 detachment of, 5.21
 discipline of, 5.25, 8.2, 275
 doubt of, 4.40
 empathic connection of, 83n
 as eternal, 2.21
 as everlasting, 2.24
 as everpresent, 2.21, 2.24
 extraordinary, 8.15, 9.13
 free will of, 92n
 as friend and enemy, 6.5, 6.6
 as fully striving, 6.36
 happiness in, 5.21
 higher, 6.7, 92n
 and highest place, 16.22
 as immovable, 2.24
 as inconceivable, 2.25
 as indestructible, 2.21
 and knowledge, 2.29, 4.38, 5.16,
 5.26, 6.8, 7.16, 7.17
 and Krishna, 7.14, 7.15, 7.16, 7.17,
 7.18, 7.19, 11.24
 as lost, 16.9
 lower, 92n
 and meditation, 13.24
 mind in, 6.25, 6.26
 as not creator of action, 13.29
 as offered to other deities, 7.20
 pain inflicted upon, 17.19
 perception of, 2.29
 perception of 'qualities' by, 14.19
 philosophical vision of, 11
 possession of, 2.45, 12.11

self (*continued*)

- principle of, 3.30, 7.29, 8.1, 8.3, 10.32, 11.1, 13.11, 15.5, 261
- purification of, 6.12
- and quiet, 6.14
- as raised by self, 6.5
- restraint of, 4.21
- and sameness, 6.32
- satisfaction with, 2.55
- and Self, 6.20, 15.11, 46n
- and self of all beings, 5.7
- and senses, 15.8
- serenity of discerning, 18.37
- and slaying, 2.19, 2.20, 2.21
- as sole agent, 18.16
- speaking and hearing of, 2.29
- as stationary, 2.24
- subdued, 6.10, 18.51
- and Supreme, 5.17
- as sustained by self, 3.43
- thought on, 3.30
- tranquility of, 18.54
- and transcendence, 11
- as translation of *ātman*, 333
- as unaffected, 2.23, 2.24
- as unborn and eternal, 2.20
- as unchangeable, 2.25
- and the ungodly, 16.21
- as unharmed by self, 13.28
- as unmanifest, 2.25
- as unperceived, 15.10
- as untainted, 5.7
- wholly absorbed in, 6.7
- and worldly pleasure and power, 2.43
- Self, Supreme, 92n, 237n, 249, 275
 - as everpresent, 13.31
 - as highest Person, 13.22
 - as lacking beginning, 13.31
 - as manifestation of divinity, 278
 - secret of, 274
 - as ultimate person, 15.17
 - as untainted, 13.31, 13.32
- self-actualization, 15.11
- self-centeredness, 10, 16.17, 58n
- self-destructiveness, 58n
- self-giving, 58n
- selfish desire
 - abandonment of, 2.71
 - action without, 4.19
 - and attachment, 2.62
 - destruction of, 3.43
 - as enemy, 3.37
 - freedom from, 18.53
 - and knowledge, 3.39, 3.40
 - lack of, 6.18
 - and lack of attainment, 16.23
 - and *rajas*, 18.24

- relinquishment of, 6.24
- renunciation of, 2.55, 18.2
- and those bound by action, 5.12
- of the ungodly, 16.8, 16.11, 16.16, 16.18, 17.5
- See also* desire
- selfishness, 3.13
 - and action, 3.18
 - degradation to, 92n
 - and 'qualities', 58n
 - renunciation of, 6.2, 6.4, 274
 - and slaying, 2.5
 - and yoga, 249
- self-restraint, 2.64
- self-satisfaction, 3.17
- sensation, outer, 5.27, 6.7
- sense objects
 - attachment to, 2.62
 - attraction and aversion to, 3.34
 - detachment from, 6.4
 - and the embodied, 2.59
 - experience of, 15.10
 - and mind, 3.6, 15.9
 - offering of, 4.26
 - pursuit of, 15.9
 - relinquishment of, 18.51
 - and senses, 2.64, 3.34, 5.8, 5.9, 18.38
 - withdrawal from, 2.58, 2.68
- senses
 - and action, 4.27, 5.11
 - of action, 3.6, 3.7
 - and Ashwattha tree, 15.2
 - as beyond matter, 3.42
 - and Brahman, 13.14
 - conquest of, 6.8
 - and contact with matter, 2.14
 - control of, 2.61, 3.6, 3.41, 4.39, 5.7, 5.28, 6.12, 6.24, 12.4
 - and determination, 18.33
 - and the field, 13.5
 - fire of, 4.26
 - and happiness, 2.14, 6.21
 - and knowledge, 2.67, 2.68
 - and Krishna, 10.22, 15.7
 - mental control of, 3.7
 - and mind, 2.60, 2.67, 3.7, 6.24, 15.7
 - objects of, 13.8
 - offering of actions of, 4.27
 - offering through discipline of, 4.26
 - and pleasure, 5.22
 - and primordial nature, 15.7
 - restraint of, 2.61
 - and sacrificial cycle, 3.16
 - and self, 15.8
 - and selfish desire, 3.40
 - and sense objects, 2.64, 3.34, 5.8, 5.9, 18.38

- as tortoise, 2.58
- use of, 15.9
- sentimentality, 2.57
- separateness, 18.21
- serpents, 10.28, 11.15
- Shankara. *See* Shiva
- shark, 10.31
- ship, in analogy, 2.67
- Shiva, 10.23, 56n, 122n
- sight, 11.7, 11.8, 15.9
- sin, 31n
- sincerity, 16.1, 17.14, 18.42
- Skanda, 10.24
- sky, 11.24
- slander, 16.2
- Slayer of Keshi [Krishna], 18.1
- Slayer of Madhu [Krishna], 12
- Slayer of the Enemy [Krishna], 2.4
- slaying, 1.31, 1.35, 1.36, 1.37, 1.46, 2.5, 2.6, 2.19, 2.20, 2.21, 2.37, 11.33, 11.34, 16.14, 18.17
- sleep, 6.16, 6.17, 14.8, 18.35, 18.39
- smell, 15.9
- smoke, 8.25
 - in analogy, 3.38, 18.48
- society, 4.13, 64n
 - classes of, 1.41, 1.42, 1.43, 4.13, 27.4
- soma, drinkers of, 9.20
- song, 4
- Son of Kuntī [Arjuna], 1.27, 13.1, 13.31, 14.4, 14.7, 16.20, 16.22, 18.48, 18.50, 18.60
- Son of Kuru [Arjuna], 6.43, 14.13
- Son of Pāndu [Arjuna], 6.2, 11.55, 14.22, 16.5
- Son of Prithā [Arjuna], 4.33
- sons, 1.26, 1.34, 11.44
- soul
 - and body, 85n
 - choice of destiny by, 250
 - dependency of, 64n
 - and divinity, 11, 246, 263, 278
 - elevation of, 264
 - and Krishna, 259
 - love for, 275
 - as moving toward or away from yoga, 249-250
 - outer world of, 259
 - as portion of *Bhagavat*, 251
 - rebirth of, 250
 - See also* Self; self
- sound, in space, 7.8
- space, 7.4, 7.8, 13.32
 - in analogy, 9.6
- speech, 2.29, 10.34, 12.19, 17.15, 18.52
- spirits, sacrifice for, 9.25, 17.4
- splendor, 7.10, 10.36, 10.41, 11.19, 11.30, 11.47, 15.12, 267
- spouse, 13.9
- stability, 11.24, 13.7
- stationary things, 10.25
- steadfastness, 18.26, 18.43, 18.51
- stones, 6.8, 14.24
- striving, 2.14, 2.60, 4.28, 6.36, 6.37, 6.43, 6.45, 7.3, 7.29, 9.14, 15.11
- stubbornness, 16.17, 18.28
- student, 13-14, 2.7, 256, 257, 258
- study, 11.48
- subdivinity. *See* deities; divinities
- Subduer of the Enemy [Arjuna], 4.2, 4.5
- sublimity, 259, 267, 278
- success, 2.48, 4.12, 4.22, 18.26, 333-334
- suffering [*duḥkha*]
 - action in, 2.38
 - as arising from Krishna, 10.4
 - and calmness, 2.65
 - disjunction from, 6.23
 - end of, 18.36
 - fear of, 18.8
 - freedom from, 14.20, 15.5
 - as fruit of *rajas*, 14.16
 - and happiness, 2.15, 2.38, 6.32, 12.13, 12.18
 - and matter, 2.14
 - mind undisturbed in, 2.56
 - one unshaken in, 6.22
 - place beyond, 2.51
 - and pleasure, 5.22
 - and rebirth, 8.15
 - and sameness, 6.32, 12.13, 12.18, 14.24
 - and self-conquest, 6.7
 - and senses, 2.14, 5.22
 - world of, 247, 249
 - and yoga, 6.17, 6.23
- sukha*. *See* happiness
- sun, 7.8, 8.24, 8.25, 10.21, 11.12, 11.17, 11.19, 15.6, 15.12, 69n, 144n, 152n
 - in analogy, 5.16, 13.33
- Supreme, the, 2.59, 3.19, 5.16, 5.17, 5.18, 13.34
- supreme destination, 8.13, 8.21
- Supreme Lord, 4, 5.29, 11.3, 11.16, 13.22, 13.27, 13.28, 15.17, 16.8, 16.14, 18.61, 18.75, 85n, 237n
- Supreme Lord of Yoga, 11.4, 11.9, 248, 252, 278. *See also* Yogeshvara
- Supreme Person, 12, 8.22
- supreme realm, 8.28
- sympathy, of yogi, 101n
- taint, 2.5, 4.14, 5.7, 13.31, 13.32, 14.6, 14.16
 - See also* impurity; purity

tamas

- and absence of knowledge, 14.8
- and action, 18.22, 18.25, 18.28
- and bewilderment, 14.8, 14.13, 14.15, 14.17, 17.19, 18.7, 18.25, 18.39
- and cosmic absorption, 14.15
- and determination, 18.35
- and deterministic universe, 250
- and dharma, 18.32
- and discernment, 18.32
- domination by, 14.10, 14.13
- and downward progress, 14.18
- and faith, 17.1, 17.2, 17.13
- and fear, 18.35
- and food, 17.10
- fruit of, 14.16
- and giving, 17.22
- and happiness, 18.39
- and Krishna, 7.12
- and negligence, 14.9, 14.13, 14.17
- and one thing taken as the whole, 18.22
- as quality, 14.5
- and sacrifice, 17.4
- and self, 58n
- taste, 2.59, 7.8, 15.9, 15.13
- TAT, 17.23, 17.25
- teacher(s), 7, 13-14, 1.26, 1.34, 4.34, 253, 257, 274
- teeth, 11.23, 11.25, 11.27
- tenacity, 16.3
- theocenteredness, 55n
- theory, 10.32
- thighs, 11.23
- thirst, 14.7
- thought
 - as absorbed in yoga, 7.30
 - attachment of, 12.5
 - control of, 5.26, 6.12
 - discouraging, 6.23
 - and the field, 13.6
 - focused on highest point, 18.72
 - focused on supreme divine Person, 8.8
 - and knowledge, 4.23
 - on Krishna, 6.14, 10.9, 12.7, 12.9, 18.57, 18.58
 - and mind as established in self, 6.25
 - resting place of, 6.20
 - restoration of, 11.51
 - restraint of, 4.21
 - subdued, 6.10, 6.18, 6.19
 - See also* consciousness; discernment; intelligence; meditation
- thoughtless, those who are, 3.32, 15.11
- Thousand-Armed One, 11.46

- thunderbolt, 10.28
- Tiger Among Men [Arjuna], 18.4
- time, 10.30, 10.33, 11.25, 11.32
- time (*yuga*), 71n
- torment, 16.16, 259
- tortoise, in analogy, 2.58
- touch, 15.9
- tradespeople, 9.32, 18.41, 18.44, 274
- tranquility, 11.24
- transcendence
 - and action, 274
 - attainment of, 275
 - inner world of, 249, 264, 275
 - and Krishna, 10, 18.58, 259
 - of 'qualities', 14.20-14.26
 - secret of, 274
 - and self, 11
 - and yoga, 245
- trees, 10.26
- troubled persons, 4.36, 6.9
- truth, 6.21, 10.4, 13.11, 16.2, 16.7, 16.10, 17.26, 18.55
- twice-born, the, 17.14. *See also* Brahmins
- tyāga*. *See* relinquishment
- Ucchaishravas, 10.27
- Ultimate Person. *See* Person, ultimate
- unchanging, the, 12.3
- uncleanliness, 16.16, 18.27. *See also* cleanliness; impurity; taint
- uncles, 1.26, 1.34
- uncontainable, the, 12.3
- Unfathomable One, 11.42
- ungodly, the, 9, 7.15, 16.4, 16.5, 16.6-16.23, 17.5, 17.6, 157n
- Universal Form, 11.46, 246, 248
- universe
 - deterministic, 250
 - within Krishna, 11.7, 11.13
 - Krishna as creator of, 9.17
 - Krishna as dwelling place of, 11.25, 11.37, 11.45
 - Krishna as father of, 9.17
 - Krishna as grandfather of, 9.17
 - Krishna as Lord of, 10.3
 - Krishna as master of, 10.15
 - Krishna as mother of, 9.17
 - Krishna as pervasive in, 9.4, 11.38
 - Krishna as resting place of, 11.38
 - Krishna as supporting, 10.42
 - life-cycle of, 9.7, 9.10
 - and living beings, 7.5
 - manifestations of, 334
 - and splendor of Krishna, 11.30
 - as strung upon Krishna, 7.7
 - Unlimited Lord of Divinities [Krishna], 11.37

- unmanifest, the, 2.25, 2.28, 7.24, 8.18,
8.20, 8.21, 9.4, 12.1, 12.3, 12.5,
13.5. *See also* manifestation(s)
- Upanishads, 12, 13-14
- Ushanā, 10.37
- utterance, 7.8, 10.25
- Vaishnava, 4, 12
- vanity, 9.12
- varna*, 33n
- Vārshneya [Krishna], 3.36
- Varuna, 10.29, 11.39
- Vāsava [Krishna], 10.22
- Vāsudeva [Krishna], 7.19, 10.37, 11.50,
18.74
- Vāsuki [Krishna], 10.28
- Vasus, 10.23, 11.6, 11.22
- Vāyu, 11.39
- Vedānta, 15.15
- Vedas
and action, 3.15
and Ashwattha tree, 15.1
and Bhagavad Gītā, 12-13
delight in, 2.42
dharma of, 9.21
and the divine, 9.20
and Hinduism, 4
and the imperishable, 8.11
knowledge of, 78n
and Krishna, 7.8, 9.17, 10.22, 11.48,
11.53, 15.15, 15.18, 50n
macrocosmic Person in, 118n
meritorious fruit in, 8.28
and OM TAT SAT, 17.23
sacrifice in, 105n, 206n
and three 'qualities', 2.45
Ushanā in, 148n
value of, 2.46
- vice, purification from, 9.20
- victory, 10.36, 10.38
- Vinatā, son of, 10.30
- virtue, 3.13, 4.8, 5.15, 6.40, 6.41, 7.28,
9.33, 14.16
- Vishnu, 4, 10.21, 11.30, 145n, 146n
- Vishnu Sabasra Nāma*, 12
- Vishva deities, 11.22
- Vishva Rūpa, 267, 269-270, 278
- vision
and Dhritarāshtra, 10
focus of, 6.13
and knowledge, 13.11
of Krishna's form, 11.52
placement of, 5.27
and Sanjaya, 10
of supreme Self, 237n
of theocenteredness, 55n
- Vivisvān, 4.1, 4.4
- Vraja, 5-6
- Vrishni, descendants of, 10.37
- vulgarity, 18.28
- Vyāsa, 10.13, 10.37, 18.75, 21n, 255
- wakefulness, 2.69, 6.16, 6.17
- warrior(s), 2.31, 11.26, 11.32, 11.34,
256-257, 274
- water, 2.23, 7.4, 7.8, 10.24, 10.31
in analogy, 5.10
- wealth, 16.12, 16.13, 16.15, 16.17, 18.34
- weapons, 2.23, 10.28, 10.31, 11.10
- whole, aggregate, 13.6
- will, 3.5, 18.6, 250
- wind, 2.23, 10.31, 152n
in analogy, 2.67, 6.34, 9.6, 15.8
- winged creatures, 10.30
- wisdom, 2.15, 6.42, 8.9
- wise, the, 3.25, 3.26
- womb(s), 7.6, 9.32, 13.21, 14.3, 14.4,
16.19, 16.20
- women, 1.41, 9.32. *See also* feminine
attributes; feminine energy
- words, 10.33
- worker, skilled, 9.32, 18.41, 18.44, 274
- world(s)
celestial, 2.32, 2.37, 9.21
creator of, 10.33
cycles of, 8.16
as designed to facilitate love, 250
destruction of, 11.29
detachment from, 264
and disturbance, 12.15
inner, 11, 249, 264, 275
Krishna's destruction of, 11.32
outer, 11, 264
passage from, 8.26
and power, 2.43, 2.44
and pure action, 18.71
of suffering, 247, 249
three, 15.17
and transcendence, 264
translucency of, 58n
transparency of, 58n
as trembling at Krishna, 11.20, 11.23
and the ungodly, 16.9
welfare of, 3.20, 3.25
- worship, 9.20, 9.22, 12.1, 12.2, 12.20,
13.25, 18.46, 266
- wrath, 16.4, 16.12, 16.18
- wretched persons, 3.13
- wrongdoing. *See* misdeeds/wrongdoing
- Yādava [Krishna], 11.41
- Yadu, 25n
- yajña*. *See* sacrifice
- Yajur Veda, 9.17
- Yakshas, 10.23, 11.22
- Yama, 11.39, 145n

- yoga, 4.2, 4.3, 245-253
 absorption in, 2.39, 2.50, 2.51, 2.61, 2.66, 3.26, 4.18, 5.7, 5.12, 5.21, 5.23, 6.8, 6.10, 6.15, 6.17, 6.18, 6.23, 6.28, 6.29, 6.47, 7.17, 7.18, 7.22, 7.30, 8.8, 8.10, 8.14, 8.27, 9.14, 9.22, 9.34, 10.7, 10.10, 12.1, 12.2, 17.17, 18.28, 18.51
 and action, 2.48, 2.49, 2.50, 3.3, 3.7, 4.41, 5.1, 5.2, 6.3, 13.24, 246, 248
 applied method of, 2.39
 and Arjuna's despair, 247
 of bhakti, 251
 and Brahman, 5.6
 concentration of, 8.12
 and connection of self to Self, 46n
 and determination, 18.33
 and discernment, 2.39, 2.49, 2.50, 2.51, 2.53, 2.66, 10.10, 18.57, 246, 264, 265
 and the divine, 3, 245, 246, 248, 249, 278
 fire of, 4.27
 and heart, 249, 252, 273
 and knowledge, 3.3, 4.42, 16.1, 246, 248
 and Krishna, 7.1, 9.5, 10.7, 11.8, 11.47, 12.6, 12.9, 12.11, 18.75, 248-249, 259
 and love, 13.10, 14.26, 246, 248, 278
 and manifestations, 278
 and meditation, 2.66, 18.52, 47n, 54n, 245, 246, 248
 mind deviated from, 6.37
 movement to or from, 249-250
 and perfection, 4.38, 6.37, 245, 246
 and power, 247
 and purification, 5.7, 6.12
 and renunciation, 5.6, 6.2, 6.4, 9.28, 246
 sacrifice of, 4.28
 and sameness, 2.48, 6.33
 and Sāṅkhya, 5.4, 5.5, 13.24
 of self, 6.19
 and success and unsuccess, 2.48
 and suffering, 6.17, 6.23
 supreme secret of, 18.75, 245, 274
 as term, 247
 and thought, 6.20
 as transforming, 246
 translation of, 331
 of Ultimate Person, 246
 of universal form, 246
 Yoga-Māyā, 7.25, 247. *See also* Māyā
 Yoga Sūtra of Patanjali, 252
 Yogeshvara [Krishna], 247-248, 249, 251, 278. *See also* Supreme Lord of Yoga
 Yogi [Krishna], 10.17
 yogi(s)
 and absorption in yoga, 6.10
 and action, 3.3, 5.11, 6.1
 and ascetics, 6.46
 and Brahman, 5.24
 defined, 248
 and knowledge, 6.46
 Krishna's love for, 12.14
 living in Krishna, 6.31
 and love for Yogeshvara, 249
 and peace, 6.27
 and rebirth, 6.45
 and renunciation, 6.2
 return of, 8.25, 8.26
 and sacred acts, 6.46
 and sameness, 6.8
 and self within Self, 15.11
 and supreme realm, 8.28
 sympathy of, 101n
 and vision of sameness, 6.32
 who have passed on, 8.23
 worship by, 4.25

Acknowledgments

Teachers, colleagues, students, and friends have significantly contributed to my work. With Daniel H. H. Ingalls, my Sanskrit teacher at Harvard, I studied the Sanskrit text of the Bhagavad Gītā. Under J. A. B. van Buitenen at the University of Chicago, I studied Vedānta philosophy and the Mahābhārata. And it was Bhaktivedanta Swami Prabhupāda, who lived the life of the Bhagavad Gītā, from whom I received the tradition's vision of the text through his own monumental work.

Catherine Ghosh offered profound understandings for the depth interpretation of the text and provided poetic and philosophical suggestions for verses. Hridayananda Das Goswami worked with me on evolving the translation approach and carefully reviewed the translation for accuracy. Phillip Murphy pondered and critiqued the verses, engaging invaluable insights from the Hindu philosophical background. Wilhelm Vandenberg and Gerald Surya offered important critiques and recommendations for the verses in their final stages, while Ken Solomon worked meticulously on the proofreading and refinement of the English transliteration of the Sanskrit text from the critical edition. My heartfelt gratitude goes to my wife, Susan Schweig, for her tireless hours spent editing prose and verses in their various stages of development, and for contributing her poetic sensibilities, sensitivity to language, and organizational skills to the project.

I wish to thank all of my university students, as well as those in various seminars and workshops at yoga centers and traditional Vaishnava Hindu temples, with whom I shared the rich teachings of this text. Also, Provost Richard Summerville, Dean Douglas Gordon, Deborah Campbell, the Department Chair, Kenneth Rose, Director of Religious Studies, and secretary Princess Nilen, all at Christopher Newport University, were very supportive of this work. Many thanks go to the staff at Harper San Francisco, especially Eric Brandt, Senior Editor, who believed in this project from the beginning. His constant support, patience, and vision energized the project at every stage.

About the Author

Graham Schweig received his doctorate in Comparative Religion from Harvard University, and is a specialist in the philosophy and history of yoga, bhakti devotional traditions of India, and love mysticism in world religions. He is currently Associate Professor of Religious Studies and Director of the Indic Studies Program at Christopher Newport University on the Virginia peninsula, and also Visiting Associate Professor of Sanskrit at the University of Virginia. He has taught at Duke University and the University of North Carolina. Schweig recently was a Visiting Fellow at the Oxford Centre of Hindu Studies of Oxford University and has been accepted as a Visiting Fellow at Clare Hall of Cambridge University.

Schweig regularly offers yoga workshops and seminars, and he is a longtime practitioner of various forms of meditational and devotional yoga under the guidance of traditional teachers. He has traveled to India seven times, once residing in India for a year, directing a Smithsonian Institution funded research grant for preserving ancient palm-leaf manuscripts.

Schweig has published numerous articles for professional journals and encyclopedias, and chapters for books in his field, and is Senior Editor of the international periodical *Journal of Vaishnava Studies*. Recently, Princeton University Press published his book *Dance of Divine Love: India's Classic Sacred Love Story: The Rāsa Līlā of Krishna from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa*. He is presently working on other book projects, including *Bhagavad Gītā Concordance: A Comprehensive Word Reference with Sanskrit and English Indexes*, and *The Bhakti Sūtra: Concise Teachings of Nārada on Divine Love*, both to be published by Columbia University Press.



GRAHAM M. SCHWEIG is the author and translator of *Dance of Divine Love: The Rāsa Līlā of Krishna*. After completing graduate work at the University of Chicago and Harvard University, he became associate professor of religious studies at Christopher Newport University and visiting associate professor of Sanskrit at the University of Virginia. Schweig was recently a Visiting Fellow of Hindu studies at Oxford University, and has been accepted as a Visiting Fellow at Cambridge University. He has traveled to India several times where for one year, under a Smithsonian Institution-funded grant, he researched ancient handwritten manuscripts. Since an early age, Schweig has practiced various forms of meditational and devotional yoga.

Visit www.AuthorTracker.com for exclusive information on your favorite HarperCollins authors.

HarperSanFrancisco

A Division of HarperCollinsPublishers

Cover photograph: Entrance to the Vishnu Temple in Bishnupur, State of Bengal, India. Michael Bühler-Rose

Cover design: LeVan Fisher Design

Author photograph: Terry Lee

THE SACRED SONG OF INDIA

Often thought of as the Bible of India, the *Bhagavad Gita* is one of the most important sacred texts of the world. Graham M. Schweig masterfully translates this classic text for an easy-to-understand and reader-friendly edition with the following key features:

- Beautiful, poetic translation in free-verse form
- An introduction providing an overview of the story and its themes
- Annotations at the foot of pages explaining foreign concepts and terms
- Extensive concluding essay for greater understanding of the text
- Thorough index of religious terms and Sanskrit words
- The complete transliterated Sanskrit text

Praise for Graham Schweig's translation of the *Bhagavad Gita*:

"With all due respect to the Analects of Confucius, it is safe to say that the soul of the West has been formed and informed by the Tao Te Ching, the Bodhisattva's Vow in Buddhism, and the *Bhagavad Gita*. Schweig's new, beautiful, and accessible translation of the *Gita*, backed by his enormous knowledge and authoritative commentary, will remain the standard text of this marvelous Song for years to come, if indeed it is ever superseded."

—HUSTON SMITH, author of *The World's Religions*

"There are several translations of this seminal Hindu scripture. Some are very precise and literal but read awkwardly in English. Other translations are beautiful but at times sacrifice accuracy. Schweig's translation combines a subtle feel for the Sanskrit text with a clear rendering of the more difficult philosophical ideas, while the English is crystal clear and eminently readable. I will happily use Schweig's *Gita* in my classes."

—ARIEL GLUCKLICH, professor of theology (Hinduism)
at Georgetown University and author of *Climbing Chamundi Hill*

"The *Bhagavad Gita* is a religious classic; Schweig's felicitous translation of it deserves to be called a classic in its own right."

—ARVIND SHARMA, Birks Professor of Comparative Religion
at McGill University and author of *Our Religions*

ISBN 978-0-06-075425-9



5 2 4 9 5



9 780060 754259